MacUser

CONTAINS 1 DISK

Guide to Shareware

Gregory Wasson

- Covers all types of Macintosh shareware programs, both business and personal
- Learn what's worth your time and money—and how to get it
- For all Macintosh users

MacUser Guide to Shareware

PLEASE NOTE—USE OF THE DISK(S) AND THE PROGRAMS INCLUDED ON THE DISK(S) PACKAGED WITH THIS BOOK AND THE PROGRAM LISTINGS INCLUDED IN THIS BOOK IS SUBJECT TO AN END-USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (THE "AGREEMENT") FOUND AT THE BACK OF THE BOOK. PLEASE READ THE AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE MAKING YOUR PURCHASE DECISION. PURCHASE OF THE BOOK AND USE OF THE DISKS, PROGRAMS, AND PROGRAM LISTINGS WILL CONSTITUTE ACCEPTANCE OF THE AGREEMENT.

MacUser

MacUser Guide to Shareware

Gregory Wasson

Ziff-Davis Press
Emeryville, California

Editor	Carol Henry
Technical Reviewer	Andy Ihnatko
Project Coordinator	Ami Knox
Proofreader	Sylvia Townsend
Cover Design	Carrie English and Kenneth Roberts
Cover Illustration	Carrie English
Book Design	Laura Lamar/MAX, San Francisco
Word Processing	Howard Blechman and Cat Haglund
Page Layout	Tony Jonick, Anna L. Marks and Bruce Lunquist
Indexer	David Heiret

This book was produced on a Macintosh IIfx, with the following applications: FrameMaker®, Microsoft® Word, MacLink® *Plus*, Aldus® FreeHand™, Adobe Photoshop™, and Collage Plus™.

Ziff-Davis Press
5903 Christie Avenue
Emeryville, CA 94608

Copyright © 1993 by Ziff-Davis Press. All rights reserved.

MacUser is a registered trademark of Ziff Communications Company. Ziff-Davis Press, ZD Press, and MacUser Guide To are trademarks of Ziff Communications Company.

All other product names and services identified throughout this book are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies. They are used throughout this book in editorial fashion only and for the benefit of such companies. No such uses, or the use of any trade name, is intended to convey endorsement or other affiliation with the book.

No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form, or stored in a database or retrieval system, or transmitted or distributed in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Ziff-Davis Press, except as permitted by the Copyright Act of 1976 and the End-User License Agreement at the back of this book and except that program listings may be entered, stored, and executed in a computer system.

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY COVERING THE PHYSICAL DISK(S) PACKAGED WITH THIS BOOK AS PROVIDED IN THE END-USER LICENSE AGREEMENT AT THE BACK OF THIS BOOK, THE INFORMATION AND MATERIAL CONTAINED IN THIS BOOK ARE PROVIDED "AS IS," WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION ANY WARRANTY CONCERNING THE ACCURACY, ADEQUACY, OR COMPLETENESS OF SUCH INFORMATION OR MATERIAL OR THE RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED FROM USING SUCH INFORMATION OR MATERIAL. NEITHER ZIFF-DAVIS PRESS NOR THE AUTHOR SHALL BE RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY CLAIMS ATTRIBUTABLE TO ERRORS, OMISSIONS, OR OTHER INACCURACIES IN THE INFORMATION OR MATERIAL CONTAINED IN THIS BOOK, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL ZIFF-DAVIS PRESS OR THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF SUCH INFORMATION OR MATERIAL.

ISBN 1-56276-076-9

Manufactured in the United States of America
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

To my parents:

George L. Wasson

In memory of

Doris W. Wasson

Salve et Vale

CONTENTS AT A GLANCE

Foreword xv
Acknowledgments xvii
Introduction xix

Part 1 Shareware Basics

1. What Is Shareware? 2
2. How and Where to Get Shareware 12

Part 2 Educational and Games Programs

3. Educational Tools and Children's Programs 34
4. Games and Trivial Pursuits 52

Part 3 Text and Graphics Tools

5. Text Tools 92
6. Desktop Publishing and Font Tools 120
7. Graphics Tools 144

Part 4 Databases and Number Crunching

8. Database Tools 162
9. Personal Information Managers 176
10. Number Crunchers 190

Part 5 System Programs

11. System 7 Add-ons 206
12. System Enhancements 248
13. General Utilities 288
14. Security and Antiviral Tools 328

Part 6 Connecting with Other Users

15. Telecommunications and Compression Tools 348
16. Connectivity Tools 370

Appendix A: Mac Shareware Resources 385
Appendix B: Shareware Alternatives to Commercial Products 388
Appendix C: System 7 Envy 390
Appendix D: Using the Programs on the Bonus Disk 391
Appendix E: Common Questions about ZiffNet/Mac 395
Index 409

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Foreword xv

Acknowledgments xvii

Introduction xix

Part 1 Shareware Basics

1. What Is Shareware? 2

Shareware 101 3
Is Shareware Inferior to Commercial Products? 4
Is Shareware Dangerous? 5
How and Why to Pay for Shareware 5
The People You Hurt by Not Paying 6
Common Shareware Problems 6
SIT, CPT, and SEA: Dealing with Compressed Files 7
Working with MacBinary Format 8
Downloading a Mac File to a PC 10

2. How and Where to Get Shareware 12

On-line Services 13
What You'll Need to Get Started 13
America Online 16
CompuServe 18
GEnie 20
ZiffNet/Mac 21
Tips on Minimizing On-line Costs 23
Advantages and Disadvantages 29
CD-ROM Subscription Services 27
Nautilus 27
Advantages and Disadvantages 29
User Groups and Mail Order 29
Berkeley Macintosh Users Group (BMUG) 29
Boston Computer Society (BCS) 30
Mail Order 30
Advantages and Disadvantages 31
Summary 31

Part 2 Educational and Games Programs

3. Educational Tools and Children's Programs 34

AIDS Stack 35
Bar Codes Stack 36
Bird Anatomy 37

Earthplot 38
Esperanto Stack 38
If Monks Had Macs... 39
Inigo Gets Out 41
INITInfo Pro 1.0 42
Kid Pix 1.0 43
Math Orchard 44
Maya Calendar 45
PanaStack BW 1.1 46
PippinPuss 46
Save the Planet 47
The Vietnam War: A HyperCard History Book 48
Virus Encyclopedia 49

4. Games and Trivial Pursuits 52

BeamWars 54
Big Cheese Key 56
Bombs! 57
Brickles Plus 58
Cap'n Magneto 59
Columns][61
Continuum 62
Critters (Bigfoot and Eyeballs) 63
CrossMaster 64
Desk Invaders DA 66
Diamonds 66
Dungeon of Doom 67
Empire Master 70
Glider+ 71
Globe 72
Glypha II 72
The Grouch 73
GunShy 73
HyperNetwork CHESS 74
Klondike 75
Kung-Fu Chivalry 76
Mac Bzone 78
Moire Screensaver 79
Mouse Odometer 80
Pacman 80
Pararena 81
Scarab of RA 82
SeaHaven Towers 84
SnakeTIX 85

Solarian II 85
SpinIt INIT 86
Toxic Ravine 87
Trek 87

Part 3 Text and Graphics Tools

5. Text Tools 92

Alpha 93
Belgian PostCards 95
ButtonPad 98
Columnbo 99
CONText II 100
DOCMaker 102
Easy View 104
FlashWrite][105
Macify 106
McSink 107
miniWRITER 109
Notepad++ 111
Parachroma 113
SmartKeys 113
TextBreak 115
TextMerge 116
TypeIt4Me 117

6. Desktop Publishing and Font Tools 120

Add/Strip 121
Conversion DA 124
FontDisplay 125
Fonts 127
- Author 128
- Bill's Dingbats 128
- Boston II 129
- Durango 129
- Logger 130
- Ornaments 130
- PostCrypt 130

Pica Calculator DA 131
PM4 Shortcuts DA 132
SetPaths DA 133
theFONDler 134
theTypeBook 135

TypesettingMarksXT 136
Varityper ToolKit 137

7. Graphics Tools 140

About Clip Art 141
AppleDraw DA 142
Artisto+ 144
Blender DA 145
Camera DA 146
Flash-It 147
Image 148
ImageCatalog 149
LightningPaint 151
MacBillboard 153
MandelTV DA 154
PICTuresque DA 154
SnapJot 155
SnapShot 156
Super Ruler DA 157

Part 4 Databases and Number Crunching

8. Database Tools 162

Academic DataManager 163
The CD Catalog 164
DAbase 166
FileList+ 167
GradeBook 169
INFOMaker 170
Loodle 171
Pro Series FileMaker Pro Database Applications 172
Retriever Light 173

9. Personal Information Managers 176

Address Book 177
Calendar DA 178
Do It All! 179
Easy Envelopes Plus 182
MacRoots 183
MailIt 184
Remember? Personal Reminder System 185
To Do! DA 187
Visual Time Manager 188

10. Number Crunchers 190

Amortize 191

BaseToBase DA 192
BiPlane 193
Home Budget Stack 195
Household Shopper 196
HyperBucks 198
Mariner 199
Time Logger DA 201

Part 5 System Programs

11. System 7 Add-ons 206

INITs and cdevs and FKEYs, Oh My! 207
About ZiffNet/Mac Exclusives 209
AKA 209
Alias Director 210
Alias Stylist 211
AppDisk 212
AppleEase 213
Applicon 214
BalloonPrinter 216
Basura 217
CacheOut 217
CLAM 218
CommentKeeper 219
Dropple Menu 220
DTPrinter 221
Extensions Manager 222
Find Pro II 224
Finder Sets 226
FinderToFront 226
Folder Icon Maker 227
Helium 228
HideAlways 229
INITLoader 230
JustClick 231
MacUser's Alias Assassin 231
MenuChoice 233
MODE32 234
NoBalloonMenu 236
Nom de Plume 236
Popcorn 237
Print2Pict 239
ProSwitch 240
System 7 Pack 241

Texx 242
TrashAlias 243
Trash Chute 244
WindowWizard 245
ZMakeAlias 247

12. System Enhancements 248

Alias 249
AltCDEF 250
AltWDEF 252
Apollo 253
AutoMenus 254
Carpetbag 256
Colorize 257
CursorAnimator 258
DesktopFolder 260
DiskSwitch 261
Easy KEYS 261
Escapade 263
Façade 264
Front&Center 264
GooPanel 265
IconWrap 267
init cdev 3.0 267
Kolor 268
Layout 269
MaxAppleZoom 270
MenuKey 271
MFMenu+ 273
MICN 274
MountEm 274
Oasis 275
Out to Launch! 277
PopChar 278
RamDisk+ 279
Scroll2 280
SoftwareFPU 281
SoundMaster 281
SuperClock 283
Switch-A-Roo 284
TearOFFS 285
UnScrolly 285
WindowShade 286

13. General Utilities 288
Bat Filer 289
BundAid 291
CheapColor 2 292
Color Bits 293
Darkside 294
DeBNDLer 295
Desktop Textures 296
DeskZap DA 297
DisKeeper 299
DMM LaserWriter Stuff 300
Fast Formatter 302
FileMover 302
FileTyper 304
Floppy Fixer 305
Folderdash 306
Get More Info 308
HeapTool 309
iContraption 310
MacEnvy 312
MemINIT 313
MergeScrap DA 314
Message DA 314
MountImage 315
MultiSpool 316
PowerBook Tools 316
SCSI Probe 318
SetClock 320
Speedometer 321
System Errors DA 321
System Picker 322
TattleTale 323
TEXT<->ttro 325
Tidy It Up! 326
14. Security and Antiviral Tools 328
DES 330
Disinfectant 331
GateKeeper 334
Launch INIT 335
MacPassword 336
MacUser Security Set 338
Obliterate 339
Protect It 340

VirusDetective and VirusBlockade II 341
Zorba 343

Part 6 Connecting with Other Users

15. Telecommunications and Compression Tools 348

ARAClient 350
BroadCast 351
Clipper FKEY 352
Compact Pro 353
FirstClass Client 355
Internet Tour 357
Modem Calculator DA 357
Public Folder 358
QuickB DA 359
Quoter DA 360
SatNav 361
Serial of Champions 363
StuffIt Expander 364
StuffIt Lite 365
ZTerm 367

16. Connectivity Tools 370

ArcMac 371
BinHex 4.0 and 5.0 373
ExtractorPC 374
GIFConverter 375
Imagery 377
REFONT 379
TTConverter 380
UNSIT 381
UnZip 381
UUTool 383

Appendix A: Mac Shareware Resources 385

Appendix B: Shareware Alternatives to Commercial Products 388

Appendix C: System 7 Envy 390

Appendix D: Using the Programs on the Bonus Disk 391

Appendix E: Common Questions about ZiffNet/Mac 395

Index 409

FOREWORD

FOREWORDS ARE SORT OF LIKE THE SHAREWARE OF BOOK PUBLISHING. Your friendly neighborhood bookseller happily lets you sample a couple hundred words before you decide if this book is actually worth plunking down a few dollars. If it's not for you, fine; you can move on to something else, like the latest Calvin and Hobbes anthology. The bookseller knows that the more you browse, the more things you'll discover that you simply have to have.

Of course, nobody's budget is infinite. And choosing books—like choosing software—involves making some tough choices between competing products.

MacUser Guide to Shareware is a great book that will help you discover some of the greatest values in the world of Macintosh shareware. And Greg Wasson is a superbly qualified guide to help you navigate the somewhat baffling array of shareware options available to you.

But Calvin and Hobbes is pretty decent, too.

Deep down, you already know you'll get more out of Greg's encyclopedic sourcebook than you'd get from a collection of recycled cartoons. But if you're still reading this foreword, maybe you're not quite ready to go with your instincts.

So it's time to resort cheap shots. Here goes:

The Top Ten Reasons You Should Buy Greg's Book Instead of the New Calvin and Hobbes Collection

10. Greg Wasson has done a superb job of scrutinizing the Macintosh shareware universe to uncover some real gems, guaranteed to make your Macintosh more productive and enjoyable. Calvin and Hobbes haven't.

9. The Calvin and Hobbes book won't show you how to save hundreds of dollars by using shareware products instead of expensive commercial products bloated with features you'll never use. Greg's will, and it even comes with a disk containing a starter library of shareware.

8. Calvin is an immature, self-centered youngster who rarely understands the distinction between fantasy and reality. Greg Wasson isn't.

7. Hobbes is either a tiger or a stuffed toy, depending on whether anyone besides Calvin is present. Greg Wasson is neither.

6. Will C&H let you change your beep sounds, customize your desktop, save money on telecommunications, or just generally make your Mac the envy of your friends? I think not.

5. Neither Calvin nor Hobbes has ever written for *MacUser*. Greg Wasson, on the other hand, is one of *MacUser*'s most knowledgeable long-time

contributors, having compiled and tested virtually thousands of reader tips for *MacUser*'s "Tip Sheet" column. He knows more details about how Mac software works and how real people use their software than a human being should be allowed.

4. Both "Calvin" and "Hobbes" have six letters, just like "MS-DOS" (if you count the hyphen). Coincidence? Perhaps. But is it really worth the risk?

3. A typical page of C&H contains only a few dozen words and no software descriptions; Greg's book offers hundreds of words per page and expert guidance on over 400 shareware products.

2. You won't have to keep explaining to friends which one is Calvin and which one is Hobbes when they see you reading Greg's book.

And the number one reason you should choose this book over C&H:

1. No annoying guest appearances from Dennis the Menace.

In this amazingly comprehensive book, Greg tells you virtually everything you need to know about shareware—what's available, how to get it, and how to choose the best products for your needs. Whether you use your Mac for desktop publishing, graphic design, game playing, word processing, storing and retrieving data, multimedia applications, or all of the above, you'll find dozens of shareware products that you never knew existed that will save you time and money, and that will make using your Mac even more enjoyable.

—Jon Zilber
Editor-in-Chief, *MacUser*

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

A NUMBER OF PEOPLE AT *MACUSER* AND ZIFFNET/MAC GAVE ME ENCOURAGEMENT and covered my backside as I devoted more and more time to finishing this book. The book would never have made it to press without the help and cooperation of these folks.

Above all, Ted Silveira, an assistant sysop in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum, helped me out repeatedly with advice about telecom-related issues in the book. Ted is one of the nicest on-line personalities in the business today. In my experience, it's unusual to see such technical knowledge and lack of arrogance packaged in the same person to the degree they are in Ted. There are far too many on-line prima donnas. Happily, Ted somehow escaped that character flaw.

Ben Templin, the ZiffNet/Mac on-line manager, my boss and friend, suggested the book to me in the first place at a summit of ZiffNet sysops held in February 1991 in Boston. And despite that, I still won't share royalties with him!

Other ZiffNet folk, including Craig O'Donnell and Ric Ford, deserve thanks for suggestions and friendly encouragement along the way.

I'm lucky that *MacUser* Editor-in-Chief Jon Zilber has written the Foreword to this book. He brought his usual wit to the task.

Several *MacUser* editors, especially Susan Janus and Victoria von Biel, turned a kindly blind eye to missed deadlines or article assignments I couldn't accept while this project was going on.

I'll be forever grateful to all the fine folks at Ziff-Davis Press, especially Ami Knox (the book's project coordinator), Cindy Hudson, Cheryl Holzaepfel, the production staff who worked on this book—Howard Blechman, Cat Haglund, Tony Jonick, and Anna Marks, proofreader Sylvia Townsend, and Ziff-Davis Press graphics expert, Dan Brodnitz. I still can't believe how smoothly it all progressed, thanks largely to them.

Thanks, too, to technical editor Andy Ihnatko: Macintosh guru with an attitude. Any errors that remain are, unfortunately, my own. (Andy made me say that!)

Special thanks goes to my editor, Carol Henry. Many times I gave up on certain troublesome paragraphs or sentences, and could have protested, with Guildenstern, "But these cannot I command to any utt'rance of harmony. I have not the skill." (*Hamlet*, III, ii) Carol, fortunately, always had the skill.

Finally, thanks to David Valiulis, my friend and soul mate, for his patience and unerring ability to spot my redundancies, vague antecedents, and inanities. Carol should be grateful he got first crack at every chapter.

In any case, folks, the book is done. It's time to party.

INTRODUCTION

SHAREWARE, FREEWARE, ECOWARE, VENDORWARE, SMILEWARE, BEERware—from the sublime to the ridiculous. Noncommercial software, whatever its name, often proves itself a strong alternative to overpriced commercial products filled with features you never use. Produced by talented individuals in the Macintosh community, good shareware (and any of its variants and cousins) is a source of both productive and entertaining software that you'll want to tap. It's a source that should, for a variety of reasons, appeal especially to Macintosh users.

The Macintosh community, since its inception in 1984, has been infused with a sense of maverick idealism and a grass-roots mentality. This strong strain of gung-ho idealism makes Macintosh users gravitate with enthusiasm to the shareware/freeware concept, but it also creates a problem in the Mac shareware environment: It's cluttered and marred by weekend "hacks" produced by overeager, inexperienced programmers, sharing their ho-hum creations with the rest of us.

There's no Mac equivalent of the Association of Shareware Professionals, as in the more organized PC shareware world, to guarantee or at least encourage quality. And the Macintosh press does not usually cover the shareware arena with any thoroughness. This all conspires to leave the Macintosh community, especially new computer users, adrift with little guidance in distinguishing shareware wheat from shareware chaff.

That's where this book comes in. With it in hand, you can be assured that you're looking at the best that the Macintosh shareware market has to offer, winnowed out by the discerning editors at *MacUser* and, perhaps more importantly, on ZiffNet/Mac by ordinary folks like you who have found the programs described in this book to be trustworthy helpmates and aids to productivity. You'll also discover here the most cost-effective way to search for and obtain high-quality shareware in any given circumstance, whether you're dealing with an on-line service, mail-order company, or CD-ROM.

How to Use This Book

MacUser Guide to Shareware is divided into six parts and several appendices and includes a bonus disk full of Mac shareware.

The first part spells out the ABCs of shareware: What is it? Who creates it? Where do you find it? How do you obtain it in the least expensive way? You'll discover the ins and outs of dealing with on-line services, including information on the software and hardware you'll need. You'll learn about file compression, viruses, and esoterica like MacBinary and how to download Mac files to PCs. You'll find valuable information on user groups and mail-

order companies as sources of shareware, as well as a look at an exciting new approach to shareware distribution called a CD-ROM subscription service.

Parts 2 through 6 contain descriptions of over 250 top-quality shareware and freeware products for the Macintosh, all arranged in general categories: Educational and Games Programs, Text and Graphics Tools, Databases and Number Crunching, System Programs, and Connecting with Other Users. Each general category is further divided into chapters devoted to specific types of programs—text tools, personal information managers (PIMs), and games, for example.

Several appendices close the book, providing a directory of shareware sources; a table of shareware alternatives to commercial products in various categories; a look at using specific shareware programs to mimic System 7 features on Macs running System 6; money-saving tips on using ZiffNet/Mac; and a listing of and instructions for using the files that are provided on the enclosed 800k bonus disk. You'll also find information on how to subscribe to ZiffNet/Mac, the on-line companion to *MacUser* and *MacWEEK*, and a top-notch source of Macintosh shareware, to boot.

What's Inside

Chapter 1 explains the basics of shareware: what it is, what it is not, what to expect from it, the best sources of shareware, how and why to pay for it, and some common problems that occur when you're dealing with shareware for the first time. There's even some advanced stuff here, such as the intricacies of MacBinary and of downloading Mac files to a PC, that power users will find helpful.

Chapter 2 tells you how and where to find shareware. You'll be introduced to the world of modems and telecommunications software, as well as to the main on-line services that offer Macintosh shareware. You'll also find tips on minimizing on-line costs. And if telecommunications isn't your cup of tea, you'll discover some viable alternatives. First, CD-ROM subscription services such as Nautilus that provide shareware (as well as a lot of other neat stuff) distributed on a monthly basis on CD-ROM discs. And we'll introduce you to user group superpowers such as the Berkeley Macintosh Users Group (BMUG) and Boston Computer Society (BCS), which open their membership to people worldwide and sell disks crammed with shareware at reasonable prices.

Next begins the part of the book that you'll refer to the most: a listing of shareware programs by category. Each entry (many with illustrative screens) is structured like this:

- Program's name.
- A full, informative description.

- The program's requirements.
- Limitations.
- System 7 compatibility.
- The shareware fee (if any).
- Tips & Techniques (if applicable).
- Author's address (both postal and electronic mail, whenever available). You'll encounter a couple of abbreviations in this address section with which you may not be familiar, for e-mail destinations: AOL = America Online, and CIS = CompuServe. (I attempted to get the most up-to-date address available for each product, but ours is a mobile society and people move around a great deal. So it's likely that some of the addresses given here will no longer be valid by the time this book appears in bookstores. Also, it's quite possible that some of the shareware mentioned in this book may have gone commercial or been withdrawn from the public for other reasons.)
- The ZiffNet/Mac file name you'll need to download the file from ZiffNet/-Mac's on-line shareware libraries, if you're a subscriber.

In other words, you get all the information that you'd expect to see in the Get Info section at the end of reviews in *MacUser*.

Chapter 3, Educational Tools and Children's Programs, offers you the best in shareware created for children or for educational purposes. The programs range from the public-domain version of a playful children's paint program called Kid Pix, to a sobering look at AIDS.

Chapter 4, Games and Trivial Pursuits, will definitely appeal to your less-serious side, with over 30 outstanding games and other programs of general silliness that will amuse and make you *less* productive. You'll spot numbing arcade favorites such as Pacman, QIX clones such as BeamWars and SnakeTIX, solitaire card games, strategy war games, and pure Macintosh nonsense such as Mouse Odometer (it measures how far you move your mouse in a day!). Don't blame me if you don't get any work done.

Chapter 5, Text Tools, includes text editors, a substitute for the Apple Note Pad, a program that substitutes typesetting (curly) quotes for straight quotes, an application that compares two text files and lists the differences, and much more. Everything to help you mind your p's and q's.

Chapter 6, Desktop Publishing and Font Tools, offers add-ons for commercial DTP programs; a powerful program that prepares text files for importing into page layout applications by handling straight quotes, ligatures, extra spaces, and more, all in one step; font utilities; a sampling of outstanding fonts;

and DTP calculators that will make remembering conversions for picas and points, well, pointless.

Chapter 7, Graphics Tools, expands your palette with software that helps you do screen captures, manipulate scanned images, and make creating flawless graduated blends a snap. There's even a full-fledged, inexpensive paint program that won't paint you into the poorhouse.

Chapter 8, Database Tools, describes databases and database tools that range in function from maintaining a CD collection to reading dBASE files, or cataloging the files you have on your floppies or hard drive. You'll also see a series of professionally designed templates for FileMaker Pro and Excel that can help you pigeonhole all your data into neat little records and fields, saving you the time usually necessary to create a database structure.

Chapter 9, Personal Information Managers, contains programs that help you organize virtually any aspect of your personal and business lives: calendars; programs that automatically remind you of appointments, birthdays, deadlines, and dates; and even little black books. There's a project scheduler, a general address book, and a mailing template for Excel that prints out names and addresses on standard mailing labels. And there's a genealogy program for keeping track of your family roots. You couldn't get much more personal than that.

Chapter 10, Number Crunchers, should strike a cheery chord in the hearts of capitalists and accountants everywhere. It has spreadsheets, calculators, programs that keep tabs on time usage (good for anyone who bills clients by the hour), and even on a household shopping budget.

Chapter 11, System 7 Add-ons, includes entries on a wide variety of programs, control panels, and extensions that enhance System 7. You'll find several drag-and-drop utilities, a System 7 RAM disk, improvements to the standard trash, a QuickTime movie editor and viewer, alias managers, and more. System 7 is Heaven, especially when you mine the gems you'll encounter in this chapter.

Chapter 12, System Enhancements, takes a long look at the richest area of Macintosh shareware: the INITs, extensions, control panels, and a variety of other programs that allow you to enhance or customize the Macintosh's operating system and the Finder. You'll find colorizers, icon and INIT managers, replacements for Key Caps, and dialog and window customizers. Your Mac may have the best operating system in the world, but here are a slew of ways to tweak it and make it even better.

Chapter 13, General Utilities, explores programs that may be of interest mostly to technical types, or anyone who wants to know more about the Mac than just how to double-click an icon. The programs in this chapter let you clock your hard drive's speed and explore the arcane mysteries of the SCSI chain, check on the secrets of bundle bits, manage files with a batch program, format floppies quickly, and lots more.

Chapter 14, Security and Antiviral Tools, touches on the dark side of computing, and lists must-have programs for anyone needing to protect data or applications from prying eyes, or hard drives from the ravages of viruses.

Chapter 15, Telecommunications and Compression Tools, covers the software that makes it possible for you to connect with on-line services like ZiffNet/Mac and CompuServe. You'll find complete telecommunications programs here, as well as compression utilities, and software that helps you keep track of how much your on-line sessions are costing you.

Chapter 16, Connectivity Tools, examines a different kind of communication. It lists programs that allow you to convert files to different formats, or exchange files with non-Mac platforms such as UNIX, DOS, and Amiga.

Appendix A provides an alphabetical list of the best and most important sources of shareware for the Macintosh, along with addresses and phone numbers.

Appendix B lists shareware alternatives to commercial products in 20 categories.

Appendix C shows System 6 users how to mimic certain features of System 7, such as aliases, using some shareware or freeware products.

Appendix D lists all the shareware files contained on the bonus disk enclosed with this book.

Appendix E is a primer for getting the most out of ZiffNet/Mac, the on-line companion to *MacUser* and *MacWEEK*, and a good source for safe, reliable, tested shareware.

Disk with the Book

You'll find one 800k floppy disk enclosed in a pocket attached to the inside back cover of the book. The disk contains a selection of shareware programs. You'll find some productive and fun examples of the best shareware the Mac community has to offer, all of it tested and virus-free. *The price of this book, by the way, does not cover the shareware fees requested by the authors of the software included with this book. Please pay the shareware fees for any of the files you decide to keep and use.*

Have Fun!

The shareware realm is constantly changing and growing. Programs appear, drop out, improve, become hits, go commercial, or remain shareware—thanks to the care of their authors. This book is just a snapshot of that flux. So have fun exploring the book and the programs it discusses. But, better yet, let it whet your appetite for further exploration, by modem and phone line or other means, in the wider world of shareware for the Mac.

What Is Shareware?

How and Where to Get Shareware

PART

1

Shareware Basics

CHAPTER

1

What Is Shareware?

Shareware 101

Is Shareware Inferior to Commercial Products?

Is Shareware Dangerous?

How and Why to Pay for Shareware

Common Shareware Problems

YOU'VE READ THE REVIEWS, BEEN MADE HIP BY THE HYPE, AND JUST paid megabucks for a piece of commercial software. With growing anticipation, you breathlessly slip the master floppy into your Mac's disk drive, double-click, and settle down to learn the program. But there's bad news: the program isn't quite what you expected, perhaps even lacks some vital feature or capability that makes it all but unusable for what you had in mind. What do you do? If you're lucky enough to be dealing with a company that offers a money-back guarantee (a rarity in the case of opened software), you simply return the product and begin the software hunt anew. More often, however, you can do little more than put the software on your shelf, whimper, and lick your wounds.

There's a way to avoid this scenario—by looking into noncommercial software, called shareware or freeware, as an alternative to commercial products. If you're new to computing, the term *shareware* (and quite a few others that you will encounter in this book) may be unfamiliar. The rest of this chapter will fill you in on the basics you'll need for taking advantage of shareware.

Shareware 101

Strictly speaking, shareware is software that the author has decided to distribute through the noncommercial or nontraditional channels of computer user groups, on-line services, and regional electronic bulletin boards (sometimes referred to as BBSs). In this book we'll use the term *shareware* in its most general sense: Shareware encompasses variants such as *crippleware* (software that is "crippled" by the lack of a Save command or documentation until you pay the registration fee) or even *freeware* (software that the author has generously decided to distribute to the public without demanding any payment in return). If the author has given up all rights to the freeware, it is usually called *public domain software.*

Shareware is distributed "on approval"—as opposed to commercial products, which are generally sold, like used cars, "as is." That is, you pay whatever registration fee the author requests, *only* if you decide to keep and use the program. If you do, you'll usually end up writing a check—to a person, not a corporation. Authors also sometimes ask for things other than the root of all evil; for example, a case of their favorite beer or a donation to their pet charity or cause. Something as simple as a postcard from your home town or a friendly note may be the only demand. Shareware is generally very personal. Using it often involves getting to know a person as well as a product. That's what makes it a unique, fascinating relationship.

In most cases, whatever the asking price, it's generally less expensive than what you'd have to pay for a commercial product that does the same thing. And many shareware programs, especially in the Macintosh world, tend to be system add-ons and utilities that a commercial enterprise, with its emphasis

on big profits and big products, would just never bother with or could not afford to develop and support.

Is Shareware Inferior to Commercial Products?

If you have a suspicious nature, all this may sound too good to be true. A common misconception about shareware, in fact, is that its low price indicates low quality. This belief seems to stem from an odd quirk of human nature that's led even major software companies to increase the price of a specific software product just to make it more appealing to the "corporate mindset." (What's worse, this technique apparently works.)

The shareware concept, in contrast, proves that you can still sometimes get more for less. Certainly, there are shareware rip-offs, but most authors ask an honest price. They can afford to ask for less, because they usually don't toil under the burden of high overheads caused by costly advertising campaigns, four-color ads, office rents, and the lawsuits that have replaced honest competition as a driving force in the marketplace. Though some doubting Thomases frequently assume that low-cost shareware must by nature be inferior to its commercial counterparts, lacking in features, reliability, or support, you'll find numerous examples among the files examined in this book that belie that assumption.

On the matter of support, for example, you'll be hard pressed to find companies that support their products with as much immediacy and responsiveness as many shareware authors do. Shareware author Scott Watson once captured the lion's share of the Macintosh telecommunications market with his shareware program Red Ryder (it's since gone commercial as White Knight). It wasn't uncommon for someone to call Scott with a complaint or a request for some new feature. Within days, if not hours, a new version of Red Ryder would hit the on-line streets. The frequency of his updates became legendary. Scott was and is exceptional in this regard, but the fact is that shareware authors can respond much more quickly to user complaints and suggestions than the overworked and understaffed software development units found in many companies.

You'll encounter shareware games, spreadsheets, antiviral tools, and other types of noncommercial software that equal or surpass anything found on a dealer's shelves. Also, shareware products frequently can do things that have simply no counterpart in the feature sets of commercial software. In short, shareware is a tremendous treasury and resource that you should exploit.

The shareware world isn't all rosy, however. A couple of negative aspects to shareware should be kept in mind as a balance to what has been said so far. First, shareware products are not always as throughly tested as their commercial counterparts. Shareware authors seldom have access to

the variety of hardware and system configurations that big companies have. A shareware author may not have a PowerBook handy for testing, and doesn't discover that the shareware conflicts with that Mac model until the complaints start rolling in. Second, the documentation accompanying shareware can sometimes be skimpy. You may often be left on your own to discover how the shareware works.

Is Shareware Dangerous?

Note. A computer virus is a small, usually invisible or hidden program that alters your data, programs, or hardware without your permission or knowledge. In many cases the virus damages your files even though it was created as a practical joke or college lark. In the Macintosh environment, viruses are spread primarily through infected floppies.

Another pervasive myth is that shareware, especially when obtained from an on-line service like CompuServe, GEnie, America Online, or ZiffNet/Mac, is a primary source of computer virus contagion. In fact, however, the major on-line services are probably among the least likely ways for a viral no-goodnik to enter your Macintosh and bring on that sad Mac face or destroy data. Having worked behind the scenes as a forum manager or sysop (system operator) on ZiffNet/Mac for several years, I know firsthand the lengths to which the staffs of all on-line services will go to ensure that files are clean and safe.

A typical virus infection occurs much more frequently when individuals exchange infected floppy disks they've received from a "friend of a friend." Unfortunately, this often involves transferring floppies that have made their way to you via a series of floppy drives on university campuses, in computer labs, service bureaus, and homes, where antiviral hygiene may not always be of paramount importance. The point is, you simply cannot know where that floppy's been.

Even though it's unlikely you will get a virus-infected file from a major on-line service, there's no guarantee you won't someday bump heads with one of these files, so be prepared. If you regularly obtain files from a smaller bulletin board (BBS) or a "friend," the likelihood of infection increases. An antiviral extension that scans floppies as you insert them or that monitors your system may use up some precious RAM and cause some inconvenience, but it's nothing compared to the hassles of having to reformat your hard drive or recover damaged files. Check out the antiviral files described in Chapter 14, and practice safe computing.

How and Why to Pay for Shareware

Finding out who or how much to pay for shareware is sometimes a chore. Most shareware comes with a ReadMe file of some sort, usually in MacWrite or text-only format. Be sure to read it for information about installing and using the program, INIT conflicts, and registering or paying for the program if the author requests it. Sometimes registration information is offered only within the program, and can be accessed through a menu help command, or

perhaps in the dialog box displayed when you choose the About option from the Apple menu. You may have to look around to find this information, but take the time. Mac users are notorious for not reading the manuals for their software. A ReadMe file or an About box, however, is usually a lot less painful to get through than a manual. And in shareware, it's probably the only place you'll find out how and where to pay the shareware fee, if there is one.

That's the "how." The "why" is just as important, as explained next.

The People You Hurt by Not Paying

When you don't pay shareware fees, it's just one more hatchet chop to the trunk of western civilization. If you can't think in such grand terms, at least consider the individuals you're hurting. You hurt real people when you fail to pay requested shareware fees—not faceless corporate entities—so cough up. Good programs, like Rome, weren't built in a day.

Talented people create shareware. Raymond Lau, a true Macintosh shareware hero, gave us Stuffit Lite, a decompression program that has saved countless people countless bucks in download time, and megabytes of disk space. Ben Haller's space arcade game, Solarian II, rivals anything out there on the commercial market—at a fraction of the cost. These are people who may or may not have "real" jobs, people who depend on shareware fees to buy school books and continue an education. Even if it's only mad money for them, show these folks some appreciation. Their handiwork deserves it.

You also hurt the Macintosh community as a whole when you don't pay shareware fees, because it discourages shareware authors from enriching our computing lives with the results of their brainstorms. Some authors have even withdrawn their products from shareware distribution and gone commercial, inevitably resulting in higher prices for all of us. If all these reasons don't shame you into paying, then at least stop kvetching about shoddy software, inflated upgrade prices, and the like—because you're part of the problem.

Common Shareware Problems

When you first start exploring shareware, you're bound to encounter some obstacles. This is especially true if you obtain shareware from on-line services, which introduce their own quirks and roadblocks into the process of acquiring shareware. But three common problems arise again and again, and deserve a detailed look: compressed-file formats, the MacBinary telecommunications format, and Mac-to-PC translation.

SIT, CPT, and SEA: Dealing with Compressed Files

Sooner or later, you will probably double-click a shareware file you've downloaded or received from a friend, and be faced with the dreaded "Application Not Found" alert. No matter what you try, that nifty game or utility simply will not launch. When this happens, stop and take a look at the file. Does the file name end in an unfamiliar extension such as .SIT or .CPT? If it does (and perhaps even if it doesn't), the file you are trying to run is actually "hidden," enclosed in a special kind of compressed format.

Why the compression? There are two main reasons: First, compressed files are smaller and take less time to download from an on-line service. That saves you money. Second, compressed files take up less space on your floppy or hard disk. Compressing infrequently used files frees up space for programs you do use more regularly.

Three major compression formats exist in the Macintosh community, and each has its own special three-letter suffix or extension: StuffIt (SIT), Compact Pro (CPT), and Self-Extracting (SEA). These are probably the only compression formats you'll ever have to deal with if you use on-line services like CompuServe or ZiffNet/Mac.

The StuffIt compression format is a common favorite among users. Files compressed ("stuffed") with StuffIt usually end in the .SIT extension; and you may see StuffIt-compressed files referred to as *StuffIt archives.* The program itself was developed by Raymond Lau and was originally distributed as $25 shareware. Lau eventually made arrangements to offer an enhanced version as StuffIt Deluxe. Aladdin now distributes this commercial version, but a shareware version called StuffIt Lite (with a smaller feature set) still exists and can be easily obtained from any of the main on-line services or user groups. *Note:* If you come across an older version called StuffIt 1.5.1, avoid it; this version cannot decompress or "unstuff" files saved in the StuffIt Deluxe or StuffIt Lite formats.

The easiest way to decompress StuffIt files you acquire is with a utility called StuffIt Expander, described in detail in Chapter 15. It's provided free of charge from Aladdin through the on-line services. StuffIt Expander is a small file (about 70k), so it won't cost a bundle to download. This program will only decompress. It cannot stuff or compress files, so you'll need to get a copy of StuffIt Lite or StuffIt Deluxe if you foresee the need for that.

Compact Pro (originally known as Compactor) was developed by Bill Goodman. It appeared after StuffIt became the de facto compression standard in the Macintosh community, but its use has become quite widespread, and you're certain to be faced with Compact Pro archives at some point. You'll find it discussed in detail in Chapter 15. Compact Pro archives usually have the .CPT extension. They tend to be smaller than StuffIt archives, so the Compact Pro format has become increasingly popular on the on-line services.

The program itself is widely available from services, BBSs, and user groups. If you only need to extract (decompress) Compact Pro archives, you can still use Aladdin's StuffIt Expander utility; it handles both StuffIt- and Compact Pro-compressed files.

The third Macintosh compression format you'll frequently encounter is called Self-Extracting. The extension usually tacked on is .SEA. Both StuffIt and Compact Pro (as well as commercial programs like DiskDoubler) can create SEA archives, in addition to the SIT and CPT archives. To decompress SEA files, simply double-click them. They should self-extract and place the file you want on your hard drive or floppy. Once you've checked the file to make sure it works, you can delete the SEA archive by dragging it to the trash.

NOTE. *If you download SEA archives from CompuServe or ZiffNet/Mac with a telecommunications program called Navigator, make sure you are using at least version 3.1.1. Earlier versions of Navigator frequently choked on SEA files, sometimes corrupting them.*

TIP. *If you download an SEA file and it refuses to self-extract, select the file and choose Get Info from the File menu (Command-I). See whether the program that created the SEA archive was StuffIt or Compact Pro. If it was either, use that program to open and decompress the damaged SEA file just as you'd decompress a regular SIT or CPT archive. This trick usually works.*

You may also occasionally come across files that end in TXT, BIN, or PIT. The first two file types aren't compression formats: TXT files are uncompressed, text-only files that you can read with any word processor. BIN files include all other uncompressed files. Just double-click them—neither format requires any special decompression program or action on your part. PIT files are files compressed in an older compression format called PackIt. It's no longer used, and most PIT files have been converted to the SIT or CPT format. Should you ever need to deal with a PackIt or PIT archive, the PackIt application is still available through the on-line services. StuffIt Lite (the shareware version of StuffIt) also offers the ability to "unpack" PackIt-compressed archives.

Working with MacBinary Format

When you're downloading software from on-line services, confusion about a telecommunications format called MacBinary causes almost as many problems as compressed-file formats. MacBinary is a piece of telecom trickery that must be relied upon when you're working with Macs communicating with non-Mac platforms, such as PCs, or the mainframes from which on-line services operate. Macintosh files consist of two parts: a data portion, and a resource portion that stores elements such as windows, menus, and so forth. From the desktop, the Mac user cannot see this dichotomy, but it exists. Mainframes and

PCs, on the other hand, do see the division and cannot process the Mac's duplex file structure properly. MacBinary was developed to cajole such computers into thinking the Mac file is just what they're accustomed to.

Here's a simple explanation to help you understand what's happening behind the scenes. When someone uploads a Mac file to ZiffNet/Mac, for example, and the MacBinary setting has been enabled, the telecom program slips the Mac file into the MacBinary "envelope" before it actually begins to transmit the file. This envelope fools the receiving mainframe/PC into thinking the file is a standard mainframe/PC file. Then, when someone downloads that file, the Mac telecom software again intervenes. It strips off the envelope after the file is downloaded, so that the file appears on the Macintosh as a normal Mac file with a specific icon. If MacBinary is turned off during download, the file will appear with a generic document icon (a page with a dog-eared corner). When you double-click that icon, you'll get the dreaded "The document could not be opened, because the application program that created it could not be found" alert.

If this ever happens to you, you have several options. You can download the file again, with MacBinary turned on. That's the simple answer—but if the file is large, this approach wastes too much of your time and money. Another technique is to process the file after the download, to remove the MacBinary envelope and reveal the file's true face. A small utility called BinHex 5.0 will do the job (go to the File menu, turn off the TEXT filter toggle, and choose the Download->Application command). If you have the MacBinary Translator installed (created by StuffIt author Raymond Lau), you can also use StuffIt Deluxe or Lite to strip the MacBinary format away. You can also find translators for the Apple File Exchange (AFE) program that will process any downloaded file stuck in the MacBinary envelope. AFE, by the way, comes bundled with every Macintosh as system software.

All of these utilities and translators are available from user groups or online services. On ZiffNet/Mac, go to the Download and Support Forum. You'll find BinHex 5.0 as file BINHEX.BIN in the Applications library. The StuffIt MacBinary Translator is file MCBSIT.SIT in the Scripts and Templates library. The MacBinary plug-in filter for the AFE translator is file MBNMAC.SIT, also in Scripts and Templates.

NOTE. *People using the Mac telecom programs CompuServe Navigator or CIM (CompuServe Information Manager) don't need to explicitly turn on MacBinary. Both of these programs are intelligent enough to handle such matters automatically. They do limit you to either the CompuServe on-line service or ZiffNet/Mac, however. These programs are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 2.*

Downloading a Mac File to a PC

A fairly common scenario that pops up is when you have to download a Macintosh file to an IBM-compatible and then bring the file over to a Mac at some later point. Even if you manage to get the file onto your Mac, the file appears useless. Double-click it, and you'll see an alert: "The document could not be opened...." This is a good clue as to what is happening. Stumped? Let's start from the beginning to see what's going on.

Whenever you need to download a Mac file to a PC, you proceed with the download as you normally would. Recall how the Mac prepares files so that the mainframes used by on-line services can handle them properly—by slipping the file into a MacBinary envelope. But when you download that Mac file to your PC instead of to your Mac, the file remains enclosed in MacBinary, because PC telecom programs don't strip it off as Mac software does. This means you have to move the file over to your Mac and then remove the MacBinary envelope there, in friendlier territory.

Here's one way to move the file to your Mac *and* strip the MacBinary envelope off, assuming you have a Macintosh equipped with a SuperDrive (all of the newer Macs, from the IIcx on, have SuperDrive). On your PC, copy the downloaded file to a high-density 3½-inch floppy. Move to your Mac and launch the Apple File Exchange (AFE) program we mentioned in the previous section. If you haven't installed AFE, copy it from the master system disks that came with your Macintosh. Next, insert the PC disk into your Mac's floppy drive. In the selection window on the left, choose where you want to place the file on your Mac. Select the downloaded file in the right window and click the Translate button. AFE copies the file from the PC floppy into the designated Mac file.

If you have the MacBinary plug-in filter for AFE installed, you can strip off MacBinary when you copy the file from the PC floppy to your Mac. Just select the plug-in filter from the MS-DOS to Mac menu. Consult the AFE documentation for details. Quit AFE to return to the desktop.

NOTE. *We've assumed that your Mac has a SuperDrive installed. If you are using an older Mac without a SuperDrive, such as the Macintosh Plus, the options for transferring downloaded files from a PC to your Mac are expensive and complicated. You can physically connect a PC and a Mac with special cables. You can buy external drives that will read DOS floppies. But it is far more economical for you to purchase a modem for your Mac, so that you can download directly to the Macintosh environment instead.*

If you do not have the MacBinary plug-in filter for AFE installed, what you're left with at this point is a replay of the MacBinary problem we outlined previously. It's as if you have downloaded the file to your Mac with the MacBinary option of your telecom program turned off. So bring out BinHex

5.0, or StuffIt equipped with the MacBinary Translator, and process the PC file so you can use it. Remember, also, that even after you remove the MacBinary format, you may be left with a compressed file that requires even further processing, with decompression software such as StuffIt or Compact Pro.

So far we've covered what shareware is, debunked some common myths about it, and taken a look at why you should always pay the shareware registration fee for any shareware you decide to keep. We've also given you some advice on how to deal with file-compression formats, MacBinary, and using a PC to obtain Macintosh files. Chapter 2 will introduce you to modems, telecommunications programs, and several exciting ways to obtain shareware: online services, CD-ROM subscription services, user groups, and mail order.

CHAPTER

2

How and Where to Get Shareware

On-line Services

CD-ROM Subscription Services

User Groups and Mail Order

YOU MAY ASK, "SO IF SHAREWARE IS NONCOMMERCIAL, WHERE DO I FIND it?" You can't, in most cases, bop down to the nearest computer dealer or software shop to pick up the latest and greatest in shareware—generally speaking, commercial establishments don't carry the stuff. For an alternative product you need to turn to alternative sources. Most people get their shareware through on-line services, electronic bulletin boards (smaller, local versions of on-line services), CD-ROM subscription services, user groups, and mail-order companies. Each approach has its own advantages and disadvantages that we'll look at in turn.

NOTE. *All fees and charges mentioned in this chapter are current as this book goes to press.*

On-line Services

On-line services are probably the most popular way to obtain shareware, but they are also the most expensive. How do they survive? By offering almost instant gratification: You spot an interesting file and you download it. There's no waiting on U.S. Snail Mail; no packages to get lost or damaged; no sales tax to shell out. You want it, you get it. But to access the on-line services, you'll first need some tools, and you'll need to know how to use them.

The next few sections explain the basics of *telecommunications* (you've already seen this word shortened to *telecom*, in Chapter 1) and what you'll need to get started. The telecom process is essentially the art of coaxing your Mac to "talk" to or exchange data and files with another computer at a remote location. Once this is accomplished, telecom talking opens up a whole new world.

What You'll Need to Get Started

You might say that Macs are born with the gift of gab. All Macintoshes come equipped with a modem connection, so you don't need to open the case and install an internal modem on a special card, the way PC users do. Though your Mac is modem-ready, you *will* need to purchase a modem and possibly a cable, as well, to connect the modem to the modem port at the back of your computer. (This port is a small hole with a phone receiver icon above it.) You'll also need a phone line, of course, and the number of the electronic bulletin board (BBS) or on-line service you want to call.

A BBS is a small, local on-line service usually run by one or two individuals. A local BBS is almost always free, and provides the opportunity to download files. You can check with a local computer user group or a magazine such as *Computer Currents* for a listing of services in your locality. Much of this book's information on the major on-line services applies also to BBSs.

The primary on-line services require that you join or subscribe to the service. Some sell start-up kits that include telecommunications software, a password, and a printed user guide. With others, you simply call a number and complete a sign-up form that's displayed on your Mac's screen. Once you join, you usually pay an hourly rate that ranges from $4 to as high as $30, depending on when you call; this rate also depends on some other factors we'll look at in detail later. You'll usually be billed monthly. You can arrange to have the bill charged to your credit card or withdrawn automatically from your checking account.

Modems

The first piece of the telecom puzzle, the modem, is probably the most intimidating and confusing to many users. Here's some practical advice that will keep modem madness to a minimum.

When you use your Mac to communicate with an on-line service or another computer at a different location, you have to use a telephone line. That's easy enough for us humans—we chatter into the mouthpiece, and the telephone system duplicates the sound of our voice for the human ear pressed to the receiver on the other end. It's called *analog* or audio communication. Computers, on the other hand, manage information differently—they use *digital* or numeric data. Unfortunately, phone lines cannot transfer raw digital data; it has to be translated first into the analog/audio scheme. That's the job of the modem. It converts into audio (*modulates*) digital data coming from the transmitting computer; and it translates (*demodulates*) audio tones into digital data on the receiving computer; hence the name *modem*.

When you set out to buy a modem for the first time, you'll be confronted by a bewildering maze of standards, and decidedly user-unfriendly terms such as *baud rate*, *S-register*, *V.42*, and *V.32bis*. To get shareware via your modem, you don't need to concern yourself with most of this terminology. But you will need to understand a few basic terms in order to make an informed decision on buying the right modem for your needs. The following paragraphs explain these important concepts.

The *baud rate* is the speed at which the modem transfers data. The larger the number, the faster the transfer. Although modems with low baud rates (300 or 1200) are available, avoid them. You may save some money initially, but you'll end up frustrated by longer download times and higher on-line charges. Buy at least a 2400-baud modem; a 9600-baud modem is even better, obviously, but these are fairly expensive for most people. At the present, the major on-line services do not offer support for baud rates faster than 9600; if they do, they generally charge more for the connect time. Support for 9600 baud tends to be limited to metropolitan areas, although this is rapidly changing.

The modem you purchase should offer *Hayes compatibility*. This is essential if you want a fairly hassle-free introduction to Mac telecommunications.

Hayes compatibility utilizes a unique programming language called the Hayes AT Standard Command Set. Usually you don't need to be aware of the AT command set; but it's a vital element in making sure that your modem, Mac, and telecom software operate together properly. In many cases your telecom software will automatically supply the proper AT commands to configure your modem at the beginning of a telecommunications session, without any intervention on your part. That's fortunate, because the typical string of AT commands sent to your modem resembles alphabet soup or something a monkey might have typed, as in this example:

```
AT E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D0 &K0 &Q5 S0=0 S36=7
```

If you ever do have to delve into the cabala of the AT command set, your modem probably comes with a sheet explaining the basics. Good luck. As Margo Channing (Bette Davis) said from the staircase in *All About Eve*, "Fasten your seat belts. It's going to be a bumpy night." In other words, expect some setbacks and excitement.

Your modem should also support the V.32/V.32bis and V.42/V.42bis CCITT standards, especially if you opt for a modem that permits 9600-baud transfers. (For you Francophiles out there, CCITT stands for Comité Consulatif Internationale de Télégraphie et Téléphonie.) CCITT is a standard watchdog group similar to ISO or ANSI. CCITT standards control error checking and data compression during transfers. The V.32 standard, in particular, is required if you want to conduct 9600-baud business with on-line services. Not all 9600-baud modems support V.32, so check it out before you commit yourself to a purchase. The Hayes V-Series Smartmodem 9600 does not support V.32, for example, but many people bought it, not knowing about the importance of V.32 for 9600-baud connections. Don't repeat their mistake. (The Hayes Ultra 96 series does support V.32.)

Finally, you also may need a cable to connect the modem to your Mac, unless your modem came with a cable in the first place. Any authorized Apple dealer can help you select the proper one.

Note. Later in this chapter you'll find sections that describe the CompuServe Information Manager and Navigator programs in detail.

Telecommunications Software

In addition to a modem, telecommunications requires software. Mac telecom programs come in a variety of forms, both commercial and shareware. You'll even find software that is service specific. For example, programs like CompuServe Information Manager (commonly known as CIM) and Navigator work only with the CompuServe on-line service. The America Online service even requires special software (called America Online) that's widely distributed for free. Both CIM and America Online sport strong graphical interfaces that will look comfortably familiar to Mac users—point and click, in other words.

The most common (and versatile) type of telecom program, however, is called a *terminal* or *term* program. The chief commercial examples of term programs are Smartcom II from Hayes, MicroPhone II from Software Ventures, and White Knight from the FreeSoft Company. Smartcom II can hardly be beat for its simple, intuitive interface. MicroPhone II and White Knight aim more at the advanced user, with support for macro or programming scripts, as well as some other sophisticated features. Of the two, MicroPhone II offers a more polished interface, better documentation, and greater ease of use. White Knight strikes most people as a hacker's delight, which means there's a lot of power under that hood; but it also presupposes that you are or want to be a hacker. The White Knight manual is not for the uninitiated.

On the shareware scene, you'll definitely want to take a look-see at ZTerm, a seemingly modest program that, nevertheless, provides considerable telecom punch for only $30. It even does macros. This program is discussed in detail in Chapter 15.

America Online

America Online (also known as AOL) is the newest of the major on-line services, and its newness shows in its state-of-the-art look and feel. America Online provides arguably the most Mac-like environment of the on-line services, with a reassuringly familiar point-and-click approach to navigating and getting things done (see Figure 2.1). You have to access the service through special software that provides this interface.

Apart from its unique access software, the basic structure of America Online revolves, as in most other services, around *departments* and *forums:* areas set aside for special interests, such as commercial vendor forums, a Mac business forum, game forums, and so on. Each forum contains access to software libraries and message boards. The library search mechanism is slick and remarkably easy to use. The AOL Macintosh software libraries boast over 28,000 files. *MacWorld* magazine, too, maintains its own area on the AOL service, where you can contact the publication's editors and search current and back issues.

The AOL message boards, in contrast, strike many people as cumbersome, primarily because messages and their replies are not *threaded*, that is, linked together in any meaningful way. To catch a reply to a message, you must search through a scrolling list and hope the sender of the response has given it a title that makes it obvious he or she is replying to your message. And if you think that sentence was clumsy, just wait until you try to do some serious messaging on AOL. America Online is less than ideal for carrying on the kind of spirited and informative interactive discussions that occur on other services such as CompuServe, where message threading is in force. On the other hand, if you're only interested in downloading software, this messaging shortcoming will have minimal impact on you.

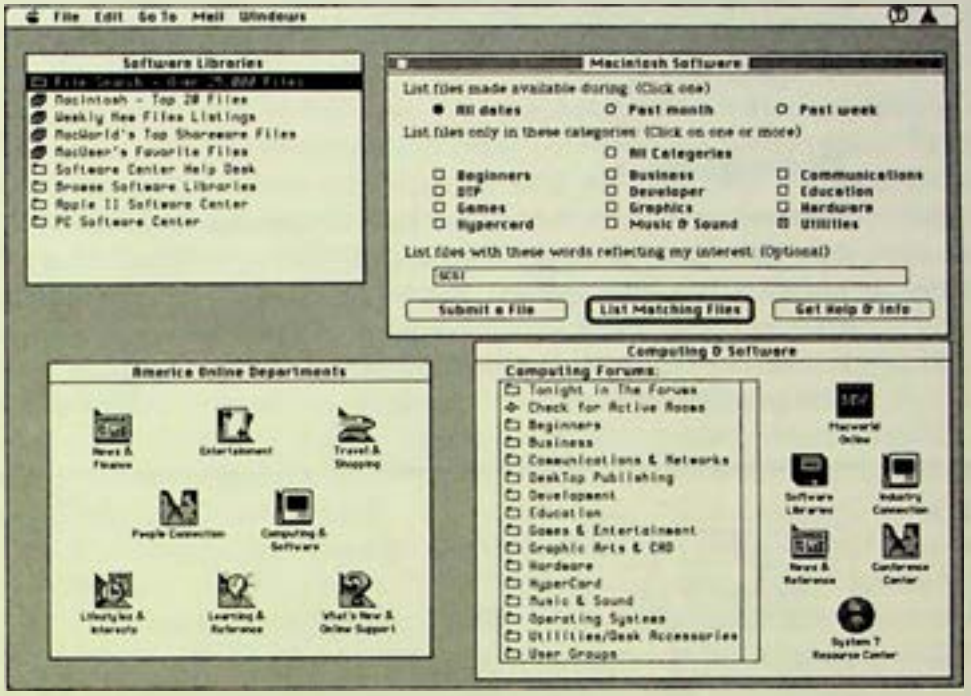


Figure 2.1
The America Online service interface

America Online also provides a variety of on-line databases and research tools, for example, the Compton's Encyclopedia. There are so-called *chat rooms* where users can "talk" to each other, on line, in real time (that is, you and other users can type messages to one another on screen, and carry on a "conversation"). A large number of Macintosh-related commercial vendors provide product support in special AOL forums.

What does all this great stuff cost? First, you pay a monthly membership fee of $5.95 (the first month you sign up, this fee is waived). That tallies up to over $70.00 a year—whether or not you use the service frequently. You are also charged a connect-time fee of $4.00 per hour. And if you connect to the service on a weekday, between the prime-time or daylight hours (6 a.m. to 6 p.m. local time), you're charged an additional $4.00—for a total of $8.00 per hour. There are stiff additional charges levied on subscribers calling from Canada, Hawaii, and Alaska that bring the total cost of an hour on this service up to a pricey $16.00.

To subscribe to America Online, you simply obtain the free software used to access the service, directly from America Online, Inc. This friendly software leads you by the hand through the sign-up process. It's easy and fairly foolproof. For more information, or to order the free start-up kit, contact

America Online, Inc.
8619 Westwood Center Drive
Vienna, VA 22182-9806
(800) 827-6364

CompuServe

Many people's first experience with CompuServe (known as CIS) ends in bewilderment and angry frustration. With over 800,000 subscribers and a Byzantine structure of menus, files, forums, and services rooted in its original command-line interface (see Figure 2.2), this behemoth of an on-line service is much loved in spite of itself. But even CompuServe has had to move, albeit slowly, with the times.

Figure 2.2
The standard CompuServe command-line interface

```
CompuServe Information Service
12:44 PDT Wednesday 20-May-92 P

 Last access  13:33 15-May-92

     Copyright (c) 1992
   CompuServe Incorporated
     All Rights Reserved

You have Electronic Mail waiting
GO RATES for current information



What's New This Week

  1 U.K. Computing Forum has TeePee
  2 Borland Deutschland Forum geoeffnet
  3 Space Forum has COBE Images
  4 Save Using Health Database Plus
  5 Find Local Businesses with Biz*File
  6 Save on !Quest Company SmartSCANs
  7 Play the E*Trade Game
  8 Meet the New Mail Merchants
  9 Ford Focuses on Performance
    (Above Articles Are Free)
 10 Online Today

 Enter choice !GO CIS MACFUN
```

Mac users now have two alternatives to the old-fashioned, DOS-like command-line interface: a program called CompuServe Information Manager (CIM), and another called Navigator. CIM resembles America Online's access software, with pull-down menus and point-and-click operation, but is not quite so slick and is less reliable, in my experience. Navigator automates on-line sessions, minimizing the amount of time you actually spend connected. Though not so intuitive as CIM, Navigator can cut your on-line connect costs dramatically. (We'll look at these two programs in detail later in this chapter.)

You may prefer to interact with CompuServe through its DOS-like (complete with prompt) command line. This means you type in commands to

navigate, download files, and so on. As shown in Figure 2.2, for example, to go to the Macintosh System Forum you'd type

```
GO CIS:MACSYS
```

Unless you're used to this bare-bones approach, it's not particularly user-friendly. Once you're accustomed to it, however, the nongraphical interface provides a much faster way of interacting with CompuServe than CIM does with its sometimes sluggish performance. (With CIM, you're often left cooling your keyboard while the pretty screen redraws and the program sloths about its business. Just remember that the sluggishness is on your nickel.)

Although it's a minority position in the Mac community, some Mac mavens, including your author, prefer the command line over the graphical approach when it comes to telecommunications. In my case, the preference is no doubt the result of a childhood trauma, or of my first computer having been a Kaypro CP/M machine. For some reason, I find the command line easier; I definitely find it to be faster.

CompuServe has literally hundreds of forums or areas dedicated to specific interests or subjects. There is a foreign language forum, a crafts forum, and of course forums dedicated to the Macintosh world. The dozen or so Macintosh forums belong to an interconnected association of forums called MAUG, the MicroNetworked Apple Users Group. Each forum has its own software libraries and message sections. This is by far the largest Macintosh on-line community in the world, with special forums dedicated to new users, Macintosh software vendors, hypertext, telecommunications, Macintosh games, applications, system software, and so on. There is no shared library, so you have to navigate to particular forums to download specific software. A shared on-line index called File Finder makes locating desired files a fairly simple task. (You can also access non-MAUG Mac areas through CompuServe, as discussed later in the ZiffNet/Mac section.)

CompuServe forum message sections feature message threading, allowing you to read a message and all of its replies (and even replies to replies) in a straightforward manner. Discussions flourish on CompuServe because of this, and as a result, function as a unique source of information about Macintosh computing. There is a staggering amount of Macintosh expertise available in MAUG's forums just by perusing the message discussions.

In addition to the forums, you'll find on-line encyclopedias and research tools; stock market quotes; an on-line shopping mall; electronic mail (called *e-mail*); CB (citizens band) simulation, similar to AOL's chat rooms; and much more.

The cost for all this varies. CompuServe is immense and wonderful, but it can also be expensive, especially once you're addicted to its charms. (Wags regularly refer to it as CI$ or Compu$erve.) There is a $2.00 monthly membership fee. The hourly rate for connect time is $12.80 per hour for a 1200- or

2400-baud connection, or $22.80 per hour at 9600 baud. That pricing scheme gives you access to most of the service's forums, libraries, and features. You can also buy into the Standard Pricing Plan for $7.95 a month, but this does not grant you access to the forums or their libraries. In other words, the Standard Pricing Plan does not let you download files. Also, some areas of CompuServe levy a surcharge if you enter them. For example, Computer Library, an invaluable database of company names and addresses and full-text articles from various computer-related periodicals, charges an additional $15.00 per hour, plus retrieval fees to boot.

Subscribing to CompuServe involves purchasing a membership kit. The cost is $39.95 (about $25.00 if you order from a mail-order company like MacConnection or MacWarehouse) and includes a copy of CompuServe Information Manager, a manual and guide to CompuServe, $25 worth of connect time, and a subscription to *CompuServe Magazine*. For more information on membership, contact

CompuServe, Inc.
5000 Arlington Centre Blvd.
Columbus, OH 43220
(800) 848-8900
(617) 457-8650 (Ohio residents and overseas)

GEnie

The third major on-line service of interest to Macintosh users and shareware treasure seekers sounds as if it is straight out of the world of Ali Baba. It's GEnie (that's GE as in General Electric), the on-line environment that is virtually identical to CompuServe. GEnie, too, is based on the forum concept (called RoundTables in GEnie-speak), with each RoundTable containing message sections and software libraries. The interface adheres firmly to the command-line party line. There is no formal graphical Macintosh interface, although tantalizing rumors, and rumors of rumors, suggest that there might someday be one. So, if you plan to *hookah* up with GEnie, be prepared to do some typing.

Two primary Macintosh RoundTables flourish: General Macintosh and Mac Programming. The contents of these two RoundTables essentially mirror what's found in CompuServe's MAUG forums and the software libraries of America Online. The GEnie library structure allows for batch downloading and cross-library searching. The message sections do not support threading, but are arranged more along the lines of America Online's message boards.

As do CompuServe and America Online, GEnie provides subscribers with a wide range of on-line databases and services, in addition to RoundTable or forum activities. You'll find real-time games and chat rooms for

amusement and socializing, encyclopedias, shopping services, e-mail, business and financial information, and more.

GEnie's charges are twofold, just as with the previous two services. You pay a monthly membership fee of $4.95. The hourly connect-time rate is $12.00 (prime-time hours of 8 a.m. to 6 p.m.) or $6.00 (all other hours, weekends, and holidays) for 1200/2400-baud connections; and $30.00 (prime time) or $18.00 (non–prime time) for 9600 baud. If you avoid the RoundTables and stick to basic services such as stock quotes, weather, news, an encyclopedia, and e-mail, at 1200/2400 baud and during non–prime time hours, you'll never pay more than $4.95 a month, because the membership fee grants unlimited access to those areas. However, 9600-baud connections, even if you limit yourself to the basic services, incur the 9600-baud hourly rate. And not using the RoundTables means you can't download software.

Uncorking GEnie's bottle to get at the goodies involves signing up. You'll need a credit card or checking account to secure your membership. You can set up a GEnie subscription on line or by calling the company. No special membership kit or proprietary software is needed. For details and full instructions on joining, contact

GEnie
401 N. Washington Street
Rockville, MD 20850
(800) 638-9636

ZiffNet/Mac

The first time you encounter the ZiffNet/Mac (known popularly as ZMac) interface, you may experience a sudden sense of déjà vu. Where have you seen that ! prompt before? You're not recalling a previous life, but rather an old on-line friend: CompuServe. Although ZiffNet/Mac is legally a separate on-line service, it nests upon CompuServe's mainframes through a special agreement. Because of its reliance upon CompuServe's computers, ZiffNet/Mac has perforce adopted CompuServe's forum, library, and messaging structures, and consequently merits some of the same criticism leveled at CompuServe's interface. As with CompuServe, you can bypass some of the difficulties of ZMac's stark command-line approach (see Figure 2.3) by opting for CIM or Navigator as the access software.

ZiffNet/Mac, like Caesar's Gaul, is divided into three main parts: the MacUser, MacWEEK, and Download and Support Forums. The last forum is where you'll find shareware files. The modus operandi of the ZMac Download and Support Forum libraries is somewhat different from that of libraries in CompuServe's MAUG forums and from those found on America Online and GEnie. ZMac Download and Support exists to house shareware files

mentioned in *MacUser* and *MacWEEK* magazines. The vast majority of other files submitted to ZMac, but not mentioned in any of the publications, are rejected. The forum, in short, acts as a kind of gold pan, shaking out the junk and leaving only the golden nuggets of shareware for public release. This means, however, that there are far fewer Mac shareware files available on ZiffNet/Mac than in the CompuServe MAUG or America Online forums, for example. It also means that you probably won't have to endure as many software lemons and substandard files. As with CompuServe Mac forums, there is a File Finder, updated once a month, that serves as an on-line index to available files. You can also download a file called INDEX.TXT (from the Reference library of the Download and Support Forum) that lists the available on-line software; this file is updated weekly.

Figure 2.3
The ZiffNet/Mac opening menu

```
            ZiffNet/Mac

   "ZiffNet/Mac" is a registered
          trademark of
   Ziff Communications Company
12:37 PDT Wednesday 20-May-92 P

 Last access: 09:18 20-May-92

     Copyright (c) 1992
  Ziff Communications Company
     All Rights Reserved

GO RATES for new Member Fee Information



ZiffNet/Mac                    ZMAC

 1 Highlights on ZiffNet/Mac (FREE)
 2 How To Use ZiffNet/Mac
 3 Magazines: On-line
 4 Computer News
 5 Download Software & Tech Support
 6 Buying Advice
 7 Not Just Computing
 8 ZiffNet (Non-Macintosh platforms)
 9 CompuServe Electronic Mall
10 CompuServe Macintosh Forums

Enter choice number :
```

ZiffNet/Mac provides access to various reference databases. Some of them, such as Computer Library, cost extra; some of them, such as the MacUser/MacWEEK Index and ZiffNet/Mac Buyer's Guide, are free of connect-time charges. There is computer news (the top *MacWEEK* stories are on line the Friday before the next issue appears) and industry analysis. In conjunction with *MacUser* magazine, the service provides a utility (available exclusively on ZMac several times a year) for free downloading. ZMac also gives you the opportunity to rub electronic elbows with the likes of Steve Bobker, Ric Ford, Bob LeVitus, Andy Ihnatko, and other popular writers/editors in the Ziff-Davis stable. In addition, membership gives you access to the PC side of ZMac, and ZEUS, the European branch of the service.

ZiffNet/Mac's charges are similar to those of CompuServe. You pay a monthly membership fee of $2.50, and hourly rates (except when you're accessing the various free areas) of $12.80 (1200/2400 baud) or $22.80 (9600 baud). The top menu as you enter the service is free of connect-time charges, so the clock isn't ticking while you decide where to go. Downloading files from the Download and Support Forum does incur the hourly rates. CompuServe provides a gateway between itself and ZiffNet/Mac, so that subscribers of either service can cross over to the other. Note that you end up paying *both* the CIS $2.00 and the ZiffNet/Mac $2.50 monthly fee if you frequent both services.

For more details, information on membership benefits, and instructions on how to subscribe to ZiffNet/Mac, contact

ZiffNet Information Service (ZiffNet/Mac)
25 First Street
Cambridge, MA 02142
(800) 666-0330
(617) 252-5000 (local)

Tips on Minimizing On-line Costs

As mentioned at the start of this chapter, obtaining shareware from on-line services is the most expensive way to get this job done. It's very easy to rack up monthly charges in excess of $200. I know lots of people who do just that and consider their on-line activities an addiction. Coming up in this chapter are some cost-effective alternatives that can help you "break the habit," but if on-line services do become your obsession, here are some tips and techniques that will help reduce your costs.

Avoid Prime Time

Many, but not all, on-line services vary their hourly rates according to the time of day. Though you may ache desperately for that on-line fix at high noon, it usually pays to wait for the cheaper hours. The CompuServe and ZiffNet/Mac rates are constant, but America Online and GEnie charge considerably more during the daytime. Rule of thumb: Prime-time connections double your costs.

Use Free Areas to Kill Time

When you are on line and need to be away from your computer for a few moments, don't leave the clock ticking. People often do just that, or disconnect (*log off*, in on-line parlance) from the service and reconnect (*log on*) when they return—both are a waste of your time and money. Most services have one or more free areas. Before you leave your Mac to its lonesome, zip into one of these on-line oases (for example, in CompuServe, go to FEEDBACK). You can easily save yourself a couple of bucks this way.

Know Your Service

To get the most out of your service, you've got to read the manual. Carefully read through the documentation (printed or on-line) that you receive when you subscribe. Roam around the services as thoroughly as your pocketbook allows. To save money in the long run, you may well have to spend some initially. As you explore, you'll uncover tricks and shortcuts that can lower your on-line expenses.

For example, here's a tip for CompuServe/ZMac subscribers who are accessing the services through a terminal program: Use GO words. They're also known as Quick Reference Words, and they allow you to navigate instantly to various parts of CompuServe or ZiffNet/Mac, bypassing the usual maze of menus. To go to the ZMac Download and Support Forum from anywhere in ZMac, for instance, you can just type **GO DOWNTECH** instead of backtracking through menus. If you're counting keystrokes, be aware that you don't even have to type **GO**; just **G** or **g** is enough. Also, you often need only type the first six letters of the GO word or Quick Reference Word. Both **GO DOWNTECH** and **G DOWNTE** will whisk you off to the forum.

Tips like this may seem trivial, but those hourly connect charges add up right along with the keystrokes. Anything you can do to streamline your on-line sessions is worth while. If you don't believe this now, you will when your first bill comes through!

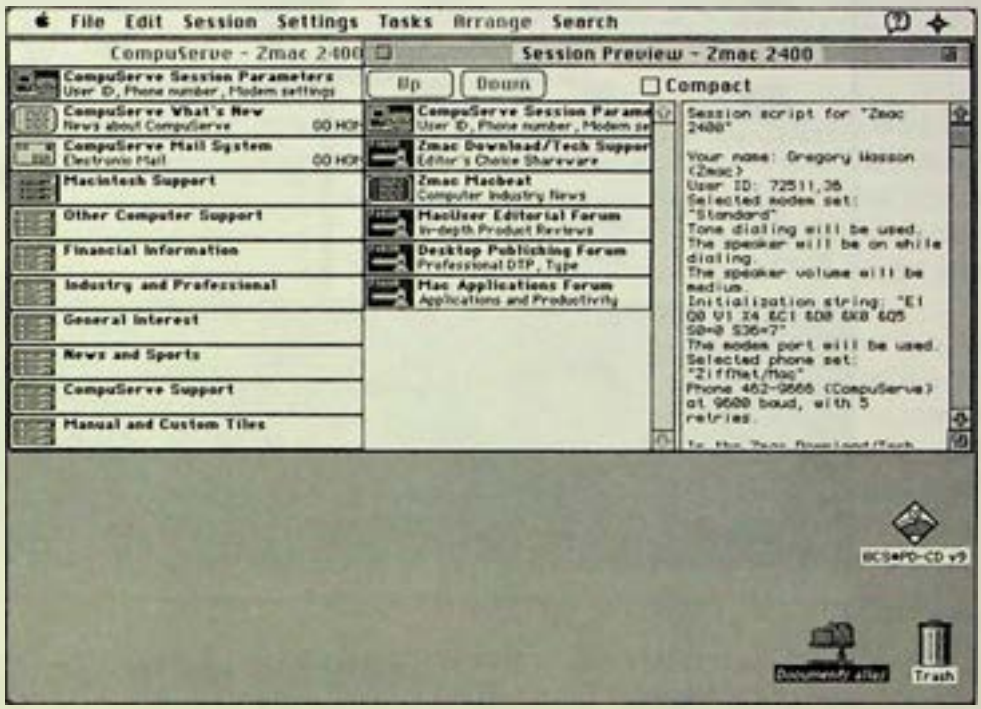
Automate On-line Sessions

Perhaps the single most effective way for CompuServe subscribers to cut on-line costs is to invest in a copy of a program already mentioned in this chapter: CompuServe Navigator. This telecommunications program was developed originally as shareware by Michael O'Connor, a well-known Macintosh software author. Navigator (or Nav, as it's often called) allows you to set up your on-line sessions off line (that is, while you're not connected). Nav has a relatively simple interface based on the concept of *tiles*. Tiles are essentially CompuServe destinations or tasks, such as reading forum messages and e-mail addressed to you, or downloading particular files, that Nav lists as objects in a window. You can double-click them to add them to your session window, as shown in Figure 2.4.

You do all of this—and other time-consuming chores such as creating messages or replying to messages you collected on previous runs—off line, before you connect to CIS, when time is not of the essence. Then you run your CompuServe session, and sit back while Navigator makes the call, connects on line, does the tasks you assigned it to do, and disconnects. The Nav program protects you from the intricacies of CompuServe—no menu mazes to wander, arcane commands to remember, or typing—much the way the Macintosh interface protects you from the kind of computational complexity DOS users have to endure. When you do have to do something complicated on the

service, such as providing on-line responses to a survey, you can drop into terminal or manual mode at any time. You can also use Navigator to graze in ZiffNet/Mac's pastures.

Figure 2.4
CompuServe Navigator



CompuServe offers free on-line technical support for Navigator in the Navigator Support Forum (GO CIS:NAVSUPP). You can also download the latest Nav version for free in the Navigator Forum (GO CIS:NAVIGATOR), if you are a registered user. The program initially costs just under $50.00 from mail-order outfits like MacWarehouse or MacConnection; the list price is $99.95.

Although it does not provide the same degree of automation as Navigator, CompuServe Information Manager (CIM) offers another way to lower on-line costs, simply by replacing CompuServe's confusing menu structure with a graphical, Macintosh-approved interface (Figure 2.5). With CIM, you don't waste time figuring out how to navigate the service; you just point and click.

The CIM interface lets you create and reply to messages or mail off line, a feature that can save you money. You can also download multiple files from libraries, but you must download any files that you've searched for and marked, *before* you disconnect. You can't review and mark a list of library files off line, as you can in Navigator.

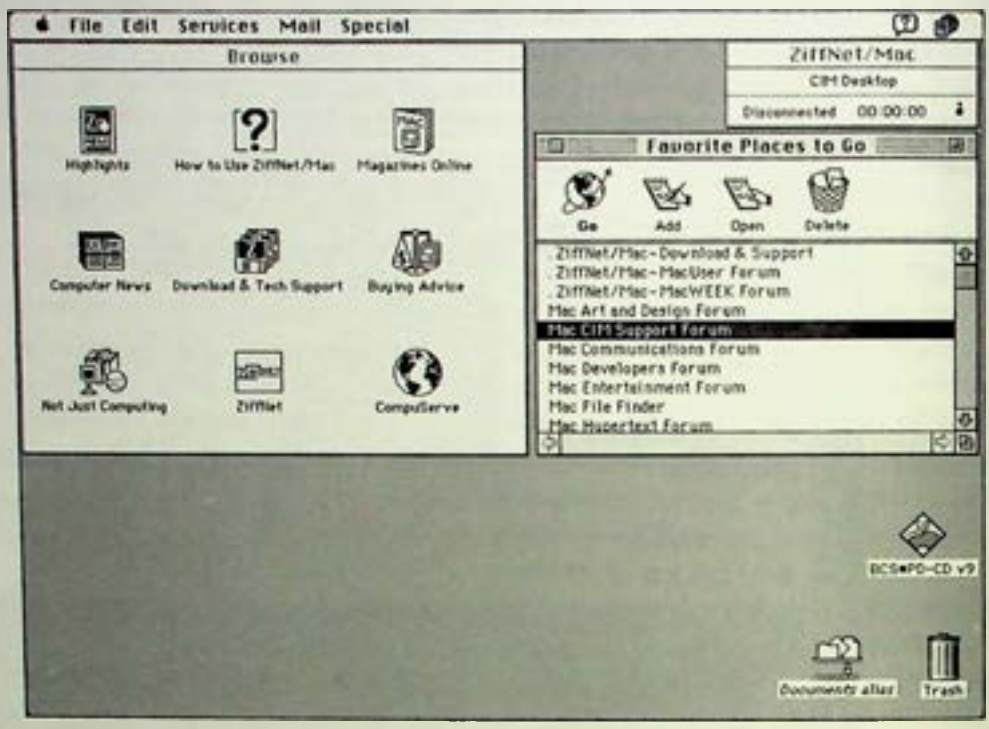


Figure 2.5
CompuServe Information Manager (CIM) interface

CompuServe offers free technical support for CIM on line in the Macintosh CIM Support Forum (GO CIS:MCIMSUP). You can also download the latest CIM version for free in the CompuServe Software Forum (GO CIS:CISSOFT), if you are a registered user. The program initially costs about $25.00 from mail-order outfits like MacWarehouse or MacConnection; the list price is $49.95. There's a coupon in the back of this book that will get you a copy of CIM for free.

Know When Not to Download

If the system seems sluggish, disconnect. Or if you've tried unsuccessfully to download the same file umpteen times, disconnect. Leave a message to the forum's staff or sysop, and check back later for a reply. There just might be something awry with the file or with your phone connection that day. Don't squander precious time persisting and perspiring through an on-line session that is obviously going badly. Remember—on-line services depend on computers. Computers are machines. Glitches happen. As that old childhood rhyme advises, "Come again some other day."

NOTE. *If you do end up with damaged goods, don't be shy. Request credit for bad downloads by contacting the service's feedback function. The forum staff can help you with the proper avenue for your particular service. There's absolutely no reason for you to pay for files you can't use due to phone line vagaries or a mainframe's mistakes.*

Advantages and Disadvantages

Using on-line services to obtain shareware has both advantages and disadvantages. Such services offer instant gratification and access to a multitude of forums and benefits, such as e-mail and technical support in vendor forums, in addition to shareware. You can usually be certain that you will be receiving the latest version of the shareware you download. With some of the other sources of shareware, this isn't always the case.

On-line services can, however, be expensive. Also, remember that you must still pay the shareware fee for downloaded programs, if one is requested by the author. By the time you add in the connect-time costs, you may be paying a lot more money than you anticipated. The mechanics of using the services can also be frustrating, especially at first. You'll probably find yourself stumbling frequently until you get your on-line legs, and until words such as xmodem, log on, sysop, MacBinary, and BinHex become second nature.

CD-ROM Subscription Services

Note. Computer CDs look exactly like their counterparts in the audio world. You'll need a special CD-ROM drive to use them on your Mac.

Although CD-ROM drives for the Macintosh have been around for several years, at first most users found it difficult to justify purchasing one of these drives. They are relatively slow in comparison to other computer media, and people didn't quite know what to do with this latest hardware toy. For many, that toy finally became a tool in September of 1990, when Nautilus first set sail.

Nautilus

An interesting alternative to on-line services arrived in shiny CD-ROM garb in 1990. Called Nautilus, it's a method of obtaining shareware and some of the other attractions of traditional on-line services, at a fraction of the cost. You might even call it the world's first off-line service. The unique Nautilus approach is one that more people should seriously consider. Described in company brochures as the first subscription-based multimedia information service published on CD-ROM, Nautilus is a terrific, well-implemented idea that goes a long way to making the promise of CD-ROM a reality—especially now that the price of CD-ROM drives is coming down.

The Nautilus interface—that is, the way you access the files included on every disk—is based on SuperCard (see Figure 2.6). It's slick, but can be slow as a ship in the doldrums unless you copy the Nautilus application to your hard drive. Once you've done that and double-clicked the icon, Nautilus begins to resemble an on-line service with a strong graphical interface.

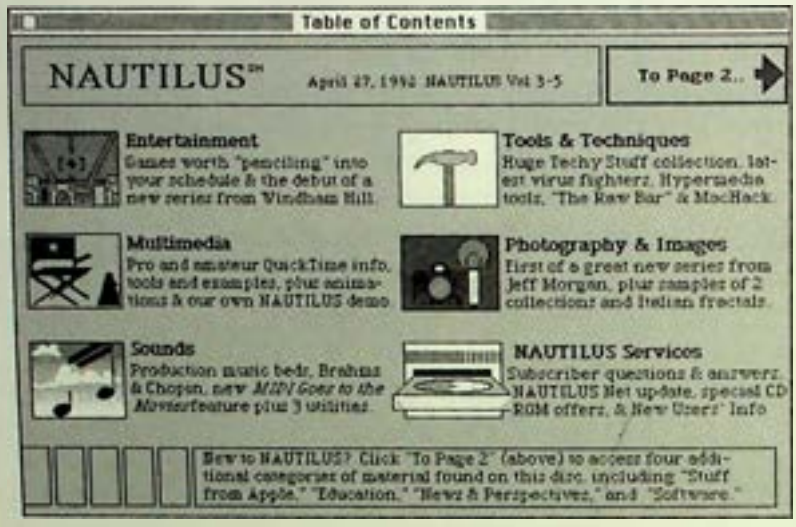


Figure 2.6
The Nautilus CD-ROM interface

There are fixed departments (the Nautilus equivalent of forums) in each "issue" of the program (Nautilus comes out 12 times a year). You navigate to a department by double-clicking an icon or button. You'll find shareware games, utilities, Apple system software, the latest version of HyperCard, TIFF images and clip art, commercial demos, digitized sound files, and more—400 megabytes or so in a typical monthly installment. There's also a built-in telecommunications program called Nautilus Link that lets you contact the Nautilus offices through an 800 number, to leave comments or for shareware authors to upload their software for inclusion in future issues.

A one-year subscription (12 issues) to Nautilus costs $119.40. That may seem expensive, but it's only $9.95 a month—far less than most people eventually spend on a month's worth of traditional on-line service from CompuServe, GEnie, or America Online. (And don't forget, for Nautilus you don't need a modem, but you do need a CD-ROM drive.) To subscribe or obtain more information, contact

Nautilus
7001 Discovery Blvd.
Dublin, OH 43017-3299
(800) 637-3472
(614) 766-3165

Advantages and Disadvantages

Nautilus's primary advantage is cost: It's one of the least expensive ways to obtain quality shareware for the Macintosh. It can deliver huge, multimegabyte-sized files that would put you in the poorhouse were you to download them from a commercial on-line service. Nautilus is easy and nonthreatening to use. Best of all, you can take your time to explore and examine the files and other information found in each issue, because there are no infernal connect charges amassing in the background waiting to appear on your next credit card or bank statement.

On the negative side, Nautilus cannot provide you with the same degree of socializing and interaction that occurs between users in the on-line environment. Moreover, you have to purchase a CD-ROM drive, which can set you back several hundred dollars. Be aware, too, that Nautilus does not necessarily provide you with the very latest version of each shareware program; new versions sometimes come out too frequently for the company to be able to guarantee that. But you can bypass this shortcoming if you register the software the way you're supposed to. The shareware author will send you the latest version.

User Groups and Mail Order

User groups are another popular source of shareware you might want to exploit. If there is a Macintosh user group in your town, attend a meeting—shareware is usually passed around. (Make sure you check the floppy disk and files for viruses before you actually begin using these programs.) If you don't have a local Macintosh user group, a couple of the larger regional United States groups offer membership to people throughout the world, and the opportunity to buy disks or even CD-ROMs of shareware. Meet the Berkeley Macintosh Users Group and the Boston Computer Society.

Berkeley Macintosh Users Group (BMUG)

BMUG is an enormous user group with members throughout the United States and in over 50 countries. Individual membership costs $40 a year and brings you two issues of the group's outstanding journal (they modestly call it a newsletter); an account on BMUG's electronic bulletin board (not useful, perhaps, unless you live near Berkeley); and unlimited access to the BMUG Helpline, staffed by technical support experts. BMUG also sells floppies stuffed with shareware. You do not have to be a member to purchase the disks. You can join a disk-of-the-month club for $50 a year, or select specific disks from their glossy, printed catalog. The latter is available for $20 plus

shipping costs. Individual disks cost $4 each. For $100, you can get BMUG's complete collection of shareware on one CD-ROM.

For further information on membership or ordering shareware, contact

BMUG
1442A Walnut Street, #62
Berkeley, CA 94709-1496
(510) 549-2684

Boston Computer Society (BCS)

The BCS•Mac Group is part of the Boston Computer Society, and is the largest Mac user group in the world with over 12,000 members. It maintains a free BBS for members (it requires a long-distance call if you live outside the Boston area), and sponsors dozens of meetings and events each month. BCS•Mac publishes an informative, attractive monthly magazine, *The Active Window*, that covers a variety of Mac-related areas, such as DTP, desktop video, and more. BCS•Mac also sells shareware on floppy disks and CD-ROM. Individual membership costs $39 a year and brings you the magazine and other benefits, including discounts on purchasing shareware disks. Individual disks cost $4 for members and $10 for nonmembers. The BCS•Mac Software Spectrum Catalog is available for $7; the shareware listed in it is well organized and rated. You can subscribe to a floppy-disk club and receive 20 disks (about 3 a month) for $75. The BCS•Mac PD CD-ROM collection of almost 500 megabytes of shareware costs $79.

For further information on membership or ordering shareware, contact

BCS•Mac
1972 Massachusetts Avenue
Cambridge, MA 02140
(617) 864-1700

BCS (General)
One Kendall Square
Cambridge, MA 02139
(617) 252-0600

Mail Order

The final source of shareware we'll discuss is mail order. A number of companies have sprung up to meet the need, distributing shareware on floppies or CD-ROM. The largest mail-order company specializing in shareware is undoubtedly Educorp. You can select specific disks from their catalog and pay

$6.99 per disk; there are discounts on multiple-disk purchases. The company has also put together "best of" collections that contain five disks for $24.95. Educorp also markets CD-ROM drives and CD-ROMs, including their own two-CD compilation containing over a gigabyte of files. The Educorp CD-ROM sells for $199.00.

Heizer Software is a unique mail-order source of shareware, specializing for the most part in HyperCard development tools, and templates for users of Microsoft Excel and Works. Heizer invites authors to distribute their handiwork through the company and pays them royalties in return. Although Heizer's offerings don't span the entire spectrum of shareware available, the company has a good reputation and is an excellent source for inexpensive, quality software.

Advantages and Disadvantages

The large user groups are, in effect, doing the dirty work for you. Their staffs scour the major on-line services and download what they consider the best or most exciting shareware currently available. This means you are relying upon their taste and selection criteria rather than your own. Some of the mail-order outfits have been known to distribute software on their disks against the authors' wishes. You should ask around to find out which companies are reputable.

Summary

Well, you've just graduated Shareware 101. These first two chapters have instructed you in the basics of telecommunications, shareware sources, safe computing, and file compression. However you choose to obtain shareware, the files described in the following chapters should definitely be on your wish list. Enjoy!

Educational Tools and Children's Programs

Games and Trivial Pursuits

PART

2

Educational and Games Programs

CHAPTER

3

Educational Tools and Children's Programs

AIDS Stack

Bar Codes Stack

Bird Anatomy

Earthplot

Esperanto Stack

If Monks Had Macs...

Inigo Gets Out

INITInfo Pro 1.0

Kid Pix 1.0

Math Orchard

Maya Calendar

PanaStack BW 1.1

PippinPuss

Save the Planet

The Vietnam War: A HyperCard History Book

Virus Encyclopedia

QUALITY MACINTOSH SHAREWARE AIMED AT SMALLER CHILDREN AND education represents a relatively small percentage of the shareware products available. I suspect this scarcity has something to do with the demographics of who owns and uses computers most frequently: unmarried men in their twenties and thirties. In any case, the files described in this section cover a wide variety of subjects appealing to several age groups. They range from simple programs that help youngsters learn the basics of mathematics, to somber treatises on AIDS and the Vietnam War. There's a delightful public domain version of the popular Kid Pix graphics program from Brøderbund that will entertain both the children underfoot and the owners of the feet they are under. There's even a stack that can convert any date to Mayan!

The selection here also clearly reveals the true vocation of the much-hyped HyperCard program: a tool of reference and information. Well over half the programs in this chapter are HyperCard stacks.

NOTE. *HyperCard is a program from Claris Corporation. Apple ships a version of the program with every Macintosh. As this book goes to press, it was version 2.1, and this version will allow you to run any of the stacks mentioned in this book or that are generally available. You may have to convert stacks created with an older version of HyperCard by choosing the Convert Stack command. For details, consult the HyperCard manual that came with your Macintosh. Some stacks described in this book require version 2.0 or later, as noted in the Requirements section of the stack's description. When this is the case, the stack will not run properly under HyperCard version 1.0, even if you use the Convert Stack command.*

AIDS Stack

The AIDS Stack was designed and developed in HyperCard by graphic artist Michael Tidmus in 1987 as a resource of facts and information about HIV and AIDS, to combat the hysteria that had arisen in response to the disease. It provides basic AIDS information: what the virus is; how it's spread; and safe-sex guidelines. It answers some common questions and describes the symptoms and various opportunistic infections that accompany the disease, such as Kaposi's sarcoma and pneumocystis carinii pneumonia. The stack includes an excellent mechanism for finding local sources of information in the United States on HIV and AIDS: You click a state on a U.S. map to display a list of addresses and phone numbers.

The stack has not been regularly updated, so its section on statistics and charts is outdated. A sobering example of this is the feature called The AIDS Clock. This is a card with a digital readout of the total number of reported AIDS cases and deaths for the current day and hour, calculated by a formula based on the infection and death rates in 1987. According to the Clock, the counts should have been 95,115 total cases and 36,702 AIDS-related deaths

on the day when this paragraph was written. A call to the Centers for Disease Control, however, revealed that the actual statistics were 218,301 cases and 141,223 deaths. The disparity between these figures underlines the sad need for people to study this stack and other resources like it.

The author requests that the shareware fee be sent to an AIDS charity called Being Alive, 3626 Sunset Blvd., Los Angeles, CA 90026; (213) 667-3262.

Requirements: HyperCard
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Another valuable resource for AIDS education that you might want to look at is the HIV/AIDS Study Stack by John F. McGrady, D.D.S., available as file HIVAID.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum. This is also a HyperCard stack. It takes the form of a multiple-choice quiz and includes an animated segment describing how HIV infects the human immune system.

AIDS Stack
Michael Tidmus
ARTSAVANT
832 1/4 South Mansfield Avenue
Los Angeles, CA 90036
CIS: 72551,1150
ZiffNet/Mac file name: AIDSST.CPT

Bar Codes Stack

Have you ever wondered about how those strange zebra-line bar codes work? These days, you find them on everything from packaged food to clothing price tags and even the U.S. mail. This free HyperCard stack will let you begin to read between those lines. It contains detailed information on most of the major bar code systems in current use. It begins with a look at two of the prototypes for modern bar-coding schemes, such as Morse code, and the rail code that was once used on plaques attached to train cars identifying their type (box car, engine, and so on). The rest of the stack explains a large variety of current coding schemes, such as BCD, 2 of 5, Codabar, UPC A (the standard bar code system for commercial, retail products), and Postnet (the system used by the United States Postal Service to encode ZIP+4® postal codes).

Requirements: HyperCard
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: If you're particularly interested in the postal variety of bar code, there's also a Type 1 PostScript font available as $$$ shareware, called PostNet. It's meant to be used within database programs such as Filemaker Pro (sample database included). For information on this font, you can contact

Computer Freelance
549 33rd Avenue, Suite A
San Francisco, CA 94121-2715
(415) 386-5972

The font package is also available on ZiffNet/Mac as file POSTNE.CPT in the Download and Support Forum.

Bar Codes Stack
(No address available)
Jeff Lewis
CIS: 76217,2241
ZiffNet/Mac file name: BARCOD.CPT

Bird Anatomy

Unless you've recently been traumatized by a viewing of Alfred Hitchcock's *The Birds*, you'll find this HyperCard stack an informative look at the physique of our fine feathered friends. Bird Anatomy covers the general anatomy of birds, as well as specific areas: wings, feathers, head, and so on. It explores the theory of flight and the ecology of birds. Even if you aren't interested in birds, this is an outstanding example of HyperCard's potential put to good, practical use. The stack is extremely well implemented, with extensive use of scanned images, digitized sounds, and hypertext. This freeware was mentioned in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*.

Requirements: HyperCard
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

Bird Anatomy
Patrick Lynch
Biomedical Communications
Yale School of Medicine
333 Cedar Street
New Haven, CT 06510
ZiffNet/Mac file name: BIANAT.SIT

Earthplot

Earthplot is a simple program that draws a map of the world globe based on your settings for latitude, longitude, and altitude. You can use the altitude setting to place your hypothetical viewer as close as 1,000 miles above the earth's surface or as far away as 160,000 miles. Earthplot has been placed in the public domain by a company called Black Swamp Software.

MacWEEK and some computer testing labs use Earthplot as a way to test CPU processing speeds for comparative speed tests. You can set the program to use integer (16-bit) or floating point (SANE) for its calculations. You can copy the plottings as PICT or bitmapped graphics to the Clipboard for use in word processors or page layout programs. You can also paste and embellish them in graphics programs.

Requirements: None
Limitations: Can be slow on low-end Macs.
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

Earthplot
Black Swamp Software
ZiffNet/Mac file name: EAPLOT.SIT

Esperanto Stack

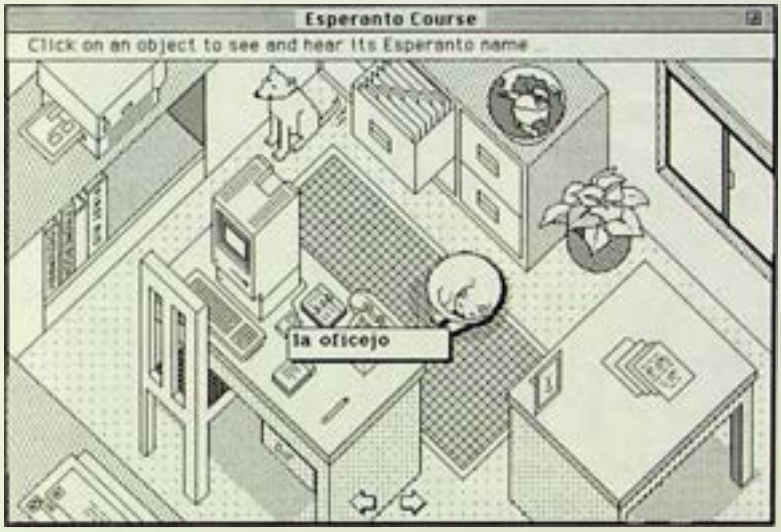
HyperCard has its supporters and detractors, but most people agree that it provides a nearly perfect environment for language instruction and learning—a bit like flash cards on steroids. A fascinating example of this is the Esperanto Stack by Michael Urban (see Figure 3.1).

Although many people know about Esperanto only as a butt of *National Lampoon* jokes, this stack reveals a somewhat different picture of a language spoken by over one million people. Esperanto is a language designed in the 1800s as a politically neutral second language for world communication, with a completely regular grammar with no exceptions. There are magazines and literature (translated and original) printed in Esperanto. Hitler and Stalin considered it sufficiently dangerous (because it encourages international communication and tolerance) to order it suppressed.

The stack gives the background of the language's history, and then embarks on a full language course. It uses MacinTalk to teach pronunciation. The stack makes generous use of HyperCard's capabilities and graphics. You'll find readings in the language, and a list of contact addresses should you want to learn more about Esperanto. Even if you have absolutely no interest in learning a second language, much less a universal one, the stack will be

instructive to anyone who wants to see how effectively HyperCard can and should be used for teaching languages.

Figure 3.1
The Esperanto Stack



Requirements: HyperCard. You'll also need MacinTalk for full use of the stack, although it runs fine without it. MacinTalk is available through most on-line services.

Limitations: MacinTalk features may not work properly with System 7.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Esperanto Stack
Michael Urban
P.O. Box 24560
Los Angeles, CA 90024
ZiffNet/Mac file name: ESPERA.CPT

If Monks Had Macs...

If Monks Had Macs... is a legendary HyperCard stack collection that almost defies description. Since its first appearance, it has been almost universally acclaimed as one of the most elaborate and beautiful of HyperCard endeavors. Despite its religious-sounding name, it's not a pious exercise in proselytization or Bible thumping. It's a sensitive, intelligent look at the best and the

worst in humanity (see Figure 3.2), at life's deeper meaning, with an emphasis on the value of the Christian heritage in confronting the modern world.

Figure 3.2
If Monks Had Macs..., a HyperCard classic

This is a collection of several stacks, with topics ranging from St. Thomas à Kempis's *Imitatio Christi*, to a Christian anti-Nazi movement whose leaders were executed during World War II. Interspersed with all of this are games, including some pinball simulations and a role-playing spiritual adventure about a monk's trek through the medieval wilderness to a monastic library. You'll find haiku and lowbrow—but all of it imbued with a profound sense of purpose. The authors themselves compare If Monks Had Macs... to a stew, with a blend of "odds and ends" improved by the mixture itself. The result is definitely meaty, and food for the soul.

If Monks Had Macs... was written, designed, and edited by Brian Thomas. Philip A. Mohr, Jr., scripted the project. It was discussed in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*.

The entire ten-stack collection is simply too big to be a download on any of the on-line services, but you can download some sample stacks. The ZiffNet/Mac file names are given below. You can also purchase the entire collection (compressed on three floppy disks) by sending a check ($9 at this writing) with a request for If Monks Had Macs... to

BMUG PD Library
1442A Walnut Street #62
Berkeley, CA 94709
(415) 549-2684

Requirements: HyperCard. Hard drive strongly recommended.
Limitations: MacinTalk features may not work properly with System 7. Pinball segments will not work on the Mac II family or large monitors.
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

If Monks Had Macs...
Brian Thomas
CIS: 73057,377
ZiffNet/Mac file name: MONKS1.SIT

Inigo Gets Out

Inigo Gets Out is one of the first HyperCard stacks ever released. That's not surprising, since its author was one of the original HyperCard team members. The story's gentle delightfulness has not diminished with the passing of time. It's about a kitten named Inigo who takes a tour of the garden and encounters some adventures along the way. The surprising thing about the story is that it is interactive and told without words. You point and click your way through it. Inigo Gets Out was discussed in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*.

Other (nonshareware) titles in the series include Inigo Takes a Bath, Inigo at Home, and I Miss You, Inigo. Are these stories just for kids? I don't think so. They are simple, but also filled with enough whimsy to keep adults entertained. They can be a wonderful, refreshing break from the flashing lights and sound effects of hard-core games. The stories are quiet, and I suspect you'll feel a bit like a kitten after "reading" them.

Requirements: HyperCard
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: You can purchase the entire series of Amanda Goodenough's stories through The Voyager Company, an enterprise that has long specialized in HyperCard products. It now also markets several other HyperCard stack titles, including Alice in Wonderland, as part of its Expanded Books series for PowerBook owners.

Inigo Series
The Voyager Company
1351 Pacific Coast Highway
Santa Monica, CA 90401
(213) 451-1383
Amanda Goodenough
ZiffNet/Mac file name: INIGOG.SIT

INITInfo Pro 1.0

INITs (or System extensions) have been flourishing in the Macintosh community for several years. Perhaps no other area of Mac shareware has collected such an extensive variety of products. These small programs, which run when you first turn your Macintosh on, alter the system file in some way to add a desired feature or modification to the existing Mac interface. The problem is that patching the system in this way can introduce software incompatibilities. And if you add several System extensions to your System folder, you also run the risk that the extensions themselves will interfere with one another. The result: quirky behavior, programs unexpectedly quitting, or even system crashes.

How do you find and apprehend the INIT culprit? Many people rely on an Init manager program, such as Baseline's INIT Manager or the shareware init cdev 3.0 (discussed in Chapter 12). You can use INIT managers to load a few of the extensions at a time until the problem reappears. Or you can just pull the extensions out of the System folder and add back a few at a time. But you can also track down a surprising number of INIT conflicts with a quasi-shareware HyperCard stack called INITInfo Pro. ("Quasi-shareware" describes a product in which some features are disabled until you pay a "registration fee" to a commercial company.)

Glenn Brown and Gary Ouellet are a couple of enterprising Canadian authors who have been compiling reports of INIT conflicts for several years. They created INITInfo Pro, a professional HyperCard interface, to house those reports. The stack lets you pull up information about hundreds of System extensions, both commercial and shareware, and determine if there are any known problems that might be causing conflicts on your Mac; in many instances, the program even offers fixes or work-arounds. As mentioned, the version of this stack you find on line has some features disabled until you pay the registration fee, but it's still an essential, useful tool as is.

Requirements: HyperCard 2.0 or later

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$$

Tips & Techniques: INITInfo Pro is supported on CompuServe in the MAUG MacSys Forum (GO CIS:MACSYS).

INITInfo Pro
Glenn Brown and Gary Oullet
(No address available)
CIS: 73777,1142
ZiffNet/Mac file name: INITPR.SEA

Kid Pix 1.0

Almost everyone with or without children has heard of or seen the paint program called Kid Pix from Brøderbund. It's an outrageous, totally crazied version of a standard Mac paint program, like MacPaint on goofballs. What most people have *not* heard is that there is a freeware version, a prototype for the commercial offering, widely available through on-line services and mail-order companies like Educorp. It's called Kid Pix 1.0.

This public domain version (Figure 3.3) doesn't have all the bells and whistles of the commercial version, but it's still wildly fun and fully functional. Though it doesn't support color or digitized sound, you and your kids should still find enough wacky pencil effects, rubber stamp shapes (based on the Cairo font), and patterns to keep everyone's imaginations stimulated. You can save your work (perhaps we have to call it *play* in this situation) as PICT files that you can open in other, more sophisticated programs.

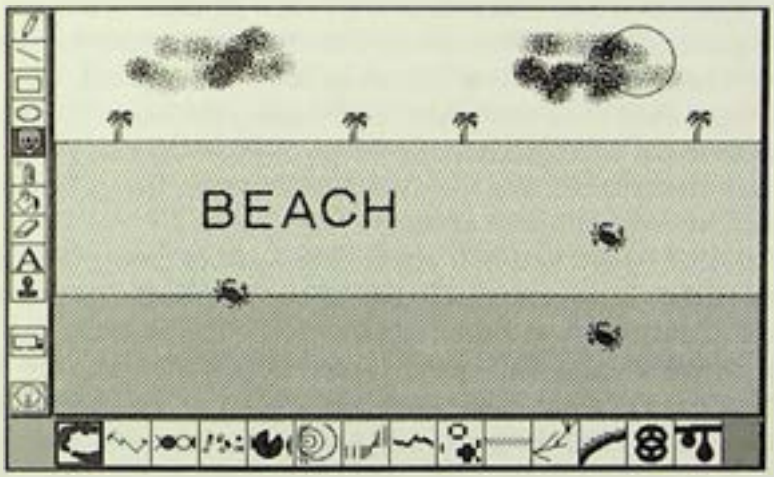


Figure 3.3
The public domain version of Kid Pix

The author, Craig Hickman, originally developed Kid Pix for his son, Benjamin, after Benjamin encountered some frustrating tasks with a standard, full-featured MacPaint application, such as moving windows off screen, launching DAs (desk accessories) accidentally, and so on. Kid Pix's windows stay put, and there is an option that lets you hide menus (including the Apple menu), so accidents can't happen. The drawing area is completely visible in the main window, so young hands don't have to struggle with scroll bars. The tools are all situated around the drawing window; you never have to use a menu unless you want to save the painting or quit the program.

Requirements: None

Limitations: Black-and-white graphics only

System 7: Occasionally has some screen-redrawing problems or other quirky behavior.

Registration Fee: None

Kid Pix
Craig Hickman
615 East 39th Avenue
Eugene, OR 97405
Bitnet: CHICKMAN@OREGON.UOREGON.EDU
ZiffNet/Mac file name: KIDPIX.CPT

Math Orchard

Math Orchard teaches children (kindergarten through grade 6) the basics of simple mathematics, in the guise of a clever game. The scenario is this: You help a farmer harvest crops in a fruit orchard by picking a fruit, such as Newton's apple, from a tree before it falls to the ground. You "pick" the fruit by clicking it and correctly answering a math problem that's displayed on the screen. The farmer pays you 10¢ for each fruit harvested. You can print out your wages (and thus your score) by "visiting the bank." (Perhaps the program can teach your children the virtue of thrift, as well.) You can set the fruit fall-time interval and the overall difficulty of the game so it will challenge children of different ages.

Another option within Math Orchard, called Going to Market, will appeal to the closet capitalist in all our children. It involves trying to sell the harvest to customers at a roadside stand. The child-farmer sets the price based on the weather and current market demand, which are displayed on the front page of a newspaper before the price is determined. If customers like the product and the price, the child gets some extra cash. If the customers feel they're being gouged, you can kiss your fruit good-bye. It sounds much more difficult than it really is—even young children usually catch on pretty quickly, and may start trying some cutthroat tactics on you. Watch out for demands for increased allowances.

You usually find Math Orchard on the on-line services split into two packages: the program itself, and a separate sound file. The sound file is not necessary to play the game, but it does add some sound effects that will probably lengthen young attention spans.

Requirements: None

Limitations: Won't print under System 7 if the commercial program Rival 1.1.6 is installed.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Math Orchard
Rudolph Helm
20711 104th Place SE
Kent, WA 98031
CIS: 70302,601
ZiffNet/Mac file name: MATHOR.CPT (the game)
MATHSO.CPT (the sound file)

Maya Calendar

If you think there is more to Mexico than sunny, chichi resorts in the Yucatán and Mazatlán, trust those instincts—you're right. The Maya Calendar stack pays homage to another aspect of Mexico and Central America: the ancient Mayan culture that once flourished there. Maya Calendar teaches the basics of the elaborate calendar system the Mayan priests developed. The Mayan writing system was based on glyphs, or pictures. The stack will teach you the glyphs for the days of the week, the months, and numerals (a base 20 system). At any time, you can take quizzes that test your ability to recognize these glyphs.

The stack also includes date converters, so you can convert a date in the modern (Gregorian) calendar to its equivalent in the Mayan scheme. Approximate pronunciation is given for each glyph. The authors, Lucinda Surber and Stan Ulrich, have included a bibliography listing over a dozen books for further reading and study. You might want to look for some of the authors' other stacks, such as the French Revolution Calendar, on the on-line services and elsewhere. Maya Calendar is free.

Requirements: HyperCard

Limitations: Some text fields may appear truncated on Macintoshes running Adobe Type Manager.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: The stack can serve as a source of interesting ethnic clip art for use in other projects (for personal use only). The glyphs were all hand drawn and are very attractive.

Maya Calendar
Stan Ulrich and Lucinda Surber
(No address available)
CIS: 70431,2760
ZiffNet/Mac file name: MAYACA.SEA

PanaStack BW 1.1

As we collect more and more grown-up toys such as VCRs, camcorders, and computers, it's inevitable that we'll want to use those toys in concert. Attempting to use a Mac with video equipment is a fairly common endeavor, and it can be quite frustrating for novices. Help is here.

PanaStack is a free HyperCard guide developed by Ernie de los Santos for the Panasonic Corporation. It's subtitled, "Guide for the Use of Video, VCRs, and Still Image Video with the Apple Macintosh II." You might suspect a stack of this sort to be just a baited hook meant to lure you to Panasonic's products. There's some truth to that, of course, but PanaStack to a large extent is a very practical guide, embellished with a considerable amount of detail. Video capture, projection, presentations, print-to-video, and post-production issues are all covered. There are excellent graphical drawings leading you through the connection process. You'll also find good listings of relevant equipment, along with contact addresses and phone numbers. A stunning color version of the stack is available by calling the author at (800) 833-9723, ID #512, and leaving a message.

Requirements: HyperCard
Limitations: Only covers Macintosh II series
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

PanaStack
Panasonic Corporation
ZiffNet/Mac file name: PANAST.CPT

PippinPuss

Remember Mr. and Mrs. Potato Head? No, not your in-laws or "those neighbors next door," but the toy you had as a kid. You can relive the magic with PippinPuss, billed as "family fun for all ages." Only this time, you're dealing with apples instead of spuds.

PippinPuss is a HyperCard stack that opens to a window with a bare, unadorned apple. There's a palette next to it with 60 assorted arms, legs, eyes, noses, torsos, and other body parts. You simply drag over a part and "stick" it into the apple. The result doesn't talk, dance, or move in any way, but children at least will enjoy it (and perhaps, too, those children who just refuse to grow up). The drawing style, by Bill Neville, is cartoonish but professionally drawn. A clean-up button strips the body parts off, restoring the apple to its naked state—faster than you can say "Texas Chainsaw Massacre."

Requirements: HyperCard
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $$

PippinPuss
Bob Neville
506 Oakdale Road
Jamestown, NC 27280
ZiffNet/Mac file name: PIPPIN.CPT

Save the Planet

Save the Planet is a HyperCard-based database and resource that addresses the subjects of global warming and ozone depletion. It makes an excellent research tool for individuals and is especially well suited for use in schools. Designed and developed by Roger and Kathy Cox, the stack is divided into four main parts, all accessed from the main card, as follows:

1. A tutorial section, called Global Warming and Ozone Depletion, helps you understand the problems associated with these phenomena.
2. A section called Protecting Our Planet offers practical tips on how you and your family can work to correct the situation through recycling, saving energy at home, being a careful consumer, and so on. There's also a built-in database of elected officials in Washington, D.C. to whom you can write.
3. A bibliography of books and other resources lets you further explore ecological matters.
4. There's also a "game" called Global Roulette that lets you set up what-if scenarios to see how the environment might respond to various levels of global warming.

The shareware fee entitles you to two updates as they appear. The program is also available for PCs with 512k RAM.

Requirements: HyperCard
Limitations: HyperCard 2.0 or later
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $$

Save the Planet
Roger & Kathy Cox
P.O. Box 45
Pitkin, CO 81241
(303) 641-5035
ZiffNet/Mac file name: SAVPLT.SIT

The Vietnam War: A HyperCard History Book

As the Vietnam War becomes part of U.S. history, it's imperative that there are ways to recapture the facts of that era, and to keep its lessons from being forgotten. Paul Gabel's HyperCard stack, The Vietnam War (Figure 3.4), has never been surpassed in the amount of detail and intelligence it brings to bear upon this tragic event. It covers events from Dien Bien Phu through the post-war situation in Vietnam, as well as the creation of the Vietnam Veterans Memorial in Washington, D.C.

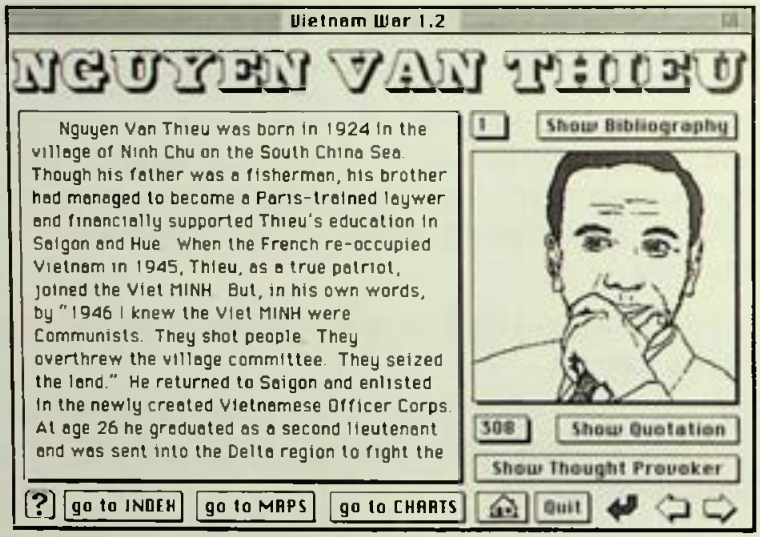


Figure 3.4
A screen from The Vietnam War stack

The stack opens to the Index, which is organized into five main areas: chronological, general, personalities, maps, and charts. You explore the rest of the stack from this Index and can easily return to it from every other topic card. You can thus learn about the war in any order you choose. The maps section allows you to click on individual cities, obtain in-depth geographical notes, and so on. An extensive context-sensitive bibliography provides relevant entries from nearly every topic card. There are digitized

photos and drawings throughout. All in all, this is probably the finest historical research tool ever produced in HyperCard. It's ideal for classrooms. The author asks for just a postcard in return. The stack was discussed in the May 1989 issue of *MacUser*.

Requirements: HyperCard
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: Teachers might want to use the Thought Provoker button located on every topic card as a source of questions for stimulating discussions in U.S. History classes, whether or not the stack itself is being used by students.

The Vietnam War
Paul Gabel
377 Collado Drive
Scotts Valley, CA 95066
CIS: 73477,2165
ZiffNet/Mac file name: VIETNA.SIT

Virus Encyclopedia

The Virus Encyclopedia is a simple, but well designed HyperCard stack that deals with computer viruses and the Macintosh. It covers the basics, such as

- What is a virus?
- What does a virus do?
- Common Macintosh viruses
- Virus detection, prevention, and repair strategies

The approach taken by this program is pretty simplistic, but the stack delivers enough of the basics to help you keep your Mac safe. The program won't, however, provide you with up-to-the-minute information on the latest viral scuttlebutt. Take a look at Disinfectant and its on-line documentation, discussed in Chapter 14, for that. Henry Schmitt originally developed Virus Encyclopedia for a Chicago user group called The NorthWest of Us. The stack was discussed in the January 23, 1990, issue of *MacWEEK*.

Requirements: HyperCard
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

Virus Encyclopedia
Henry C. Schmitt
6613 Scott Lane #17
Hanover Park, IL 60103-3849
CIS: 72275,1456
GEnie: H.Schmitt
AOL: HenryS18
ZiffNet/Mac file name: VIRENC.SIT

CHAPTER

4

Games and Trivial Pursuits

BeamWars
Big Cheese Key
Bombs!
Brickles Plus
Cap'n Magneto
Columns II
Continuum
Critters (Bigfoot and Eyeballs)
CrossMaster
Desk Invaders DA
Diamonds
Dungeon of Doom
Empire Master
Glider+
Globe
Glypha II
The Grouch
GunShy
HyperNetwork CHESS
Klondike
Kung-Fu Chivalry
Mac Bzone
Moire Screensaver
Mouse Odometer
Pacman
Pararena
Scarab of RA
SeaHaven Towers
SnakeTIX
Solarian II
SpinIt INIT
Toxic Ravine
Trek

THE MACINTOSH WAS INITIALLY OFTEN DISMISSED WITH A WAVE OF THE PC hand as a kid's toy—a slightly souped-up version of a Nintendo unit. It's ironic to me now that I bought my first IBM clone to serve, in part, as my primary game machine! To be honest, the first 128k-ROM Macintoshes weren't exactly powerhouses, so it's easy to see how the antipathy arose. But it's difficult to lay the same charges against products such as the Quadra, or even the Mac Classic.

That's not to say that the present-day Mac is not a good computer for games. The Mac environment encourages playfulness in many respects; game-playing is just one of them. Macintosh games, unless they're crude, poorly done imports from another computer format, often display the kind of stunning, highly detailed graphics that have been mostly unknown to PC gamesters until recently.

People love to be unproductive. Perhaps like kittens, though, we learn while we play. It's as good an excuse as any. And shareware games, predictably, stand out as one of the most popular types of download on the on-line services.

This chapter looks at over 30 examples of shareware silliness. In this group you'll find a game to slake almost any kind of gaming thirst. There are wrist-snapping arcade games similar to QIX or Pacman, role-playing adventures, outer space shoot-'em-ups, solitaire card games for those long, lonely nights, and even chess simulations for the highbrow among you. Some of the games here are clones of commercial products (Columns][= Tetris, and Gun-Shy = Shanghai, for example). Others developed into commercial software (Glider+ and Dungeon of Doom) but still exist in shareware forms. Tossed into the selection are a sprinkling of files that can only be called unadulterated nonsense: Mouse Odometer measures how far you've moved your mouse lately; Critters includes a System extension that displays eyeballs that turn to watch where you move the cursor. You'll also find every gameplayer's favorite, Big Cheese Key—it prevents your boss from knowing that you're actually playing a game on company time.

Whether you're playing at work or working at your play, enjoy. As Sherlock Holmes said, "The game's afoot!" So have fun—life isn't all spreadsheets and databases.

NOTE. *Macintosh game enthusiasts might be interested in the activities of the GAMER Project. Also known as the National Home & School Macintosh Group, the project is a nonprofit organization that promotes the entertainment and educational value of the Macintosh. The group offers special support to shareware game authors and fans. They put out an* Excellence in Amusement Roster *periodically (available on ZiffNet/Mac as file EARBK.SIT in the Download and Support Forum), which is a must-have compendium of facts about and reviews of shareware games for the Mac. The project also publishes a bimonthly, disk-based magazine called* Home & School Mac *aimed at the Mac users who are often neglected by the corporate-oriented magazines. At*

this writing, it costs $15 per year ($21 for non-U.S. subscribers). For more information, contact

National Home and School MUG
P.O. Box 640641
Kenner, LA 70064

You can also contact the group through electronic mail, as follows:

CIS: 70521,1327
GEnie: R.Nordling1
AOL: AFC MacFun

BeamWars

BeamWars stands out as one of the finest arcade-type games, commercial or shareware, ever written for the Macintosh. Despite its militaristic, salute-me sounding name, the game is actually a delightful, nerve-wracking combination of sound, skill, and color that bears a definite family resemblance to the classic arcade game, QIX. But this QIX is definitely not just for kids!

The game supports up to four players, either human or computer-controlled. The computer players can be set to novice level (probably the best choice when you play the game the first few times) or expert level. When you first start the game, you configure the player names, movement keys, beam colors, and so on. BeamWars is best if played in color.

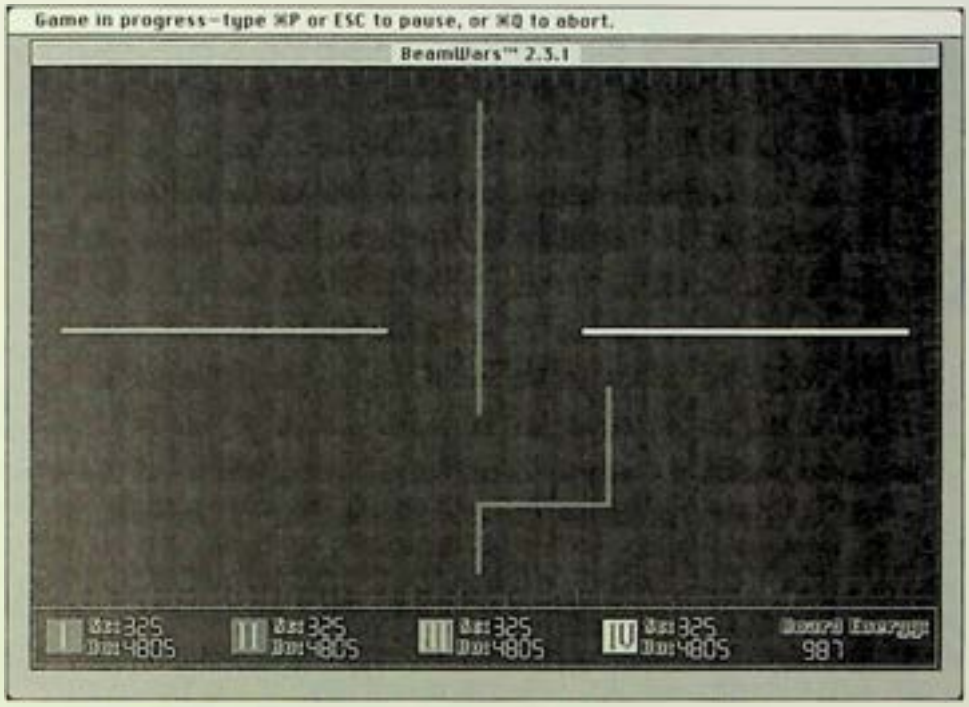
Then the game begins. Your goal is to maneuver your beam (fired from your side of the walled playing area) and lay down tracks or barriers, as shown in Figure 4.1. There's a catch, of course: You have to avoid the other players' beams and the four walls while attempting to force your opponents into collisions with one another. When beams collide, an explosion clears the playing board of some of the beam tracks already laid down, thus freeing up some space. The player who's responsible for the explosion sits out the rest of the round. The beams drain the board's energy and its ability to resist the four walls. As the board's energy supply decreases, the walls begin to collapse inward, depriving you and the other players of breathing room. The winner is the last player left when the board's power zeros out and the game ends.

Send author Steve Crutchfield an SASE, and he'll mail you information on his other software offerings.

Requirements: Color or gray-scale monitor set to 256 colors; 68020 Mac or better.

Limitations: Reported to be flaky on IIsi; won't run on Macintosh LC 12-inch monitor. No sound effects if you're using a System older than 6.0.2.

Figure 4.1
BeamWars



System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $$
Tips & Techniques: Although this game requires a monitor set to 256 "colors," you don't really need a color monitor—a gray-scale monitor set to 256 grays works, too. (The descriptions you usually see of this file imply that a color monitor is absolutely necessary.)

Once you have the game configured the way you want, remember to save your settings with the Set Defaults button in the Controls dialog. Otherwise you'll have to reset everything the next time you play.

If four human players are having at it, chain another keyboard to your setup. Trying to play with four pairs of hands around one keyboard brings a level of frustration to the game that you don't really need.

If you're really into QIX-like games and still have a Mac Plus sitting around, you should also look out for Iggy Iggopolis. Iggy Iggopolis relies on MacinTalk, does not run well under System 7, and is not friendly with MultiFinder or a big monitor. It's too bad Iggy has not been updated, because it's actually quite close to QIX in spirit. You may still find it on mail-order disks or through the on-line services. In the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum, it's available as file IGGYIG.CPT.

BeamWars
Steve Crutchfield
3000 N. Sheridan Road
Chicago, IL 60657-5553
AOL: SteveC24
Internet: stevec@imsa.edu
ZiffNet/Mac file name: BEAMWA.CPT

Big Cheese Key

Big Cheese, Big Enchilada, Head Honcho, Numero Uno... . Whatever you call them, cranky bosses can put a cramp in your playing style. Throughout the years various games—Crystal Quest, for example—have actually had to be banned in the *MacUser* offices, because certain editors preferred playing the games to putting out the magazine. You've probably experienced the same problem, as well as the same solution. But devious types (people who want to keep their jobs, for instance) can easily trick their bosses with the Big Cheese Key. This control panel extension makes fooling your boss into thinking you're actually a productive employee just a keystroke away.

Here's how it works. You install Big Cheese Key in your System folder, and restart your Mac. Then start up a typical, serious piece of software like a spreadsheet or word processor, and press the Command and Delete keys while holding the mouse button down. This action takes a screen snapshot of whatever is on your monitor. Now play your game. You hear the boss coming? Quickly press the Command and Delete keys (without the mouse button), and the saved snapshot of the other program replaces the game screen. The cursor also changes to the watch, so if your Big Cheese has the audacity to ask you to do something productive such as add up that column, just point to the watch and claim you're recalculating the worksheet! When it's safe, you can get back to your real work—the game—by just clicking the mouse button. You can change the screen at a moment's notice, so if you're supposed to be working on a PageMaker layout that day, you can redo the Big Cheese snapshot to show a PageMaker window, on the fly.

Big Cheese Key is from shareware author Andrew Welch, one of the most prolific and talented shareware writers in the business.

Requirements: Should work on any Mac.

Limitations: None known

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: Big Cheese Key works under System 7, but when you install the shareware, make sure you open the System folder and drag Big

Cheese into the open folder. Do not place Big Cheese in the Control Panel's folder, or the program will not function properly.

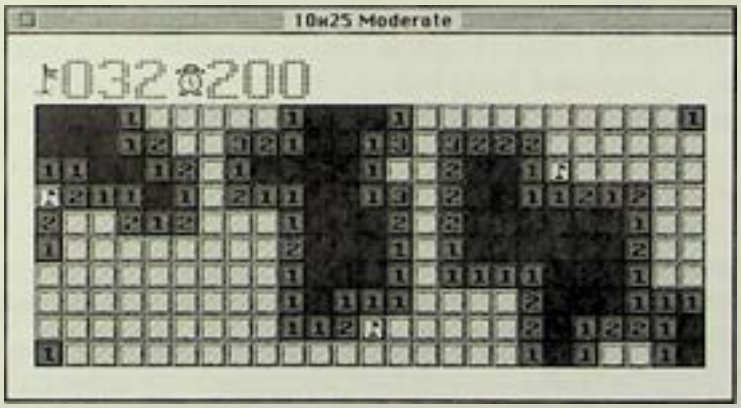
Big Cheese Key
Andrew Welch
29 Grey Rocks Road
Wilton, CT 06897
ZiffNet/Mac file name: CHEESE.SIT

Bombs!

For most Mac people, Bombs! conjures up unpleasant memories of the system crash alert dialog. Don't be worried—the name is ominous, but the game is safe. Based on Minesweeper, an addictive game that ships with Microsoft Windows, Bombs! does everything the Windows game does and more—it also does sound.

The game consists of a rectangular minefield. You set its height and width each time you play. Depending on the difficulty level you select, the field is filled with a few or lots of hidden bombs ready to go off. The initial field contains one revealed area, surrounded by numbered tiles. The numbers tell you how many adjacent tiles contain bombs. It's up to you to reason out which tiles are safe to click and reveal, and which ones are not. Click a tile you think is clean; if you're right, the square and all adjacent clean squares are revealed, as in Figure 4.2. If you're wrong, well, let's just say the game ends rather abruptly. You can also mark tiles you suspect are hiding bombs by Option-clicking. The game allots you a limited amount of time to clear the minefield.

Figure 4.2
Bombs!



This shareware import from Sweden challenges the mind, rather than the reflexes, so it's a welcome change of pace.

Requirements: Any Mac; runs in color on a color monitor.

Limitations: None known

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Paul Cunningham's Mines is another version of Minesweeper. Look for it—it's a delight. Mines is available as file MINES.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

Mines is included on the bonus disk attached to this book.

Bombs!
Christer Ericson
University of Umea
Dept. of Computer Science
S-90187 UMEA
Sweden
Internet: christer@cs.umu.se
ZiffNet/Mac file name: BOMBS.CPT

Brickles Plus

Pong was one of the first games to appear for computers or game devices connected to a television. Several versions exist for the Macintosh, but Brickles Plus is the best: It has sound, a customizable playing field, and support for color.

The basic premise is simple. There is a brick wall in the playing area. You have to demolish that wall, brick by brick (or "brickle by brickle" in this game), by bouncing a ball off the bricks with a paddle you control through the mouse. That's all there is to it. Brickles Plus throws in sound, as well as control over speed, color of various objects in the game, and paddle and ball size. You can play with one, two, or four paddles (placed at the bottom, top and bottom, or all four sides of the field). The game maintains a list of high scores.

Look for version 2.0 or later. An earlier version is described in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*. There are other games out there called Brickles; make sure you find the one by Ken Winograd, or you might be disappointed.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: None known

System 7: Compatible; it even stores its preferences file in the Preferences folder—the way a program's supposed to!

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: When you first launch Brickles Plus, the playing area fills the entire screen. Although you can't see a resize icon in the lower-right

corner of the window, it's actually there—it's just invisible for aesthetic reasons. Drag the corner, and the window will resize as usual.

When you first receive the game on line or through mail order, it has the brickles set to a fairly coarse pattern. That's OK for a compact Mac, but it looks crude on a Mac II- or Quadra-size monitor. Just choose the Color command from the Edit menu to select a different pattern, and change the game's appearance for the better.

Brickles Plus
Ken Winograd
20-39 Country Club Drive
Manchester, NH 03102
CIS: 70310,217
ZiffNet/Mac file name: BRICKP.SIT

Cap'n Magneto

Cap'n Magneto is a somewhat dated space game (1986) that bills itself as "the first interactive animated adventure game for the Mac." Although the graphics are pretty crude compared to what's available today, the game can still be a challenging, delightful experience if you can find a Mac with the proper configuration to run it (see the Requirements and Limitations paragraphs below). The sense of humor that infuses the game makes the effort worth while.

The game's documentation sketches out the scenario. You play the role of Cap'n Lance Magneto, investigating the disappearance of some trading ships in the vicinity of the Rigel IV star system. You're also on the lookout for an ancient artifact called the Crown of Control. The disappearance of the ships and the probable location of the artifact have both been traced to the Rigel IV area, where a certain intergalactic bad guy, Menturg, has his heinous headquarters. Your spaceship, of course, crashes. And with a line that comes straight out of the old text-only adventures of computing's infancy, "You awaken under an apple tree in a shaded grove," the adventure begins.

The game itself features a graphical interface. You move, fight, bribe, and take, by pointing to controls in a panel on the screen. The landscape is vast, and your goals are exploration, the recovery of the Crown, and the defeat of Menturg. Along the way you encounter creatures you can either fight or bribe, and you also discover objects that may help you in your quest. Despite its somewhat primitive form, the game is not easy to complete, so be prepared for some frustration along with the fun. Cap'n Magneto was briefly discussed in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*.

Requirements: Compact Mac. You'll need MacinTalk for full enjoyment of the game.

Limitations: Won't work under MultiFinder or with large, external monitors.
System 7: Incompatible
Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: When you first awaken as Cap'n Magneto, it's imperative you do the following as soon as possible: Find your tricorder (it helps you identify creatures you meet and acts as a universal translator); find a weapon; and make some friends (bribing with food usually works). Friends increase your chances in battles.

A final word: author Al Evans contacted me through an on-line service about his experiences as a shareware author. His decision to stop supporting Cap'n Magneto, and his thoughts on shareware in general are so striking—and so much more persuasive than my own comments in this book urging you to always pay for shareware. I think it worth while to share his words with you:

A VERY small minority of people actually paid the shareware fee for Cap'n Magneto. In view of the widespread distribution of the game (a friend recently told me there's a copy on every generic hard disk that comes out of Singapore), I would say substantially fewer than 1 percent. However, that 1 percent includes people from all over the world, 19 different countries at last count. And it did make me well-known. So maybe it was worth it.

As to doing it all over again, I'd love to—if I were independently wealthy. As it is, I almost starved, and since 1986 or so, I've been doing far less interesting work, but making money at it, and money is a very useful substance when you have a teenage daughter to raise. I have occasionally worked on an updated version, but really haven't had the spare time to get it ready for release or to shop for a potential publisher...

If I could ask a favor—and since you're writing a book—could you possibly mention that, while I appreciate the letters and contributions that still come in occasionally, I'm really not supporting the game any more, and so I haven't cashed any of the checks for over a year? It makes me feel good that people still play the game, but guilty that I haven't the time to answer the questions they ask.

Cap'n Magneto
Al Evans
c/o Power Tools
1206 Karen Avenue
Austin, TX 78757
CIS:72167,2253
ZiffNet/Mac file name: CAPTMA.SIT

Columns][

Tetris has been a runaway bestseller for both Macintosh and PC. Shareware authors started almost immediately to crank out clones, and there are perhaps dozens of Tetris wannabees now tormenting addictive personalities around the world. One of the best on the Macintosh is Columns][by Steve Christensen.

Columns][was actually modeled (according to the author) on a UNIX game called xcolumns, but it's really Tetris with an unusual twist: You don't rotate irregular rectangular shapes as they fall from the top to the bottom of the playing window; instead, you cycle patterned boxes contained within each rectangle. Figure 4.3 shows a game in progress. The goal is to arrange the patterned boxes in runs of the same pattern horizontally, vertically, or diagonally. When you do, the matching boxes disappear from the playing area, and surrounding tiles fall to take up the empty space, sometimes setting off chain reactions as other matches are formed. You can move the falling tiles left or right, and can force the current piece to fall immediately to the bottom by pressing the Spacebar. There's also a special piece called the Bomb that falls on tiles at the bottom of the playing area. The Bomb also may or may not change the patterns in adjacent boxes, which may or may not work to your advantage. You have control over the number of possible patterns (4 to 12), and there is a Show Next Piece option.

The game has some decent sound effects, but lacks Tetris's folk music and stunning background graphics. Even so, Columns][is a great wrinkle on the commercial classic, and a blast to play.

Requirements: Any Mac; runs in color on a color monitor.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: If you want the Tetris rush, but prefer a simpler game, try Dropper, by C. K. Haun. Single, consistently shaped rectangles in a variety of colors drop in this clone. Simply arrange the rectangles to form runs of the same color horizontally, vertically, or diagonally. Dropper is challenging, but not as complex as other variations on Tetris, because you don't have to fit together odd shapes (each rectangle has the same shape). The game is available as file DROPPE.SIT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

Columns][
Steve Christensen
6901 Chiala Lane
San Jose, CA 95129
CIS: 76174,1712
ZiffNet/Mac file name: COLUMS.CPT

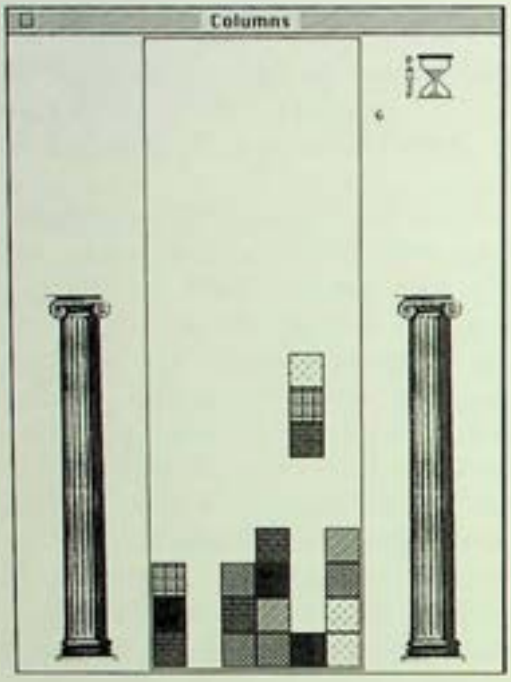


Figure 4.3
Columns II, a shareware Tetris clone

Continuum

Continuum is a dandy outer-space arcade game that's extremely popular with almost anyone who gets sucked into its universe. You guide a spaceship through maze after maze filled with alien weapons that are trying to take you out. Your goal is to take them out first (you get 10 to 500 points for each one destroyed) and clear the maze so you can proceed to the next one. The levels increase in difficulty as you move along. You have a bird's-eye view of the portion of the maze you're in, and of the standard arcade controls: turn left, turn right, raise shields, thrust, and fire. Your fuel can run out, but there are fuel stations along the way where you can dock to gas up.

Continuum is similar in concept to the commercial game OIDS, though not nearly as complex or imaginative. Continuum is also strictly a black-and-white affair, but it's an addictive, oddly charming game you won't soon forget. For the greatest compatibility with the newer Macs and System 7, look for version 1.03 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Incompatible with System 6.0 on a Mac 512K, Mac Plus, or SE; incompatible with MacBugs, and generally persnickety about extensions.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: The Apple System Installer generally places a program called Easy Access in the System folder. This program is intended for handicapped users, but it can get in the way of others. It can turn itself on unexpectedly at any time, and cause problems with Continuum and other programs as well. If you don't need to use Easy Access, remove it.

Whenever you move to a new level, immediately view the overhead map (Command-M) to get your bearings. The map shows the entire planet maze. This simple step can save you a lot of aimless wandering.

Continuum's built-in level editor has spawned a small, but prolific cottage industry of players creating and sharing Continuum levels. Check for these levels at user group meetings or search them out in CompuServe, GEnie, or America Online. They'll help keep the game fresh and playable.

Continuum
Randy and Brian Wilson
82D Escondido Village
Stanford, CA 94305
Internet: rwilson@cs.stanford.edu
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: CONTIN.CPT

Critters (Bigfoot and Eyeballs)

Critters is a collection of two free System extensions from Ben Haller, creator of Solarian II (described later in this chapter). Bigfoot causes little footprints to march across your screen, mirroring your mouse movements. Those little feet become annoying fairly quickly, but the second extension, Eyeballs, is a scream. Two eyeballs appear in the menu bar; their gaze follows your pointer as you move it around the screen. Those peepers also sometimes fall asleep. Very, very cool.

Requirements: System 4.1 or later

Limitations: Bigfoot may cause slight screen redraw problems under MultiFinder.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Besides being humorous, the Eyeballs part of Critters can play a role in saving your eyesight and cutting back on frustration. Your pointer can often "disappear" or become lost on a cluttered or large screen. Since Eyeballs always ogles the pointer, it can help you get an idea of where you should hunt for it on the screen. There are also more sophisticated System extensions out there, specifically created for finding the pointer (for example, CursorBeacon and CursorFixer, files CURBEA.CPT and CURFIX.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum). But Eyeballs is a lot more fun.

Critters (Bigfoot and Eyeballs)
Ben Haller
32 Deer Haven Drive
Ithaca, NY 14850
Internet: deadman@garnet.berkeley.edu
ZiffNet/Mac file name: CRITTR.SIT

CrossMaster

CrossMaster is a crossword puzzle program that lets you create crossword puzzles on your Mac. It's available as version 1.1, a freeware demo that has some features (such as Save) disabled. You can also get version 0.4, an earlier beta version that is fully functional. The puzzles can be as large as 50 by 50 tiles. Once the puzzle is created, you can either solve it on screen within the program, or print it out for an immersion in the web of words on some other lazy afternoon.

CrossMaster operates in either the Build or Solve mode. To create a puzzle from scratch in Build mode, you set the grid size and then place the solid areas of the puzzle. You can even have the program make your puzzle symmetrical by turning on the horizontal and vertical reflection controls. Then when you place a solid area in the puzzle grid, the solid area is duplicated on the opposite side of the grid. The program numbers the puzzle properly when you're finished constructing the grid and then you move on to write the clues.

In Solve mode, there are three windows to work with: the main puzzle grid, the across clues, and the down clues. Click a clue, and the appropriate area in the puzzle grid is highlighted and you can type in the answer. You can also move around in the puzzle itself by pressing Return, Tab, or the arrow keys.

The program can also automatically generate puzzles from word lists saved in text-only format. To create the word list, you enter each word/clue pair (separated by the vertical bar character) on one line. CrossMaster then reads the list and organizes the words into a puzzle grid as much as possible.

This clever program can open crosswords created in the Crossword Magic or WordPlay commercial programs. Version 0.4 comes with several puzzles you can try to solve if you don't want to create your own.

Requirements: Mac Plus or later
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: Version 0.4 of CrossMaster does not have a way to save the puzzle grid as a graphic for importing into another program, such as PageMaker. Here's a work-around for System 7 users: Choose the Print command, and check the PostScript File box in the Print dialog. Click OK. Return

to the desktop, and open the PostScript file in a word processor. The top of the file looks like this:

```
%!PS-Adobe-2.0
%%Title: Babble
%%Creator: PrintMonitor
%%CreationDate: Wednesday, July 22, 1992
%%Pages: (atend)
%%BoundingBox: ? ? ? ?
%%PageBoundingBox: 30 31 582 761
```

Change the four question marks in the %%BoundingBox line to the same four numbers you see in the %%PageBoundingBox line immediately below it. Save the file as text-only.

You should now be able to place the file as an EPS graphic in most programs that will accept it. (QuarkXPress does not accept EPS files created in this way for some reason, but PageMaker will.) The graphic will appear as a gray box, but will print out properly on any PostScript printer. If you place the file in PageMaker, use the Apple LaserWriter driver instead of Aldus's driver. You do this by holding down the Option key when you choose the Print command.

If you do not want the clues to be part of the graphic, you'll need to select the option that lets you print just the puzzle grid. Another less complicated method is to simply snag a bitmap copy of the puzzle with a screen capture utility (see Chapter 7 for some examples). The captured image may not resize as nicely as the PostScript graphic, but the screen capture method takes less skill to accomplish, and the resulting graphic is completely compatible with all page layout programs.

If you want to see what the fancier commercial version of CrossMaster can do, look for the commercial demo, version 1.1 or later. It has the Save and Print commands disabled in various ways. This demo is available on ZiffNet/Mac as file CROMAS.CPT.

CrossMaster
Patrick J. Stevenson
c/o Focus Development, Inc.
903 SW 43rd St. #202
Fargo, ND 58103
(701) 281-1754
CIS: 71035,2133
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: CROSSM.CPT

Desk Invaders DA

Remember the classic arcade game, Space Invaders? Graham Cox has packaged that mindless time-waster in a desk accessory that can interrupt your work no matter what application you're working in. The author created Desk Invaders as a productive exercise in Mac programming; ironically, you can use it to totally fritter away your productivity.

In the game, you control a defending space cannon at the bottom of the playing window. Each game level has an animated wave of alien nasties firing at you as they hover overhead. Occasionally, a mothership streaks across the top of the screen dropping a smart bomb. Your goal is to destroy all the aliens in each wave. Destroying a mothership wins you bonus points. You control the cannon's movement and firing with the mouse. Desk Invaders runs in 256 colors, but there is no sound.

Requirements: Color monitor set to 256 colors.
Limitations: Won't work on a Mac LC.
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

Desk Invaders DA
Graham Cox
10, Carpenters Cottages, Clearwell, Coleford
Gloucestershire GL 16 8JX
England
ZiffNet/Mac file name: INVADE.CPT

Diamonds

Diamonds may be "a girl's best friend," but it's also the name of one of the finest, must-have games available on the Macintosh. Oliver Dreer has fashioned an entertainment masterpiece that towers as high above the competition, both commercial and shareware, as do the Alps above the countryside in Dreer's native Switzerland. At first glance, Diamonds may appear to be just another in a long line of Pong/Breakout/Brickles arcade clones—you maneuver a bouncing ball to remove bricks from the playing field so you can advance to the next level. But the similarities end right there. There are plenty of new twists to bring new life to this genre.

In Diamonds, you not only have to remove the bricks with the ball (you get five balls or "lives" per level), you also have to remove bricks in a particular order. The bricks come in different colors, and you can only remove bricks of a particular color when your ball is of that same color. You change the ball's hue by bouncing it off special brush bricks. On some levels you must

also unlock locks to get at some of the bricks, and the key itself is surrounded by colored bricks. As if that weren't enough, death bricks are scattered throughout the levels. If you bounce off them, you lose a life. Once you have all the colored bricks, you collect the diamond tiles and move on to the next level.

Diamonds sports a beautiful Tetris-like background and digitized, multichannel music and sounds. The game is sort of a cross between the commercial games Arkanoids and Leprechaun, combining arcade frenzy with liberal amounts of strategy and logic. You'll definitely need both reflexes and strategy to survive and solve the 15 levels. The only bad thing I can say about this wonderful game is that it's impossible to capture a screen shot to show you here, because of the way the program takes control of the monitor. To get all the features described here, make sure you obtain version 1.6 or later.

Requirements: Macintosh II or better; System 6.0.7 or later for multichannel sound; color monitor.

Limitations: You have to play in 256-color mode on a large monitor.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: The most important tip is to always think ahead. Don't automatically remove all the bricks of one color: You might just need one last red brick, for example, to avoid a death brick or to bounce off before you can successfully clear a level. Always collect the light-blue bricks first. Once you change the ball to another color, there is no way to revert to the light-blue ball short of forfeiting a life.

With version 2.0, Diamonds has gone commercial. Version 1.6 serves as a freeware demo.

Diamonds
Oliver Dreer
Im Egg 35
CH-4147 Aesch
Switzerland
Internet: odreer@iiic.ethz.ch
ZiffNet/Mac file name: DIAMON.SEA

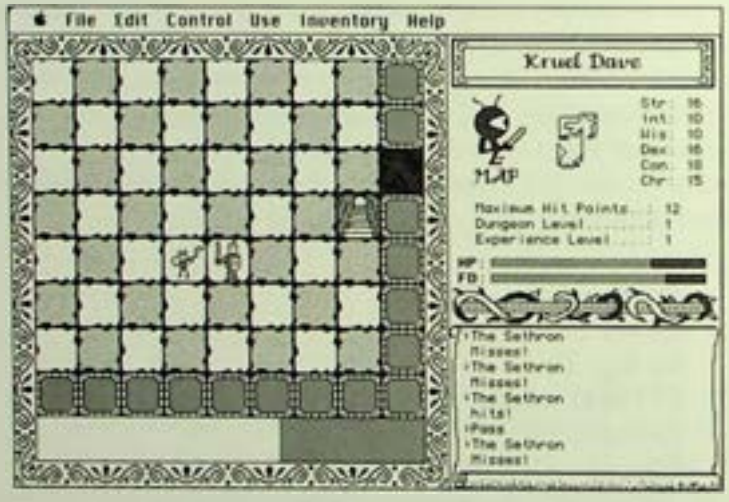
Dungeon of Doom

If role-playing adventures, hack-and-slash, and a sense of humor are to your liking, Dungeon of Doom by John Raymonds will be a game you come back to again and again. This delightful game—a successful marriage of arcade intensity and dungeon exploration—started out as shareware. When most users failed to pay their registration fees, Raymonds released it as a more expensive commercial product now called The Dungeon Revealed. Raymonds has

left version 5.4 available as a fully functional, freeware demo for the enhanced $$$ commercial game. The About Box in the demo gives details on how to order.

You start out, as in all role-playing games, by naming and defining your character. You also choose the name and character class (knight, sage, and so forth). Each class starts with certain attributes, such as strength and intelligence, that increase as you play the game (or decrease if you are playing poorly). You enter the first level of the dungeon with the task of recovering the Orb that lies in the lowest level, 39 levels beneath you. You control the movement of your alter ego through the keyboard or with the mouse, hacking and slashing all the way down, with each level becoming more difficult and more complex. And mapping is a must, of course, because the lay of each level becomes known to you only as you explore. Dozens of oddball monsters, such as the Black Pudding and Zambits (which are cute but deadly killer bunnies), try to thwart everything you do. Figure 4.4 shows an encounter on one of the first levels.

Figure 4.4
Dungeon of Doom



Once you find the Orb, remember you have to fight your way back up to the surface. The chief meanie, the Dark Wizard, leads the attack to prevent you from escaping. During the entire quest you'll also be drinking potions, wielding weapons and armor you find along the way, reading magic scrolls, and eating. There are keyboard shortcuts for almost everything. Dungeon of Doom, unlike so many other role-playing games, is not ploddingly slow. The emphasis is on action and speed. The graphics, although simple when compared with something like Might and Magic, are attractive and often amusing.

Dungeon levels, the location of items, and so on are randomly generated each time you start a new game, so each play is fresh and diverting.

The then-freeware version of this game was reviewed in the January 1987 issue of *MacUser*. Check out the February 1988 issue for a follow-up look at the enhanced (with digitized sounds and more) commercial version, The Dungeon Revealed.

Requirements: 512k Mac or better.

Limitations: Color monitors must be set to black and white, or you'll encounter severe screen redraw problems. Crashes on a Quadra.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Don't race to the harder levels too quickly. Linger on levels 1–3 before going deeper, and acquire as much experience through slash-and-hack as possible.

If you find a monster ring on a lower level, return to levels 1–3. The ring will attract vulnerable monsters to you. You can kill them in droves and rack up impressive stats in no time—you'll need those stats for your final confrontation with the head meanie.

In the deeper levels, where the dungeon becomes a-maze-ingly difficult to navigate, drop the useless objects you have accumulated in your inventory, to lay out a path between the up-and-down stairways that connect the dungeon levels.

One of the most prized and rare objects in the dungeon is the wishing scroll. Caution: Wishing scrolls fail randomly, so save the game just before you read the scroll. Then if the scroll fails, you can revert to the saved game and try again until you get something good. Don't be greedy with the scroll—wishing for another wishing scroll or the Orb itself will inevitably cause the scroll to fail. The saving technique can also prove useful whenever you drink a potion. If the potion is poisonous or harmful, you can always revert.

Before you grab the Orb, make certain you have an ample supply of wands and magic scrolls. You'll need them to defeat the Dark Wizard. Once you snatch the Orb, things really get nasty.

Dungeon of Doom
John Raymonds
c/o Woodrose Editions
P.O. Box 2537
Madison, WI 53701
(608) 836-9387
ZiffNet/Mac file name: DODOOM.SIT

Empire Master

"Reach out and crush someone" is *Computer Gaming World*'s clever rubric for a war games section in that magazine. The best noncommercial way for Mac users to crush that special someone is Empire Master (formerly known as Empire Builder), an extremely well designed war/strategy game by Chris Eliot and Clayton Prestia. Aficionados of the commercial games Empire (for DOS machines) and Strategic Conquest Plus (for Macs) will want to check out Empire Master; you'll find it familiar territory.

Like the two commercial games mentioned above, Empire Master is composed of a vast unexplored world divided into continents separated by oceans. You start out in a home city producing army units. The rest of the map is terra incognita, with all areas blacked out until one of your units moves nearby. As you explore, you'll come across neutral cities you can conquer. Those cities in turn produce other units (armies, jet fighters, bombers, ICBMs, transports, ships, and so on). Eventually you'll leave your home continent via transports and begin conquests on other land masses. Unfortunately, the computer enemy has similar aims, and the two forces at some point collide. The goal then is to capture as many of the computer's cities as possible. If you capture enough, your silicon foe will cry uncle and offer to surrender.

Empire Master includes various keyboard shortcuts, including the ability to gather all units within a certain area to a specific location for staging. You can change a city's production at any time. You also have full control over the color of the terrain and units, so if your taste in geography runs to pastels or the bizarre, you can indulge it. There's also a built-in fatbits editor, so you can edit the unit icons (a good thing, since the icons devised by the authors are pretty stick-figurish).

The version of Empire Master available through mail order or on-line services is a demo with certain key features disabled, such as the Save command and some customizing capabilities. You receive the full-featured version on receipt of the shareware fee. You also receive a rules editor that allows you to customize the way units interact, as well as their relative strengths, speed, and so on. You can save these rule sets and load different ones to vary the way the game feels and plays.

Requirements: Any Mac with at least 1Mb of RAM, or 2Mb under MultiFinder. Supports color on color monitor.

Limitations: The demo version available through on-line services has the Save command disabled until you pay the shareware fee.

System 7: Compatible with Version 2.0 or later.

Registration Fee: $$

Empire Master
Christopher Eliot and Clayton Prestia
P.O. Box 371
Leeds, MA 01053-0371
CIS: 72510,535
AOL: ClaytonP
ZiffNet/Mac file name: EMASTE.SEA

Glider+

One of the most popular commercial arcade games for the Mac is called Glider, available from Casady & Greene. But the game actually first soared forth as a shareware game, and it's still available in that form as Glider+. Though Glider+ lacks the color support and greater complexity of the commercial version, it's less expensive and lots of fun.

Glider+ is fairly unusual for an arcade game, in that it doesn't involve killing aliens or humans. Its loftier goal (look for version 3.1.2) is to guide a paper airplane through 15 rooms of a house. There are obstacles, of course, in the form of candles (paper burns!), tables, naughty cats, and so on. If the plane hits the floor, you lose. To avoid the obstacles, you must use the air vents scattered throughout the house to lift the plane out of danger and progress from room to room. Your only controls allow you to move either forward or backward; all other movement depends upon hot air, as it were. The game is exciting, challenging, and environmentally correct—what more could you ask for?

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: You'll need System 6.0.2 or later for sound effects. No color.
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $
Tips & Techniques: When you're over a vent, rapidly press the forward and backward keys (> and <) to attain sufficient height to make it through the room. You won't even make it through the first room until you master this technique.

Glider+
John Calhoun
P.O. Box 442258
Lawrence, KS 66044
ZiffNet/Mac file name: GLIDER.SEA

Globe

Globe is, basically, eye candy: It decorates your desktop and provides some amusement or satisfaction. But because that's all it does, some may consider it empty calories. The game places a colorful spinning globe about the size of a quarter on your desktop, and runs in the background without noticeably slowing down other applications. You can make the globe spin faster, slower, or even stop the world if you want to get off.... Globe was mentioned in the October 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Make sure you get version 1.4 or later.

Requirements: MultiFinder; color monitor to have the globe display in color.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Globe
Paul Mercer
P.O. Box 160165
Cupertino, CA 96016-0165
ZiffNet/Mac file name: GLOBES.SIT

Glypha II

Glypha II is yet another arcade masterpiece from the talented programming mind of John Calhoun, author of Glider+. This time the game scenario places you in an Egyptian temple, battling sphinxes. An acid pool, a mummy, and other assorted demons from the desert make life tough. You enter the temple seated on a winged animal (it looks like an ostrich or dodo) and armed with a lance. You can turn left or right, and fly, too, using either the mouse or keyboard controls. The aim is to rush at and collide with sphinxes. If you are higher than the sphinx when you collide, you win and collect points. If you are lower, you lose and collapse into a pile of bones. There are also sphinx eggs to destroy before they hatch.

It's not as ecologically correct as Glider+, but Glypha II's wonderful colors, attractive graphics, smooth animation, and digitized sounds make it a guilty pleasure you'll want to indulge. Look for version 1.1 or later.

Requirements: 2Mb RAM; color Macintosh.

Limitations: Won't run on Mac LC 12-inch screen.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Glypha II
John Calhoun
P.O. Box 442258
Lawrence, KS 66044
ZiffNet/Mac file name: GLYPHA.SEA

The Grouch

The Grouch System extension replaces the standard trash with a special version: Whenever you choose Empty Trash from the Special menu, Oscar the Grouch (a character from the PBS "Sesame Street" series) pops out and sings, "I love trash!" That's all it does. It's cute and it's free. Look for version 2.5 or later.

Requirements: System 6.0 or later, and at least a Mac Plus.
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: The Grouch is adorable—so much so that several users complained to author Eric Shapiro that their children had trashed all the files on their hard drives just to view the animation and hear the song. Oscar was not the only grouch in those homes! Eric responded by producing an application version that does not actually modify the standard trash. It displays a separate window with trash cans that children (and adults) can click for their Oscar fix. It's available on ZiffNet/Mac as file GROAPP.SEA in the Download and Support Forum.

The Grouch
Eric Shapiro
Rock Ridge Enterprises
620 Hidden Valley #102
Ann Arbor, MI 48104
AOL: Shapiro
ZiffNet/Mac file name: GROEXT.SEA

GunShy

If you're tired of arcade shoot-outs, thundering space cannons, and the like, the appropriately named GunShy will prove a challenging solitaire diversion. GunShy is a freeware clone of a commercial game called Shanghai. Whereas the Shanghai playing pieces are based on Mah-Jongg tiles (an oriental game similar to gin rummy), GunShy has opted for different imagery: common

Macintosh icons snatched from popular software and Mac dialogs or alerts. The tiles are laid out in a static configuration in the playing window, covering a background. Your goal is to locate pairs of matching tiles and remove them from the board in order to reveal the background image. The challenge is that you can only remove matching tiles when both tiles are free; that is, there can be no tiles on top of them or to the immediate left or right. Though not requiring a tremendous amount of skill or strategy, the game does provide a delightful, quiet way to while away a few hours. GunShy was discussed in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*.

Requirements: Any Mac; color support on color monitor.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: The game does not inform you when there are no more matches. If you want to make sure that you haven't overlooked a match, select all of the free tiles in turn and then press the Option key. If there is a match for the currently selected tile, the matching tile will be highlighted.

Concentrate on finding matches for the tiles at the left and right extremities of the GunShy "deck," and attempt to free the top stack as soon as possible. This usually gives you the best chance of success at clearing the board.

There are at least two versions of GunShy commonly found through the on-line services or mail order. Version 1.2.1 features limited color; the icons and background are editable; and the tile icons are Mac-related. Version 1.3 has color throughout, but in the copies I have seen, the Mac iconography for the tiles has been abandoned in favor of unrelated graphics. It makes the game more difficult (which is not bad), but I find that version 1.3 lacks much of the charm of the earlier version. I'd recommend you look for 1.2.1. Both versions run fine under System 7.

GunShy
E. C. Horvath
UniMac, Inc.
Box 237
Holmdel, NJ 07733
Internet: ech@poseidon.ATT.COM
ZiffNet/Mac file name: GUNSHY.SIT

HyperNetwork CHESS

Chess, one of the most popular board games in the world, has several shareware Mac incarnations. Perhaps the best of the lot, in terms of both playability and attractiveness, is HyperNetwork CHESS. As indicated by the name,

this software is HyperCard-based and allows remote playing. Two players can face off in front of the same computer, or they can play on two Macs connected by modem, AppleTalk, or a null modem cable (players can even send messages to each other during a modem game). One player can play against the computer. There are on-line help notes for each of these configurations to help you get the game up and running as quickly as possible.

HyperNetwork CHESS can be set to one of three levels: easy, moderate, or difficult. The game can export or import chess problem files, so it can function as a chess tutor as well as a game. Five sample problems are included; more problem libraries, including famous games by Bobby Fischer and others, are available ($). Chess moves are noted in a modified Forsythe-notation scheme. The graphics are top-notch and the animation quite smooth. Check it out; look for version 3.7 or later.

Requirements: HyperCard
Limitations: No color
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $$
Tips & Techniques: Use a Hayes-compatible modem for reliable modem playing.

If you are using HyperCard 2.0 or later, before you can play you must convert the stack using the Convert command under the File menu. If the stack has not been properly converted, you'll see a small padlock in the menu bar next to the Style menu.

HyperNetwork CHESS
Ken Presley
c/o CICA, Inc.
Star Route 1, Mailbox 110A
McDaniels, KY 40152
ZiffNet/Mac file name: HYCHES.SEA

Klondike

Klondike is included on the bonus disk attached to this book.

Author Mike Casteel calls it "a hobby." You and your loved ones may eventually brand it an obsession. The game is Klondike, one of the simplest, but most addictive pieces of software known to humanity.

Klondike is a straightforward version of the classic solitaire card game of the same name. Its scoring window allows you to enter your name and displays a list of high scores. Or you can enter more than one name and enable tournament playing. The game window is where all the action occurs. Here you'll find the deck; the tableau—28 cards in 7 piles, with the number of cards increasing in each pile from one to seven and from left to right, and the last

card in each pile exposed; and the four foundation piles. The goal is to reveal all the cards in the tableau by playing the cards on each other in descending sequence of alternating colors (a red nine must be played on a black ten, and so on), and then moving cards to the foundation piles in ascending order (from ace to king). When it's not possible to move exposed cards about on the tableau, you reveal cards from the deck until you find one you can play on the tableau. You move cards between the deck, tableau, and foundations by dragging them with the mouse. The program takes care of scoring; you receive points for cards placed on the tableau and moved to the foundation piles. The speed with which you play is also a factor in scoring, so be quick.

All of this may not sound terribly exciting, especially if you've grown bored with the conventional solitaire table game, but this computer version displays a simple and charming elegance that has made Casteel's "hobby" a shareware classic, from the first shuffle of its electronic deck back in 1984. The program was lauded in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser* as one of the best Mac products available.

Requirements: Should run on any Mac from the Plus on; color support on color monitor.

Limitations: Will not play sounds properly on Macs running on Systems prior to 6.0.7.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: You can speed up play by double-clicking cards to move them from the tableau to the foundation piles, instead of dragging them.

Make sure you have version 5.0.1 or later. Avoid version 5.0; it contains a bug that prevents the program from scoring properly.

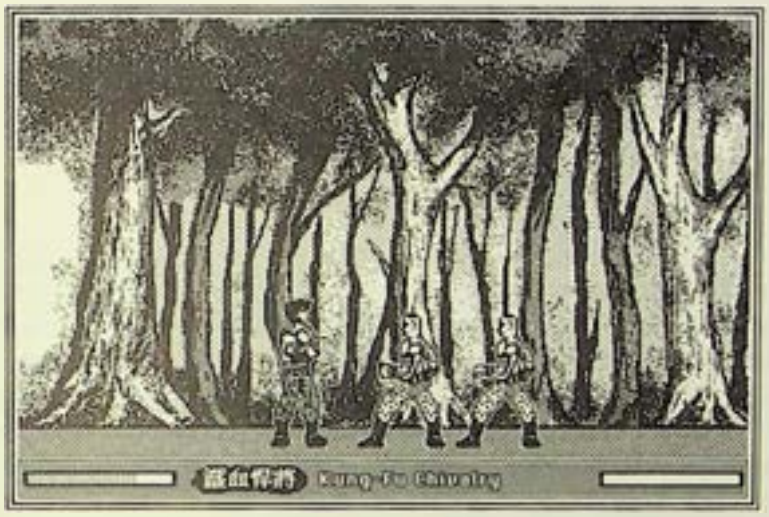
Klondike
Michael Casteel
788 Edale Dr.
Sunnyvale, CA 94087
CIS: 76174,2461
ZiffNet/Mac file name: KLONDI.SIT

Kung-Fu Chivalry

Bruce Lee lives! Or his spirit does, at least, in the form of Kung-Fu Chivalry, a surprising shareware game from Taiwan. This interactive animated game features excellent black-and-white graphics (see Figure 4.5), especially in the movielike beginning. Reportedly, this game was programmed in only six months—longer than the typical Roger Corman one-take, one-shoot schlock,

but remarkable nonetheless when you consider how difficult programming is in comparison to making trashy films.

Figure 4.5
Kung-fu madness on the Mac!



In Kung-Fu Chivalry you play a kung-fu fighter and must defeat assorted opponents. You control the fighter's chops, kicks, and blocks through an initially confusing assortment of keystrokes (you'll grow accustomed to them through practice). The game is violent—a common element of arcade-type games—but it's the only game of this sort I've seen where the author apologizes profusely for this shortcoming and worries whether the game might harm children!

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Monitor must be set to black and white; you cannot switch out of the game under MultiFinder or System 7. Somewhat buggy.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Kung-Fu Chivalry is immense—over 2Mb even when compressed—so you won't generally find it available on the on-line services. (If you do, keep in mind that it really isn't economical to download files of that size.) Try a mail-order service such as Educorp instead.

If the Kung-Fu genre is your cup of jasmine tea, take a look at MacNinja, a sort of Lite Kung-Fu Chivalry (and by a different author). Available in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum as file MACNIN.SIT, it features simpler graphics and less depth, but is still enjoyable.

An entirely different category of film (Grade-Z horror instead of kung phooey), Wolves in the Woods boasts an animated interface that's similar to

Kung-Fu Chivalry's. It's basically an ad or demo for a commercial game called Creepy Castle, but lots of fun and fully functional. You can find it on ZiffNet/Mac as file WOLVES.SEA in the Download and Support Forum.

Kung-Fu Chivalry
Albert Lin
Taiwan, R.O.C.
ZiffNet/Mac file name: Not available

Mac Bzone

You don't have to worry about aerosols or fluorocarbons diminishing Earth's bzone—it doesn't have any. But the Mac does, and it's called Mac Bzone, a professional-level shareware clone of the commercial bestseller, Spectre. If you don't know what Spectre is, you must have been in deep hyperspace hibernation for some time. It's basically a futuristic, 3-D tank game with the aim of blasting assorted enemy armored vehicles to kingdom come. Mac Bzone more or less fits the same description.

Unlike Spectre, Mac Bzone does not support network play; and the goal is not to collect flags or clear levels of the enemy. In fact, you can never completely destroy the enemy because the enemy (controlled by the Mac) has an infinite supply of tanks. You will always lose the game eventually, as you run out of tanks or ammo, but you try to go out with as many points as possible. The enemy comes at you in the form of tanks, supertanks, missiles, helicopters, and landers. You rack up scores ranging from 3,000 to 10,000 per vehicle hit, and receive an extra tank for every 100,000 points. The higher your score, the harder it is to obliterate your targets.

Mac Bzone's graphics are excellent. There are no filled shapes, just 3-D, wire-frame vehicles roaming about, but the animation is smooth and fast. You control your tank with the mouse functioning as a joystick. A radar screen shows approaching tanks. The game supports color, but a color system is not required. Look for version 1.3 or later of this high-caliber shooting gallery of a game.

Requirements: A 68020 Mac with an FPU (floating point unit) and System 6.0.7 or higher. It will run on Mac IIs and SEs with accelerator cards.

Limitations: Demo shareware version lets you fire only 20 shots per game until you register. The game's movement control may conflict with the sleep-now or sleep-never corners of some screensavers.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: The on-line help system doesn't mention this, but as you approach an enemy tank, notice what happens as the tank lumbers into

your sights: The sights "wink," indicating that your targeting system has locked on the tank. Don't waste your ammunition. Only fire when your sights show that the salvo will find its target.

Mac Bzone
Randy Frank
1936 Northridge Dr.
Coralville, IA 52241
ZiffNet/Mac file name: MACBZO.CPT

Moire Screensaver

Moire (pronounced "Mwahray") is a shareware screensaver that darkens your Mac's screen after a specified period of inactivity and displays a colorful swirling moiré or string pattern. You awaken the hidden screen by moving the mouse. Moire is a control panel extension and offers control over the time interval, length, shape, and speed of the moiré pattern. One unusual feature is that it allows you to define almost any area of the screen as sleep-now or sleep-never areas. (Commercial screensavers usually restrict you to upper or lower corners.) Moire also lets you lock your screen with a password. You can change the pattern configurations from the keyboard, even while the extension is active and blanking the screen. Moire was honored as an outstanding product for the Mac in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*, and was mentioned in the March 3, 1990, *MacWEEK*. Look for version 3.22 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac from the Mac Plus on, System 3.2 or later.

Limitations: You have to turn serial port checking on or off with ResEdit; the default is off. The clock overwrites the Balloon Help menu in System 7.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: If you find Moire too busy for your taste or incompatible with some other extension you have installed, consider AutoIdle. This freeware screensaver blanks the screen after five minutes of inactivity and displays the icon of the current application, randomly on the screen. On ZiffNet/Mac, AutoIdle is available as file AUTOID.CPT in the Download and Support Forum.

Moire
John Lim
18 Nottingwood St.
Doncaster East 3109, Victoria
Australia
ZiffNet/Mac file name: MOIREI.SIT

Mouse Odometer

Computers such as the Macintosh that sport graphical user interfaces require you to do a lot of mousing around. This has led to an increase in modern ailments like carpal tunnel syndrome, but what about the poor mouse? Have you ever wondered about all the wear and tear that little mechanical rodent endures?

Mouse Odometer comes to the rescue. This extension/application combo measures out in miles how far your mouse has "traveled." You get the total amount since you first installed Mouse Odometer, and the mileage for the current session or "trip"—just as you do for your car. The extension portion remembers the mileage between shutdowns. The application displays the information, and you can keep it running in the background under MultiFinder or System 7. Silly? You bet, but Mouse Odometer appeals to the hidden nerd in all of us.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Awkward to use without MultiFinder or System 7, because you cannot leave the application running in the background. You have to launch it each time you want to check the mileage.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Mouse Odometer
Sean P. Nolan
Dartmouth HB 2658
Hanover, NH 03755
Internet: sean.nolan@dartmouth.edu
ZiffNet/Mac file name: MMETER.SIT

Pacman

The game's probably just as you remember it: pulsating, primary colors; annoyingly loud, carnival-like sound effects; and enough excitement to bring on chronic hypertension. It's the most faithful Macintosh version of the old arcade classic Pacman you'll ever see. There are no instructions, but the game was once so popular in video arcades that instructions aren't really necessary—they're almost part of our collective subconscious. You control movement from the keyboard, racking up points as you dash about the maze gobbling or being gobbled. This version of Pacman is an import from Japan, by M. Tsuji.

Requirements: Apple color 13-inch monitor, 256 colors.

Limitations: Will not work on LC 12-inch screen; screen must be set to 256 colors.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: The keyboard movement keys (4, 8, 6, 2) are awkward to use. Look around on the on-line services for various ResEdit patches that change the default keys.

There are a couple of other variations on the Pacman theme worth mentioning: Bachman is an import from Sweden, by Ingemar Ragnemalm. It has only black-and-white graphics, but it displays the game in a pseudo-three-dimensional perspective that's unusual and striking. It also enlivens the game with some humorous sound effects. You can find Bachman on the on-line services; on ZiffNet/Mac, it's file BACHMA.CPT in the Download and Support Forum. John Butler's Macman (version 1.02 or later) is a black-and-white Pacman clone that lets you configure the movement keys and cheat (you can make yourself invincible or limit the number of ghosts chasing you). It's available as file MACMAN.CPT on ZiffNet/Mac.

Pacman
M. Tsuji
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac file name: PACMAN.CPT

Pararena

Imagine a manic cross between rollerball and soccer set in outer space, and you've got Pararena, another popular game from John Calhoun, author of Glider+ and Glypha II. Pararena places you in a parabola-shaped arena where you have to square off against one of four opponents: Mad Mara, Heavy Otto, Simple George, or Clever Claire. The object is to hit a ball into your goal while blocking your opponent from doing the same. You speed around the arena on a Grav-Board, a sort of skateboard sans wheels.

There are several game variations (having different round lengths, or varying numbers of rounds) and you have control over game speed, sound, and the arena's friction level (this affects how your Grav-Board works). You move your player with the mouse, trying to catch and then release the ball into your goal. The black-and-white animation is superb. The game also makes good use of digitized sounds; the crowd roars its approval or grumbles its discontent. If your wrist and mouse are up to it, Pararena makes for a good play.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Requires heavy use of the mouse; only has black-and-white graphics.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: It's confusing at first to figure out which character is which—one is dressed in white, and the other in black. Don't assume the character dressed in white is you; you're the one in black—which may not be immediately apparent even after you play the game the first time.

Pararena
John Calhoun
P.O. Box 442258
Lawrence, KS 66044
ZiffNet/Mac file name: PARARE.CPT

Scarab of RA

An intrepid explorer named Mississippi Smith... an Egyptian temple of doom, snakes, danger, and golden treasure... a relic of unimaginable power... where have we seen all this before? Well, it's not quite Steven Spielberg, but Scarab of RA is an entertaining homage to the adventure genre, in the form of a dungeon exploration game, by Apple employee Rick Holzgrafe.

You start the game as one Mississippi Smith, a lowly undergraduate student in archeology, who has made the foolhardy decision to enter a newly discovered site: the Great Pyramid of Ra, the Sun God. You've got a lantern, some oil, a bit of food, and your wits to help you survive. The perspective is 3-D, as in Might and Magic and similar commercial games. Figure 4.6 shows a typical scene. The pyramid is composed of numerous mazelike levels, each level more complex than the one before. To move to the next level, you must find the key. Once you pass through the door from one level to the next, you cannot—gulp—turn back. The levels contain supplies abandoned by previous, unsuccessful expeditions; you'll benefit from their misfortune. There are treasures scattered about, including three relics you must obtain in order to escape from the pyramid. Opposing you are the Guardians, an assortment of wild animals, and traps.

You control your character's movement from a well-designed movement palette. Just click the appropriate movement arrow with the mouse, or use the keyboard shortcuts if your keyboard has a numeric keypad. The author has added one nice touch: turn-and-peek arrows, which allow you to glance temporarily in a specific direction. Status bars keep you informed about Mississippi's health, appetite, and prestige (as an archeologist, you gain prestige as you explore). The game also sports an auto-mapping feature. You can add notes to the map at any time, to remind yourself, for example, of some booty you left behind and want to recover later. In fact, you can scribble notes on the pyramid's walls as you trudge along, provided you find a suitable writing utensil or material. The documentation is all on line. Scarab of RA was discussed briefly in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*.

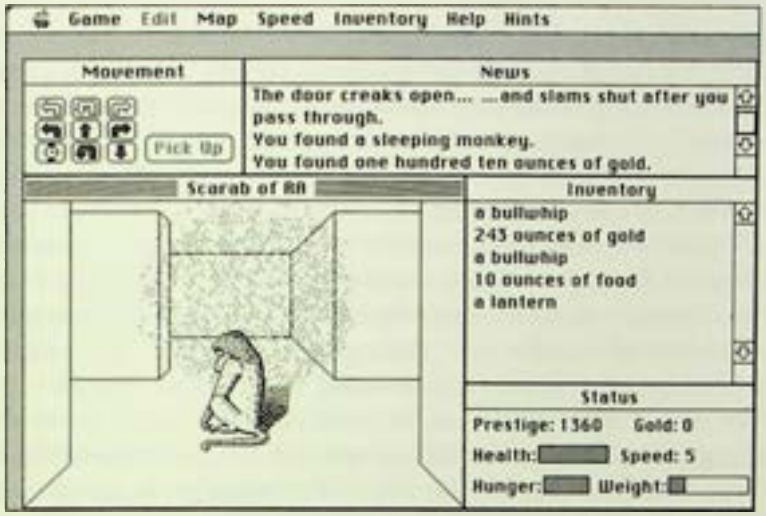


Figure 4.6
Scarab of RA: perils in the pyramid

Requirements: None
Limitations: Only black-and-white graphics; no sound or animation.
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $
Tips & Techniques: The game features a built-in hint system accessed through the Hints menu. Here are a couple to get you going:

Once you enter the pyramid, always turn to the right or left whenever possible. The direction doesn't matter; just be consistent. If you consistently turn in one direction, you will eventually explore the entire level without wasteful backtracking. This is often known as the "keep your hand on the wall" technique. Keep checking the map to see whether you've finished the current level.

Monkeys are one of the most annoying critters in the pyramid. They're cute, but they're also kleptomaniacs. Fortunately, they never steal things on the ground, so if you spot a monkey approaching and want to make sure it doesn't steal some irreplaceable relic you're toting around, drop the item where you stand. When the monkey has fled or gone to monkey heaven, pick the item up again.

Scarab of RA
Rick Holzgrafe
Semicolon Software
P.O. Box 371
Cupertino, CA 95015-0371
ZiffNet/Mac file name: SCABRA.SIT

SeaHaven Towers

If you want your solitaire card game to be more than just a time-passer or remedy for boredom, SeaHaven Towers should meet with your approval. It's much less mindless than the Klondike variety; you have to concentrate on what you're doing, or you can never hope to win. The author claims he learned the game from an elf, so expect something quite different from the run-of-the-mill solitaire game.

The card deck is arranged into ten columns of five cards each. All cards are face up, but you can only move cards that are not buried under other cards. There are also four suit piles where you eventually want to move all cards in ascending order. The game proceeds as you try to arrange the cards in the ten columns in descending order of the same suit (the three of clubs can be played on an unburied four of clubs). Then you move the cards in ascending order into the suit piles. (Actually, the game does this for you—it's a magical deck from an elf, after all!—with some great animation.) You can temporarily move free cards from the ten columns to four Tower cards, to free up other cards you might need to use. You can move cards off the Tower cards only if you can play them back into one of the ten columns or the suit piles. The game play sounds complicated, but there's excellent on-line help with clear, illustrated examples.

Viewing the scorecard can be depressing. It keeps tabs on games played, won, and lost, and then—to rub salt in the wound—consecutive losses, longest winning streak, and longest losing streak. In my experience, games played, games lost, consecutive losses, and longest losing streak are usually the same. This is not a game for the easily discouraged. SeaHaven features high-quality color and sound with a touch of animation. It was praised in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*.

Requirements: System 6 or later; color monitor.

Limitations: Won't run on pre-System 6 Macs.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Use the Tower cards sparingly. Don't place cards there unless you're fairly certain you can move them in the near future.

SeaHaven Towers
Art Cabral
Longwood Associates
P.O. Box 2162
Sunnyvale, CA 94087
ZiffNet/Mac file name: SEAHAT.SIT

SnakeTIX

Though its name is reminiscent of QIX, the arcade classic discussed earlier, SnakeTIX is actually a slick version of a classic computer game called (among other names) Snake. The object is to guide your snake around the playing window, avoiding walls and obstacles while gobbling up apples. The game has 50 levels that increase in complexity. You progress from one level to the next by consuming all the apples that appear on that level. Random bonus objects pop up; snatch them as quickly as possible, because they give you an extra life. As you slither onward, the pace increases and your snake lengthens. You have to avoid turning back upon yourself and colliding with your own coils. The interface is impressive, and the use of color quite attractive.

Requirements: Any Mac, except possibly the LC; some reports of problems with that machine. Best on a color monitor.

Limitations: Not for the standard LC 12-inch monitor.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: The game movement controls default to the arrow keys of the extended keyboard. If you find these four keys too close together for easy use in this lightning-fast game, change the key settings to use the 4, 8, 6, and 2 keys of the numeric keypad.

SnakeTIX
Daniel Paris
(No address available)
CIS: 72727,1170
ZiffNet/Mac file name: SNAKTX.SIT

Solarian II

Solarian is a high-quality color arcade game set in outer space, and one of the top classics in the Macintosh shareware world. It's similar to the commercial arcade shootfest, Galaxian, and the commercial Mac game called Crystal Quest. Solarian is fast paced, with truly vivid colors and wacky sound effects. You control the Solarian ship at the bottom of the screen, as alien enemy hordes circle and sway overhead, dropping bombs or worse. Your goal, as you might expect, is to blast the alien ships out of the sky so you can warp on to the next level. Bizarrely named and shaped Rotors, Flagellates, Pentagons, Bluebottles, Oings, and some even stranger entities await you. You have shields, missiles, a lowly ship cannon, and your own quick reflexes to get the job done. If all seems lost and you simply want to start afresh, you can abort the game in progress.

When a game is over (when you have no more lives to squander), the game exclaims, "Damn!" Several Christian fundamentalists complained to author Ben Haller about this departure from the straight and narrow. His response (revenge?) to all the fuss was to include a way to change the end-of-game sound. The options now include "Praise Jesus!", shouted out in the best, most drawled-out tradition of television evangelists.

Solarian II was examined in the October 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Make certain you obtain at least version 1.04. The author is also responsible for Critters (Bigfoot and Eyeballs), described earlier in this chapter.

Requirements: Mac with color monitor

Limitations: Occasional reports of problems with the Mac IIci. There is no way to print out the on-line instructions.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Save those missiles and shields for the later levels. Hold down the mouse button to fire continuously. You can fire faster by repeatedly tapping the mouse button, but that wears out the mouse (not to mention your finger). Make a point of catching the packages that the supply ships drop. These contain various bonuses and special powers you'll need to obtain high scores.

Solarian II
Ben Haller
32 Deer Haven Drive
Ithaca, NY 14850
Internet: deadman@garnet.berkeley.edu
ZiffNet/Mac file name: SOLARI.SEA

SpinIt INIT

The name may sound like one for a piano or clothes dryer, but SpinIt is really a widely used System extension that makes windows spin as they zoom open. Remember the old movies from the thirties, where a newspaper would spin out with dramatic headlines that added to the plot? SpinIt brings the same effect to your Mac screen. You might find it annoying after a while (it does make you think twice about opening windows because it slows down the process), but it's benign and incredibly popular. SpinIt was mentioned in the October 1990 issue of *MacUser*.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

SpinIt
Jonathan Gary and Bill Johnson
(no address available)
Coauthor Johnson can be reached at CIS: 72257,2064
ZiffNet/Mac file name: SPINIT.SIT

Toxic Ravine

It sounds like yet another bad sci-fi movie destined for Mystery Science Theater 3000: unsuccessful genetic experiments dumped in a ravine, supersoldier clones, a Great Clone War... and you, a poor schmuck hired by a certain Orlando Poon, Jr., to clean up the messy aftermath of all the dumping and the war. It all happens in Toxic Ravine, an ecologically correct arcade-style game that, for once, is not based on a commercial arcade classic.

The game's object is for you to clean up a polluted ravine by dropping cleanup bombs on the trash that has accumulated there. You move back and forth over the ravine in a dirigible, which can be damaged by toxic wraiths that rise from the muck at the bottom of the ravine. Various mutant clones, good and bad, are trapped in the waste. You have a robot on board (it looks like a magnet) that you can launch and guide independently to grab the good clones for extra points. It's a simple game that teaches the right lessons.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: Black-and-white graphics only; limited animation and sound.
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $
Tips & Techniques: Be sure to read all the on-line documentation, accessed through the Hints & Advice command under the Player menu. The full scenario is quite complex (more so than the game itself!) and humorously entertaining.

Toxic Ravine
Glenn Wichman
1128 Briarcroft Road
Claremont, CA 91711
ZiffNet/Mac file name: TOXRAV.CPT

Trek

"See Klingon. Shoot Klingon. See Klingon die." That's how the documentation succinctly sums up Trek, a well-implemented Mac version of the Star Trek-type game that's been popular since the days of CP/M (a very long time

ago, in a galaxy far, far away). Trek was first developed by Rob Koch in 1985, and has been evolving and improving ever since.

Like all Star Trek computer games, the basic scenario is a galaxy laid out in quadrants. There's one you, and lots and lots of not-so-very-friendly ships full of Klingons, Romulans, and other disagreeable types. Your task is to clean out the galaxy, relying on the usual photons and phasers to get the job done. Each quadrant contains planets, starbases (where you can replenish your energy and supplies), stars, and possibly enemy ships and black holes. Your long-range scans give you info on nearby and explored quadrants.

Unlike the versions usually found on other computer systems (or even others for the Mac), you don't have to worry about figuring out and typing in exact angles in order to move about and fire your weapons. You just point and click with the mouse. Figure 4.7 gives you a good idea of the game's graphical interface. The Save and Open File menu commands are disabled until you pay the registration fee, but you can still get a good feel for the game even without them. Look for version 1.4.1 or later.

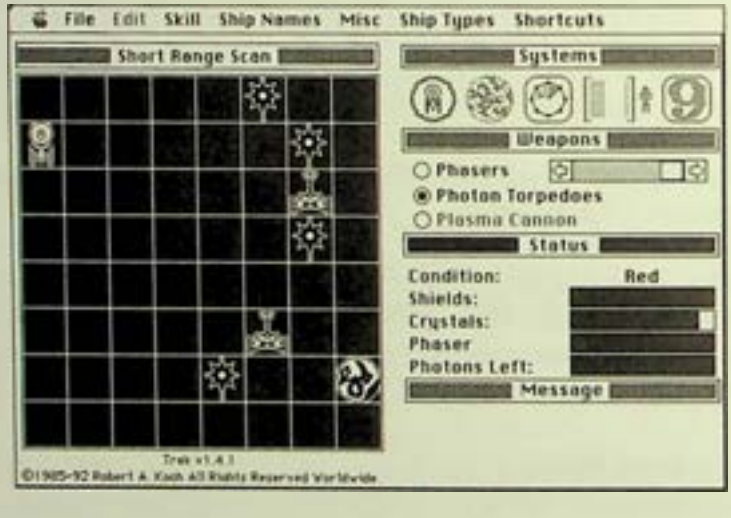


Figure 4.7
Trek, on Klingon patrol

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Won't run on a Quadra; Open and Save commands disabled until you register; limited color.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Trek
Rob Koch
Attn: Trek
15212 Harney Circle
Omaha, NE 68154
AOL: RobKoch
Internet: Rob.koch@macnet.omahug.org
ZiffNet/Mac file name: TREK.CPT

Text Tools

Desktop Publishing and Font Tools

Graphics Tools

PART

3

Text and Graphics Tools

CHAPTER

5

Text Tools

Alpha
Belgian PostCards
ButtonPad
Columnbo
CONText II
DOCMaker
Easy View
FlashWrite][
Macify
McSink
miniWRITER
Notepad++
Parachroma
SmartKeys
TextBreak
TextMerge
TypeIt4Me

Word processing probably accounts for more computer time than any other activity. The computer lets you manipulate the words you type before they hit the printed page. It's a crucial improvement over the typewriter that makes computers the ideal environment for working with words.

The first Macintoshes shipped with a word processor—MacWrite—and new, much more powerful applications such as Microsoft Word, Nisus, WordPerfect, and WriteNow have since captured much of the market share. But if the truth be known, sometimes a full-fledged word processor is more of a nuisance than a help to productive work. For example, you may want to compose just a few paragraphs of text while you're reading messages on an online service. Starting a full-blown word processor at this point is overkill, and may even be impossible if your Mac's model or memory limitations prevent you from using MultiFinder or System 7. Moreover, commercial word processors, despite their shotgun approach to feature sets, often lack a simple feature or two that you'd love to have.

The programs examined in this chapter provide some solutions to these dilemmas. You'll find mini–word processors called text editors, both simple and complex (some even offering sophisticated pattern searching); extensions that turn straight typewriter quotation marks (primes) into curly typeset-style quotation marks as you type; and a program that specializes in manipulating columnar text. There's a utility that will merge multiple text files into one file, and a couple of enhanced notepads you might prefer over the Note Pad desk accessory that ships with the Apple system software. I'll give you a general idea of the pluses and minuses of each product—textual criticism, as it were—so you can decide which ones are best for you.

Alpha

Long before there was the Mac, there was *emacs* (the acronym comes from Editing MACroS), a UNIX text editor designed primarily for programmers and distinguished by its support for macros. (A *macro* is a sequence of computer commands or actions assigned to one keystroke or command.) In one form or another, emacs is still extremely popular in the UNIX world. Macintosh programmer Pete Keleher didn't want to see the Macintosh environment *emacs*ulated by the lack of such a tool, so he wrote Alpha to answer the need. Alpha is a text editor for the Mac that's aimed at the needs of programmers and other techies.

NOTE. *The term text editor might be unfamiliar to you. In a way, text editors are mini–word processors, as suggested in the introduction to this chapter. But they generally do not allow you to format text with various fonts or point sizes, or apply any of the other formatting elements found in "real" word processors*

and page layout programs. They do allow you to manipulate raw text files with various find-and-replace options. Programmers love text editors; and people who are active on an on-line service usually need them because on-line services and heavily formatted text just don't mix. Another advantage of text editors is that their plain-text files can be read by any word processor program.

Alpha has tools that prove useful for Mac users when working with text data that is downloaded or captured from on-line services, or transferred to the Mac from a PC, UNIX workstation, or mainframe. Text imported in these ways often contains control characters (sometimes known as gremlins); extra spaces (used on these foreign platforms to pad text into columns); and line feeds and carriage returns placed at the end of every line instead of just at the end of paragraphs. All of this stuff can get in the way of productivity on the Mac because you spend time on cleanup instead of writing, reading, and printing. Alpha provides easy ways to strip it all out (or add it all back in, if the transfer is from the Mac to another computer system).

Alpha, like emacs, allows you to create macros. It also lets you assign those macros to single keystrokes (including keystrokes modified by the Option, Command, Shift, and Control keys). You can declare variables, define your own custom menus, set the default screen font, and so on. You do all of this in Alpha's command language, and you can save your code in the AlphaBits file that Alpha loads every time you run the program. The AlphaBits file is a simple text file you can open and edit at any time.

Alpha saves text in three standard text formats: Mac text (lines end with a carriage return), UNIX (lines end with a line feed), and PC (lines end with both a carriage return and a line feed). There are also commands for stripping out unnecessary carriage returns and line feeds.

You can also do *grep* searching in Alpha (grep is a UNIX facility named from "Globally search for the Regular Expression and Print"). This feature is seldom found on the Mac; the commercial Mac word processor Nisus from Nisus Software is a notable exception. Grep searching allows you to search for text that matches general patterns rather than specific text. For example, this grep expression

```
^(.*) .*-.*
```

will find all U.S. phone numbers that appear at the beginning of a line in the current file. It can take some time for you to fully grok grep, but the effort is worth it. Once you've tried grep, you may find you can't do without this extremely powerful tool.

There are also numerous bells and whistles meant to aid programmers in writing and formatting code. Alpha even includes macro collections for TeX and LaTeX aficionados, to lend a hand to their typesetting endeavors.

If all this sounds foreign and frightening to you, then Alpha will likely be more perplexing than helpful, and you should probably avoid it. Although on-line help files stand at the ready, they assume considerable expertise in programming arcana.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Primarily aimed at programmers, or those familiar with the programming mind-set and lingo. The documentation takes a *lot* for granted.

System 7: Friendly; offers support for OpenApp, OpenDoc, PrintDoc, and QuitApp Apple Events.

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: BBEdit II, by Rich Siegel, is a programmer's text editor similar to Alpha and with many of the same features. It also comes with the best documentation on grep searching I've seen packaged with a shareware text editor. Best of all, BBEdit II is freeware. It's available in the Download and Support Forum of ZiffNet/Mac as file BBEDIT.CPT. It's just not, however, as powerful as Alpha.

Another text editor designed primarily for programmers is Edit II, by Kenneth Seah. It, too, offers grep searching, the capability to open multiple files, manage control characters, add or strip line feeds, and so on. One especially nice feature in Edit II is the auto-strip line feeds option: Whenever you open a text file that contains line feeds, they are automatically stripped out, saving you the step of doing it manually. Edit II is available as file EDITII.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

If your main concern is formatting text properly for on-line services, see also Clipper FKEY in Chapter 15 of this book.

Alpha
Peter Keleher
P.O. Box 1892
Dept. of Computer Science
Rice University
Houston, TX 77251-1892
Internet: pete@rice.edu
ZiffNet/Mac file name: ALPHA.CPT

Belgian PostCards

That's Belgian, *not* French—a distinction that would delight Hercule Poirot—so don't expect any Gallic naughtiness. Don't even expect postcards, per se, because this oddly named program is actually a text editor of sorts that brings a distinctive Macintosh playfulness to a pretty mundane kind of application.

Sending documentation or a note to someone new can be frustrating. What word processor do they have? What assumptions dare you make about their computer configuration? Should you take the shotgun approach and waste the disk space to send the same file in several different word processing formats? As a solution to these conundrums, Apple promotes TeachText and has seeded it throughout the Macintosh world. TeachText is Mac system software, so everyone supposedly has it. TeachText documents are the norm, and many companies distribute TeachText ReadMe files with their software. But sometimes a simple text file (which anyone with a computer can read) doesn't do the trick. Perhaps you want to include graphics or use formatted text. (If nothing else, these elements make your file more interesting and therefore more likely to be read.) Belgian PostCards is essentially an alternate to the TeachText utility that Apple and others have promoted (also see DOCMaker later in this chapter). An alternative to TeachText may seem pretty tame, but Belgian PostCards surpasses it in a variety of ways—not just in the imaginative name.

When you run the program, you can enter up to several pages of text (there's a 32k limit) in a standard text editor window, as shown in Figure 5.1. Unlike TeachText, Belgian PostCards lets you employ styled text (characters with various point sizes and font or style formatting) to get your message across. A search-and-replace feature adds even more power over what TeachText has to offer. You can also insert PICT or bitmap (MacPaint) graphics, and then attach sounds to those graphics. Anyone reading the Belgian PostCards document will see the cursor turn into a speaker whenever it passes over a graphic with sound; the reader can then select the graphic and choose Play from the Sound menu. The registered program comes with an assortment of sounds. If you are using System 7, you can attach any System 7 sound file you have.

When you save a text file in Belgian PostCards, you assign one of 50 special desktop icons ranging from George Washington to Godzilla. These custom icons are the "postcards" of the program's name (and one of the programmers is Belgian). The icons let you increase the likelihood that your document will be noted and read, simply because it will stand out compared to the typical generic TeachText ReadMe file usually encountered.

Belgian PostCards comes packaged with the BP Viewer, a largish application (130k) you unfortunately have to send along with any Belgian PostCards files you distribute. It allows recipients to read your files. It also alerts them about fonts used in the document that they might not have installed, and lets them designate other installed fonts to substitute for the missing ones. Having to distribute this viewer with your "postcards" is a bit of a nuisance—and probably accounts for why Belgian PostCards is not more popular; but the program merits a look-see for its innovative tack on text. Look for version 2.0 or later.

Figure 5.1
Belgian PostCards

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: The Font, Size, Style, and Sound menus are disabled in the demo version available from on-line services and mail-order companies. There are only 10 icons available (as opposed to 50 in the registered version). Adding icons in the registered version requires you to use ResEdit. Files are limited to 32k worth of text. The BP Viewer, required for reading the postcards, weighs in at 130k—a fairly substantial file to have to distribute with all your postcards!

System 7: Compatible; supports balloon help and is 32-bit clean.

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Belgian PostCards lets you open, edit, and save TeachText read-only files—a boon to anyone who needs to liberate that imprisoned text. To attach a sound to an inserted graphic, you must first save the document. You cannot import sounds into an untitled file.

See also Print2Pict in Chapter 11 for another approach to creating formatted files anyone can read.

Belgian PostCards
Mark D. Clark and Karl Pottie
c/o Quantum Mechanix
21221 Unicorn Lane
Roland, AR 72135
AOL: MarkClark
ZiffNet/Mac file name: BELGPC.SEA

ButtonPad

ButtonPad, a text editor by Jeffrey Ehrlich, is a substitute for the Apple Note Pad desk accessory, and offers several welcome enhancements over the plain-vanilla Apple product. ButtonPad lets you categorize your notes into notebooks (quick-access pads) that you open from the main window, by clicking a button with the pad's name on it or by pressing a keyboard shortcut. Each notebook pad can contain several pages of text. You might keep a pad of telephone numbers, another with a to-do list, and yet another for a list of business contacts—up to eight pads in all.

The program can find and replace text; strip or add line feeds, carriage returns, tabs, and spaces; change the capitalization of words; dial the telephone, using a telephone number from a pad; and even sort lines of text.

Sorting is great for lists of names or items, but ButtonPad adds a twist that lets you use the program as a sort of minidatabase. The lines-per-record option for the sort feature lets you group lines of text in a pad. For example, an address pad might have each entry composed of three lines (name, address, and telephone). When you sort with the lines-per-record option set to 3, ButtonPad sorts only on every third line (the name fields) in the pad, while keeping the other two related lines (the address and telephone number) adjacent to the appropriate name line when it is repositioned.

ButtonPad's interface is unpolished, but the program offers such flexibility in its combined role of notepad, Rolodex, text editor, and telephone dialer, it makes for a superior addition to your desktop. It far outpaces Apple's Note Pad in performance and power.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: ButtonPad is great for anyone who needs to use boilerplate text in letters, contracts, or the like. You simply set up one quick-access pad with the boilerplate, and copy and paste the material into other documents.

The documentation is confusing on the use of the sort-lines-per-record function. It tells you that the last line must be followed by a return and an empty line. Last line of what? It's the last line at the end of the quick-access pad. In other words, there should be only one empty line in the current quick-access pad. Do not separate your records with empty lines, or the sort will fail.

Set the ButtonPad window width to 80 to be certain your lines will break properly in messages or text you prepare for on-line services such as CompuServe, where the greatest line width is 80 characters.

ButtonPad
Jeffrey L. Ehrlich
810 Fox Glen Drive
St. Charles, IL 60174
ZiffNet/Mac file name: BUTPAD.CPT

Columnbo

If you've ever had to deal with text in columns taken from a VAX or the mainframes of some on-line services, you may have encountered a perplexing mystery when you opened the file in a Mac word processor: The text no longer lines up in neat columns. A bit of detective work reveals the reasons behind this. The columns are padded into shape by spaces instead of tabs, and your word processor is probably displaying the file using a proportionally spaced screen font (whereas the mainframe or VAX created the columns in a monospaced font). The result is a seeming jumble of text. This kind of file also presents a problem if you need to import the information into a spreadsheet, database, or graphing program, because these programs generally expect tabbed columns of data. The best way to make those columns straight again, and acceptable to Mac software, is to replace the runs of spaces with tabs. A number of commercial and shareware text editors allow you to manipulate files in this way. The cleverly named Columnbo does nothing but this one chore.

Columnbo does its task without any pretense. You run the program and open the file you need to tweak. You position columns by dragging along in a ruler at the top of the window. A dashed line down the length of the page mirrors your position in the ruler, so that you can precisely indicate where the tabs should be placed to form the columns. You then save the file. It's that simple. The program lets you save column templates so you can apply the same column settings to future documents without having to manually reset the columns.

Columnbo's somewhat primitive interface masks a powerful, easy-to-use text utility for anyone involved with bringing mainframe/VAX data to the Macintosh environment. You can read more about Columnbo and the underlying problem in the September 1991 issue of *MacUser*, in the Help Folder.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Imported text files can be no larger than 32k. Columnbo is a one-trick pony; you can't use it for any other kind of text editing.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: "But just one thing still bothers me..." The tabbed columns created by Columnbo inevitably have some stray spaces—especially on the right of each column—because the words on each line of the column are

usually of different lengths. You can minimize this by turning on the Remove leading spaces option and positioning the Columnbo column lines flush against the longest word in each column.

If you don't need to import the columnar text into another program, but simply want it to line up again, a simple solution is to open the file in your word processor and select all the text. Then select a monospaced font such as Monaco or Courier from the Font menu.

Columnbo
David M. Craig
48 Cedar Circle
Randolph, MA 02368
Internet: craig@submicron.ll.mit.edu
ZiffNet/Mac file name: COLUMN.SIT

CONText II

CONText II is a moderately powerful text editor that evolved from an earlier DA (desk accessory) version called ConText. This new incarnation has relatively few new features, but the menu structure and other elements of the interface have been tweaked and cleaned up.

As in many shareware text editors (and TeachText, for that matter), CONText II is restricted to 32k–files (just a few pages), but can open several files at once. In fact, if you attempt to open a text file larger than 32k, CONText II will open the file up in as many separate windows as it takes. That's not very elegant, but it's better than other text editors that simply refuse to open such files. CONText II lets you set font and point size, but it's for show only and is applied globally to every character in the active window. The font and size formats do not carry over to saved documents, but they can make on-screen text much more readable.

Most of the program's other features are designed to make CONText II a useful tool for people preparing text files for on-line messages, where line widths have to be of a certain size (usually 40 or 80 characters), or where each line must end with a carriage return. It's also ideal for "macifying" text files taken from on-line or mainframe sources. It can strip any ASCII character (convenient for removing control characters that PCs and mainframes sometimes insert). You can automatically insert carriage returns at any position. Also, you can add or remove curly quotes. Many Mac word processors insert curly (smart) quotes, but they show up as *U*'s or some other character when you upload the file as a message to an on-line service. The ability to uncurl (stupefy) these quotes is handy. (See the description of SmartKeys in this chapter for more on smart quotes.)

CONText II also lets you set the text file's *creator* when you save it. A file's creator is a four-letter code that tells the Mac which application to run when you double-click the text file's icon on the desktop. So this feature lets you save your CONText II files as Microsoft Word text documents, for example. If you don't know the creator code of the word processor you want to use, CONText II's Character Search option lets you select the application in the standard Open dialog box; it then supplies the creator code for you.

CONText II sports an attractive interface and sensible tools for anyone doing on-line work. It runs well under System 7.

Requirements: Any Mac running System 6 or later

Limitations: Macros are supported, but they have to be created and compiled in a programming language such as C or Pascal. Some instructions are included.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: If your text files contain control characters that you want to strip, but you do not know their ASCII code (which is required to use the Strip Characters feature), here's a simple work-around. Select a control character (it will appear as a small rectangle) and copy it. Choose the Find command of the Search menu, and paste the control character into the Find box. Repeatedly do Finds until you've checked the entire document. If the small rectangles appear at the beginning of each line, they are probably line feeds and can be stripped with the Strip LF and NULL macro supplied with the program.

If you are not running System 7 and would prefer a DA version of CONText II, look for ConText DA 1.1, also by Michael Conrad. It's available in ZiffNet/Mac's Download and Support Forum as file CONTXT.SIT. The DA version offers most of the same features as CONText II, but the interface is less polished.

If your main concern is formatting text properly for on-line services, see also Clipper FKEY in Chapter 15.

CONText II
Michael Conrad
955 Escalon Avenue #505
Sunnyvale, CA 94086
AOL: MichaelC50
CIS: 73457,426
GEnie: M.CONRAD1
ZiffNet/Mac file name: CTEXT2.SEA

DOCMaker

The Belgian PostCards program described earlier in this chapter is one way to bypass TeachText's limitations. Another excellent solution to distributing fancy text files is DOCMaker, from Mark Wall and Green Mountain Software. When you double-click the DOCMaker stand-alone, it starts up and displays your text in a scrollable window. You can send DOCMaker files to anyone without knowing what their Mac is like—what word processor they have, for instance. Unlike Belgian PostCards, there is no need for a special separate viewer with DOCMaker; the viewer is, in effect, built right into the file itself.

The process of creating a DOCMaker stand-alone document is straightforward. Each document is composed of as many "chapters" as you like. Each chapter can contain up to 32k of text and appears in a Contents menu that lets you navigate through the document. Text can be formatted in any installed font and at any point size (see Figure 5.2). You can even set the text color and justification. The text formatting is not global; you can mix fonts and other formatting in the same chapter or file. Best of all, you can save formatting choices as formats or styles for application to other selected text at any time. You also have complete control over page breaks, margins, and footers. You can even create a custom About box to appear in the Apple menu. A find-and-replace feature makes editing easier. A document info command gives statistics on the approximate file size of the stand-alone, in case you need to keep the file within certain size constraints.

Note that DOCMaker documents are not directly editable by their readers, but readers can export the contents of a document to a text file, using a File menu command.

DOCMaker is an elegant way to distribute files that contain formatted text and graphics, without worrying about compatibility with recipients' software. Author Mark Wall has kept this Macintosh shareware classic well maintained since it first appeared. It gets better and better with each revision.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: If you use a font in a DOCMaker file that you distribute, and the recipient does not have that font installed, the text in that font will appear for the reader in a default font (usually Geneva). The manual distributed with the shareware version does not completely cover some advanced aspects of DOCMaker; you must pay the registration fee for full documentation. There is no sound support as in Belgian PostCards.

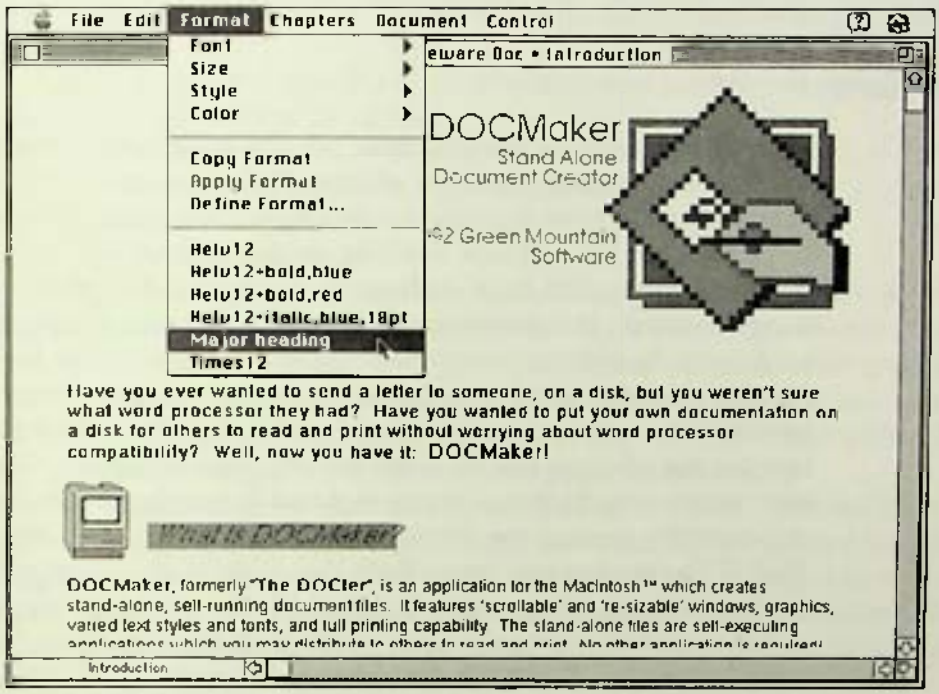
System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Each DOCMaker chapter appears in a scrollable window. You can use the Page Up and Page Down keys of the extended keyboard, rather than the mouse, to scroll through the chapter. The Left Arrow

and Right Arrow will move you to the previous or next chapter in the current DOCMaker file.

Figure 5.2
DOCMaker



DOCMaker stand-alone documents are always at least 40k (to accommodate the application viewer that makes the whole thing work), so this program is best for larger documents. It's a waste of disk space to use DOCMaker to create short notes.

The brief manual that comes with the shareware version tells you to create formats (styles) by selecting the Define Format command and then choosing point size, font, and so forth. You can also just select in the editing window the text that has all the character formatting you want, and then choose the Define Format command. The formats will already be chosen for you; simply fill in a name for the format, and click OK. The new format will appear in the Format menu for easy access later on.

DOCMaker
Mark Wall
c/o Green Mountain Software
9404 Valley Lane
Huntsville, AL 35803

AOL: MSWALL
CIS: 73047,1233
GEnie: MSWALL
ZiffNet/Mac file name: DOCMAK.SEA

Easy View

Many of the programs in this chapter are text editors. But what if you simply want to view text files instead of edit them? Text editors are up to the challenge, of course, but a clever alternative called Easy View merits serious consideration.

Easy View lets you view text files quickly and without fuss. You can't edit the files or even print them, so Easy View might at first glance seem more sleazy than easy, but the program has some other capabilities that make it a useful tool. In addition to ordinary text files, Easy View reads text files structured in a format called *setext* (structure-enhanced text). You can format your own text files as setext (as described briefly later), but that step is not necessary to take advantage of the Easy View/setext connection. Even if you don't want to go to the bother of organizing and formatting your own text files, if you regularly read on-line Mac publications such as Adam Engst's delightful *TidBITS* or the Internet-based *Info-Mac*, Easy View is a must-have tool. Both of these on-line newsletters (available for download through the major on-line services) are formatted in setext for Easy View. You can index your entire collection of TidBITS, for example, in one Easy View file. On ZiffNet/-Mac you can always find the most recent *TidBITS* in the Reference Library of the Download and Support Forum. Simply use *TidBITS* as a keyword when you search.

The setext format lets you organize a text file's paragraphs into what Easy View calls chapters and sections (or subheads). You can format text files as setext in any word processor or text editor, by inserting asterisks and hyphens at strategic locations near chapter/section titles. These characters tell Easy View where chapters and sections begin and end, so that the program can display them properly in its multipaned window. The left pane lists the chapters. Sections appear in the middle pane, and any text associated with a section can be read in the main lower pane. The right pane contains data on the open file (notes, file size, and the date). You can instantly navigate to any chapter or section using the keyboard, menu commands, or the mouse. You don't have to scroll around looking for the text that you want, provided that the file is formatted properly, of course. In effect, Easy View and its setext format will index your text files so that frantic searches are a thing of the past.

You can even combine several text files into one Easy View "index" file. The text files themselves remain as untouched external files, and the index contains only the chapter and section names Easy View gleans from them.

The program then reads in the appropriate text file when you navigate to a specific chapter or section. Normally you first create an index file and then specify, through a dialog, what text files you want included. The program also has a so-called Auto Modify mode that instantly takes any text file you drop into a specific folder and adds it to the Easy View Index file already in that folder.

The program works flawlessly. If what it does is what you need, check it out. Look for version 2.1 or later.

Requirements: System 6.0 or later

Limitations: No support for printing or editing

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Easy View does not support printing, but remember—you can always open the external text files in a word processor or text editor if you want to print them out. Easy View also has a Copy Section command that lets you copy the current section to the Clipboard, so you can paste it into another document and print from a word processor or text editor. The program also supports normal copy-and-paste techniques.

You can use Easy View as a simple database or PIM (personal information manager; see Chapter 9). Chapters can stand for categories (Address-book, Business Contacts, Birthdays), and sections can represent individual entries within those categories. This works best with data that doesn't change frequently, since Easy View does not permit editing of the text files it displays.

Easy View
M. Akif Eyler
Bilkent University
06533 Ankara, Turkey
BITNET: eyler@trbilun.bitnet
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: EASYVW.SEA

FlashWrite][

Jennifer Beals, watch out! *Flashdance* was good (judging by the ticket sales and marketing hoopla), but Andrew Welch's FlashWrite][is a fancy dancer in its own right. It's a snazzy, dependable notepad in a DA that dances circles around Apple's Note Pad DA. Once it's installed in your System file (System 6) or in the Apple Menu Items folder (System 7), you run FlashWrite][by choosing it from the Apple menu. It looks a lot like the Note Pad, but has some nifty enhanced features.

FlashWrite][is organized into pages. Each page can contain up to 32k of text, and can be named and retrieved by name (the names are listed

alphabetically on a pull-down menu). The program also features search capabilities—nothing so fancy as grep, but whenever you press the Tab key, the insertion point jumps to the Find entry box that's always visible at the bottom of the FlashWrite][window. It's a quick way to locate text. FlashWrite][pages can be exported to text files, and vice versa. The program also provides document statistics (characters, words, sentences, and paragraphs) for the current page via a menu command.

FlashWrite][comes with an extension called FlashWrite][Opener that lets you access the program by pressing user-defined shortcut keys. If you or your Mac are suffering from terminal INITitis (too many INITs or System extensions), relax—the Opener is not absolutely necessary, just convenient.

Andrew Welch is one of the most prolific and popular shareware authors in the Macintosh community. FlashWrite][is one more reason his work is so well liked. It was discussed in the December 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.03 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Incompatible with the Quadra cache

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: For a special treat, hold down the Option key when you choose About FlashWrite][from the icon pull-down menu in this program's menu bar.

FlashWrite][
Andrew Welch
29 Grey Rocks Road
Wilton, CT 06897
ZiffNet/Mac file name: FLASH2.SEA

Macify

If your word processor is the only text editor you'll ever need, but you'd like to have some of the file manipulation capabilities offered by programs such as Alpha or McSink, Macify will be a handy tool to accomplish a variety of text editing tasks. Macify does multiple find-and-replace operations on any text file. It's ideal for preparing ("macifying") text files taken from mainframes, PCs, and on-line services, because it can strip out line feeds and control characters and replace runs of spaces with tabs (for handling columnar data captured during an on-line session). Once macified, the file can move to your word processor unhindered.

But Macify doesn't stop there. It can also insert curly quotes, em dashes, and ligatures. Another outstanding option lets you specify up to three sets of

any two characters that you want replaced by a single character. Suppose a co-worker or colleague is preparing text on a PC for your use on the Mac. If the file requires a bullet or copyright symbol, for instance, you can tell your colleague to type, say, * for the bullet or \C for the copyright symbol. Macify will search out the two-character codes and replace them with the proper Mac keystroke. The program also includes some control over capitalization; you can force it to place everything in all caps or all lowercase, or capitalized as words or sentences.

Macify is a decent, remarkably powerful program for manipulating text files. It's virtually unknown to most people and deserves a wider, more appreciative audience. The two-character code replacement feature is a unique and much needed tool that by itself makes the program valuable.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $
Tips & Techniques: Another option—with fewer options—is Evolutions. It was originally an in-house tool at a company that went under, and is still available as shareware and even runs under System 7. Evolutions lets you adjust line lengths, convert spaces into tabs, and strip out control characters and line feeds. There's no support for ligatures and other typographical subtleties. You might view it as either a low-end Macify or high-end Columnbo. You'll find it on ZiffNet/Mac as file EVOLVU.CPT in the Download and Support Forum.

Add/Strip is another possibility. It's discussed in detail in Chapter 6.

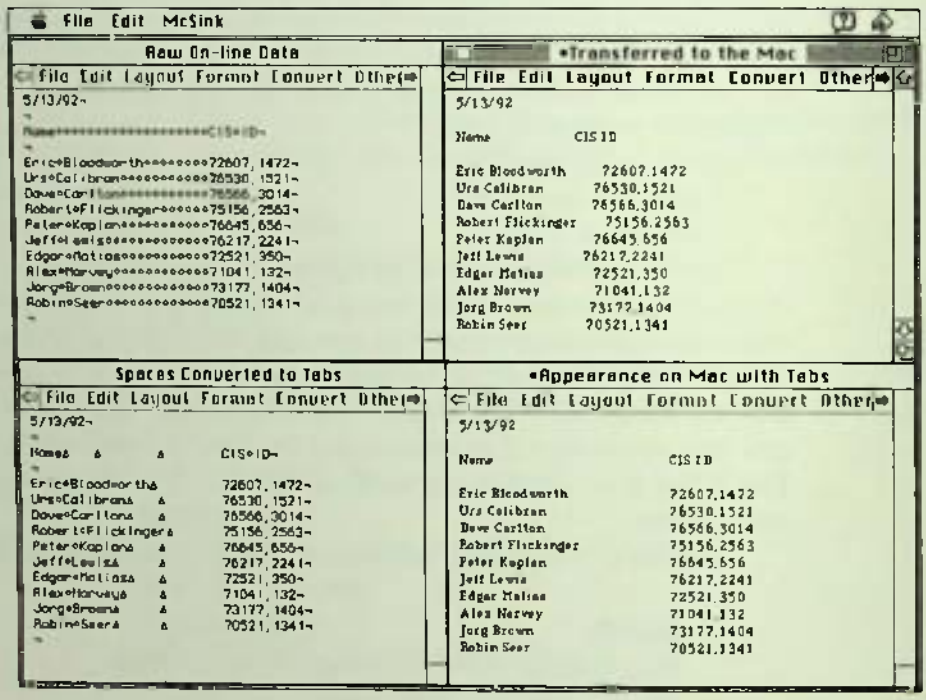
Macify
Eric Celeste
c/o Appropriate Technology
358 N. Parkview
Columbus, OH 43209
ZiffNet/Mac file name: MACIFY.CPT

McSink

"It has everything but the kitchen sink!" That's what people usually say about McSink, a programmer's text editor by David McNerter that's actually surprisingly accessible to regular users (much more so than Alpha or Edit II, for example). It comes in the form of a DA crammed full of capabilities and graced by a simple interface, earning it a loyal following for several years. The program has evolved into a commercial program called Vantage, but a shareware McSink is still available as a sort of demo.

McSink has special tools for programmers, such as the ability to balance braces, brackets, and parentheses. Many of its commands, however, are useful for regular text editing. It can show invisibles such as tabs, spaces, line feeds, and carriage returns. It can wrap lines to specific widths, add or strip carriage returns and line feeds, and remove leading or trailing spaces—all features of special interest for people involved with on-line services or mainframes. You can see a good example in Figure 5.3.

Figure 5.3
McSink cleans up on-line data for the Mac



McSink can read in text from another file starting at the insertion point—you don't have to open another document and then copy and paste. You can make use of the program's find/replace commands to nudge your document into shape. Though McSink doesn't support grep per se, it does have its own set of wildcards. There are also menu commands that let you change the capitalization of words in various ways.

McSink usually comes accompanied by several VCMDs (Vantage Commands), which are external commands created and compiled in a language like Pascal or C. Once loaded, they add some special function to the DA, such as the ability to smarten or stupefy quotation marks. McSink even boasts some file-management tools: You can delete files, modify their four-letter creator or type codes, and lock or unlock a file without returning to the Finder or

resorting to Apple's resource editor, ResEdit. (Many people, perhaps unfairly, view ResEdit with considerable trepidation, if not outright terror.)

If you need an excellent, all-purpose text editor that provides power without sacrificing ease of use, check out McSink. It has features you may never use, but you also might be surprised by how quickly you grow into them. McSink has been discussed in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*, and the February 14, 1989, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 7.0A or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Whenever you select a feature not supported in McSink but available in Vantage (see Tips & Techniques), such as macros or spell-checking, you have to view an advertisement urging you to upgrade.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$$

Tips & Techniques: The auto-paste-on-open feature offers a clever way to bypass the following shortcoming of the Finder: Although the System 7 Print Window command lets you print the contents of the current volume or folder, what if you want to list all or some of those files in a text file, rather than printing hard copy? For example, you might want to send a list of files to a colleague through an on-line service. To do this, simply select at the Finder level the files you want to list in the text file. Choose Copy from the Edit menu (Command-C) and then run McSink. The file names will be automatically pasted into the untitled document that McSink opens when you start it. Save the file to disk and send it off.

If McSink whets your appetite for more of the kind of text-editing features it provides, you will want to upgrade to the commercial version of the product, called Vantage. This commercial product adds true word-wrap, a spell-checker, and macros. McSink is currently more or less frozen as a kind of shareware advertisement for Vantage; no new features will ever be added. The best you can expect are bug fixes.

If your main concern is formatting text properly for on-line services, see also Clipper FKEY in Chapter 15.

McSink
David McWherter
c/o Signature Software 2
Bensalem, PA 19020
ZiffNet/Mac file name: MCSINK.SIT

miniWRITER

Most of the text editors discussed so far (Alpha, BBEdit, Edit II, and even McSink to some extent) have been designed by programmers for other

MiniWRITER is included on the bonus disk attached to this book.

hard-core programmers. That leaves many users out of the picture. If the interfaces or terminology in those programs bewilder or intimidate you, consider miniWRITER, an excellent text editor for the "rest of us," as the Mac cliché promises.

From the moment you first see its amusing icon (a compact Mac trotting along on stubby legs, pencil in hand) in the Apple menu or the DA's animated startup screen, you'll know that this little puppy's for you. It's simple and friendly in both appearance and operation. The miniWRITER editing window is uncomplicated by rulers—it's a place to type and nothing more. The menu has commands for finding (but not replacing) text, making smart quotes, setting line widths, and removing accented characters. (Accented characters on the Mac are formed with Option-key combinations that are second nature to most Mac users, but they cause unexpected characters to appear in on-line messages, so this feature is especially welcome.) The miniWRITER also displays document statistics (lines, words, and characters).

The miniWRITER program excels in support for ImageWriter and PostScript printers. ImageWriter users can insert codes for plain, bold, and underlined text; the codes force the printer to format text appropriately. If you create your own PostScript programs, you can open these in miniWRITER (they are simple text-only files, after all), choose Print, and click the miniWRITER's PostScript button in the standard LaserWriter Print dialog box. The file gets sent to the PostScript printer and the code is executed as a PostScript program, rather than printed out as a regular text file. This lets miniWRITER double as a PostScript programming environment. It's quite handy to have this capability easily accessible from your Apple menu, and one more feather in programmer David Dunham's feathery hat.

The miniWRITER program was examined in a look at several shareware text editors in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*. It was also mentioned in the January 16, 1990, issue of *MacWEEK*. Make sure you obtain version 1.72 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Files cannot exceed 32k.

System 7: Compatible

Registration: $$

Tips & Techniques: System 6 users cannot install miniWRITER by double-clicking it to bring up Font/DA Mover. You must start Font/DA Mover first, and hold down the Option key while clicking Open. Then you can select the miniWRITER file and install it normally.

There are a couple of other user-friendly text editors worth noting. The myWord! DA, by Pete Helme, gives you nothing fancy, but it does have a ruler you can use to adjust the margins. It also has find-and-replace features and time/date stamps. Many of its commands can be accessed from either a menu

or an icon-based palette at the bottom of the editing window. It's available in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum as file MYWORD.SIT.

JoliWrite by Benoît Widemann is another DA that lets you manipulate text files for use on on-line services in many of the ways discussed in this chapter (stripping/adding carriage returns, removing accented letters, and so on). It also adds a sort of fake full-justification option that's rare in text editors: It pads out lines with spaces to make them of equal length. That and the program's interface look a little funky in places, but JoliWrite can be a jolly good helpmate when you have to jury-rig full-justification in a text-only file. The program is available in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum as file JOLIWR.SIT.

If your main concern is formatting text properly for on-line services, see also Clipper FKEY in Chapter 15.

miniWRITER
David Dunham
c/o Maitreya Design
P.O. 12085
Eugene, OR 97440
CIS: 76074,762
ZiffNet/Mac file name: MINIWR.SIT

Notepad++

It's the age of hyperbole and superlatives in the computer business. Applications regularly come out in "new Deluxe" or "Professional" editions. Programs get rated an overenthusiastic five stars, when maybe three-and-a-half or four would have been more honest. But Notepad++, another replacement for the Apple Note Pad DA, deserves that extra plus sign and maybe just a touch more of hyperbole. It's a slick text editor in a DA, with more features and pages than Apple's dime-store version has ever had.

You'll notice Notepad++ is a class act when you first choose it from the Apple menu. It sports an elegant interface set apart by the judicious use of icons in well-designed command bars that bracket the editing window on the bottom and right side. A ruler lets you fiddle with margins. The margins and alignment settings are globally applied to the entire page. Notepad++ contains 35 pages (compared to Apple's 8), and each page can contain up to 32k of text. As with Andrew Welch's FlashWrite][, you can name the pages in Notepad++ and flip to them through a pop-up menu list (shown in Figure 5.4), so that you can keep separate pages for personal items, business contacts, and so forth. You can also have more

than one Notepad++ data file, each with 35 pages. You can name those extra data files whatever you want, and switch among them via a menu command.

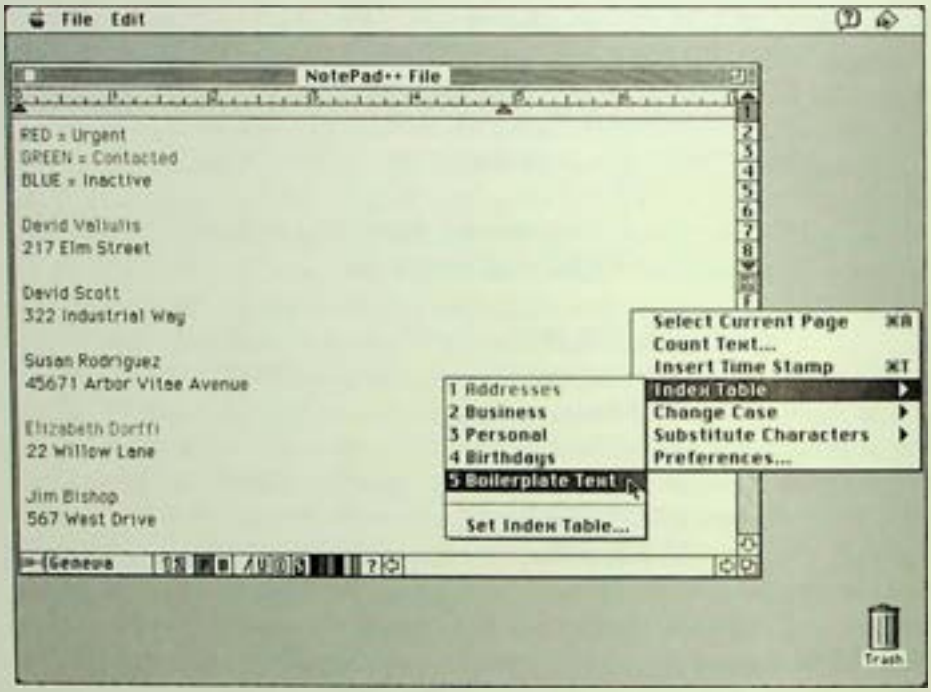


Figure 5.4
Notepad++ lets you name pages

The program also has find-and-replace features, document statistics, and can convert spaces to tabs, strip out line feeds, and insert the time and date. It even enforces the balancing of programming characters such as braces and parentheses. You can read more about Notepad++ in the December 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.2 or later.

Requirements: System 6.0 or later, and at least a 512k Enhanced

Limitations: Incompatible with Quadra

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: You don't have to resign yourself to the default colors being applied when you click a color button. Hold down the Option key when you click a color button, and the standard Apple Color Picker will appear, letting you select any color in the rainbow.

You can find an invisible character such as a tab or carriage return by selecting a space on the current page where that character exists. Copy and paste it into the Find box of the Find dialog.

Notepad++
Alexander Colwell
520 Avenue B #4
Redondo Beach, CA 90277
CIS: 73227,1267
ZiffNet/Mac file name: NOTPAD.SIT

Parachroma

Parachroma is a simple utility with a one-track mind: It lets you modify any copy of Microsoft Word 5.0 so that nontext characters such as paragraph markers, tabs, and spaces appear in color. That's its only role in life. Parachroma can be a godsend for professional editors, proofreaders, and anyone who needs to spot these nontext characters for whatever reason. Tabs are far easier to spot when they're bright red than when they blend in with black text characters on the screen.

The program is as simple to use as it is simple in concept. You double-click it, and after several attractive, colorful screens, you are prompted to select a copy of Word 5.0 in a standard Open dialog box. Once you do this and click OK, the Apple Color Picker pops up, and you select a color by clicking in the color wheel. That's it. Next time you run Word 5.0, you can say good-bye to eyestrain. If that sounds worthless to you, avoid the program, but I couldn't work productively without it.

Requirements: Color monitor; Microsoft Word 5.0
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $

Parachroma
Kristopher H. Cruz
2112 W. Bridge Avenue
Spokane, WA 99201
CIS: 76060,1702
ZiffNet/Mac file name: PARACH.CPT

SmartKeys

Desktop publishing has made it almost de rigueur to use, at the very least, proper typesetter's quotation marks (known as *smart quotes*) instead of the usual typewriter-style straight quotation marks (primes) in everything we type—whether it be a grocery list or an annual report. Unfortunately, you

usually have to jump through hoops to produce these characters. Getting the typographically correct marks to appear involves pressing Option or Option-Shift-[for double quotes, and Option or Option-Shift-] for single quotes. Really user-friendly, right? You almost have to be a contortionist to pull it off. It's also a pain to remember the keystrokes, especially when the " and ' keys beckon from the keyboard and the depths of habit. Maurice Volaski's SmartKeys handles quotes better than a politician's press secretary and smartens up your keyboard in a number of other ways, as well.

SmartKeys is a control panel that smartens quotes and makes the following automatic substitutions: one space whenever you type two spaces at the end of a sentence (a bad habit some of us brought to the computer from our typewriter days); proper ligatures when you type *fl*, *fi*, *ae*, or *oe*; and an em dash for two consecutive hyphens. SmartKeys can also kill two capital letters followed by a lowercase letter—a common error that creeps into the work of very fast typists who ironically don't release the Shift key quite fast enough.

SmartKeys is smart because of some added features not commonly seen in smart-quotes extensions. For example, in the case of ligatures, let's say you type *fi*. SmartKeys quickly substitutes the proper ligature for the two characters. But then you decide you really wanted to type *fo*. When you back over the ligature with the Backspace or Delete key, this does not erase the entire ligature, as you might expect. Rather, SmartKeys intervenes and lets the letter *f* stand, saving you a keystroke.

The program also provides a way for you to exclude the applications in which you don't want the feature to be active—for instance, telecommunications programs (where smart quotes cause problems in on-line messages) or any program where you find SmartKeys is not so smart to have around. You can also turn it off when particular fonts are being used (some fonts don't have smart quotes or em dashes to begin with).

So if you're tired of being embarrassed by old typing habits that die hard, or if you have fingers that don't quite extend properly on that extended keyboard, SmartKeys can have you typing like a Mac pro. Make sure you use version 2.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac, and System 6.0.4 or later
Limitations: Incompatible with Microsoft Excel
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Lincoln Stein's Quote INIT ($$) is great for people who can't run anything as highfalutin as System 6 on their Mac. This extension works fine on System 4.0 or later. It offers support for handling ligatures, quotes, em dashes, and double spaces at the end of sentences. It also allows you to turn specific substitutions on and off from the keyboard without opening the control panel. Quote INIT was discussed in the March 1991 issue of

MacUser. Look for Version 2.2 or later. It's available in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum as file QUOTES.SIT.

SmartKeys
Maurice Volaski
173 Princeton Ave. Apt. #2
Amherst, NY 14226-5006
Internet: volaski@contra.med.buffalo.edu
ZiffNet/Mac file name: SMKEYS.CPT

TextBreak

Several of the text editors in this chapter let you take a standard Mac text file (where carriage returns usually only occur at the end of paragraphs) and break each line with a carriage return, so that the file can be properly displayed by on-line services. If that's all you ever need to do with your text files, you should consider Robert Gibson's TextBreak utility.

TextBreak is almost a no-brainer. It does one thing—insert carriage returns—and it does it well. Under System 7 you can drag a text file and drop it on top of the TextBreak icon. The utility will run and process the file using whatever preferences you set previously. To set preferences, you have to double-click the program and use menu commands.

The next time you find yourself manually inserting line breaks into a file, take a break and use Gibson's clever little utility instead.

Requirements: System 7

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible; supports drag-and-drop capability.

Registration Fee: A few dollars—it's up to you.

Tips & Techniques: TextBreak modifies the original file, not a copy, so make sure you have a backup of any valuable files you process.

Robert Gibson has practically made a career out of creating System 7 drag-and-drop doodads. If you find TextBreak useful, be sure to check out his other utilities. They're all available in the form of one package called 7.0 PLUS Utilities, for $29.95 (at this writing) directly from Gibson. The package contains more than 25 miniprograms. TextBreak included.

A similar utility, TextFilter by Kaz Matsuki, handles adding and stripping carriage returns, substituting spaces and tabs, and a handful of other text elements. Its main claim to fame is that it lets you preview any text file being processed, opening it for you in a two-paned window. The top pane shows the original file, while the lower pane shows the file as it would look transformed by the current options. You can interactively apply different settings and see how the file would be affected. Once you're happy with the result, you can

save the modified file under a different name. TextFilter is available in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum as file TEXTFI.CPT.

If your main concern is formatting text properly for on-line services, see also Clipper FKEY in Chapter 15.

TextBreak
Robert Gibson
Village I, North 1, Rm. 110
University of Waterloo
Waterloo, Ontario, K0K 1L0
Canada
CIS: 71261,2236
ZiffNet/Mac file name: TEXTBR.CPT

TextMerge

TextFilter, TextBreak, TextMerge... There's a strong enough pattern here that you could easily create a grep expression to hunt for it! TextMerge is another program by drag-and-drop entrepreneur Robert Gibson that can affect a merger faster than you can say Borland/Ashton-Tate.

Under System 7, TextMerge concatenates (combines) into one file any text files you drag onto its icon. If you regularly receive messages on an on-line service or through office mail on a network, this utility can help you combine them all into one file and unclutter your desktop. You can specify the number of carriage returns to separate the files in the final merged document, as well as the creator (so that the merged file will open in your favorite word processor when double-clicked). TextMerge does not automatically delete the original separate files unless you tell it to do that. It's a simple, must-have tool for the System 7 desktop.

Requirements: System 7
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: If you need to merge the files in a particular order, be sure to select them in that order in the Finder, and then drag them onto the TextMerge icon.

Unity, by Michael O'Rourke, is another text file concatenator, and it does not require System 7. Choose some text files, and Unity reads and puts them all into one file. The program is available on ZiffNet/Mac in the Download and Support Forum as file UNITY.SIT. Search out version 3.1.1 or later.

TextMerge
Robert Gibson
Village I, North 1, Rm. 110
University of Waterloo
Waterloo, Ontario, K0K 1L0
Canada
CIS: 71261,2236
ZiffNet/Mac file name: TMERGE.CPT

TypeIt4Me

Most of us don't have the decadent luxury of a private secretary to do our typing for us. But the TypeIt4Me System extension, by Riccardo Ettore, can at least cut down on the number of keystrokes we have to pound into that keyboard.

Most word processors for the Mac offer something called a *glossary*. It's a feature that allows you to type in a few letters and then expand those letters into words, sentences, or even entire paragraphs, with just the flick of a key. TypeIt4Me is basically a universal glossary that's available anywhere you need to type on your Mac: in applications, DAs, and even dialog boxes. You place it in your System or Extensions folder and then restart the Mac. The TypeIt4Me icon will appear to the left of the Apple menu in the menu bar.

You create glossary entries in one of two ways:

1. If you are in a word processor, you type the few letters you want to stand as the code for the entry, press Return, and then type the full text, which can be one word or several paragraphs. Select everything you've typed, including the code, and choose the Add Entry command from the TypeIt4Me pull-down menu, as shown in Figure 5.5.

2. You can also use a blank entry item from the Edit Entry command dialog, and type or paste in the text you want. Rename the entry, using the code you want to stand for the full text.

After you've defined your code, when you type it and press the Spacebar, that abbreviation automatically expands into the full entry. (There may be times when you don't want TypeIt4Me to do its usual substitution. To override the TypeIt4Me mechanism, just press Enter immediately after you type in the code and before you press the Spacebar.) The extension also has preconfigured date- and time-stamp entries. It's a dandy helper that's not well known but definitely should be. Look for version 3.2 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac, System 4.1 or later
Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $$$
Tips & Techniques: If you make a common typing or spelling mistake—such as typing *teh* instead of *the*, *adn* for *and*, or *wierd* for *weird*—define it as a TypeIt4Me entry. In this way you can turn TypeIt4Me into a kind of low-end interactive spell-checker.

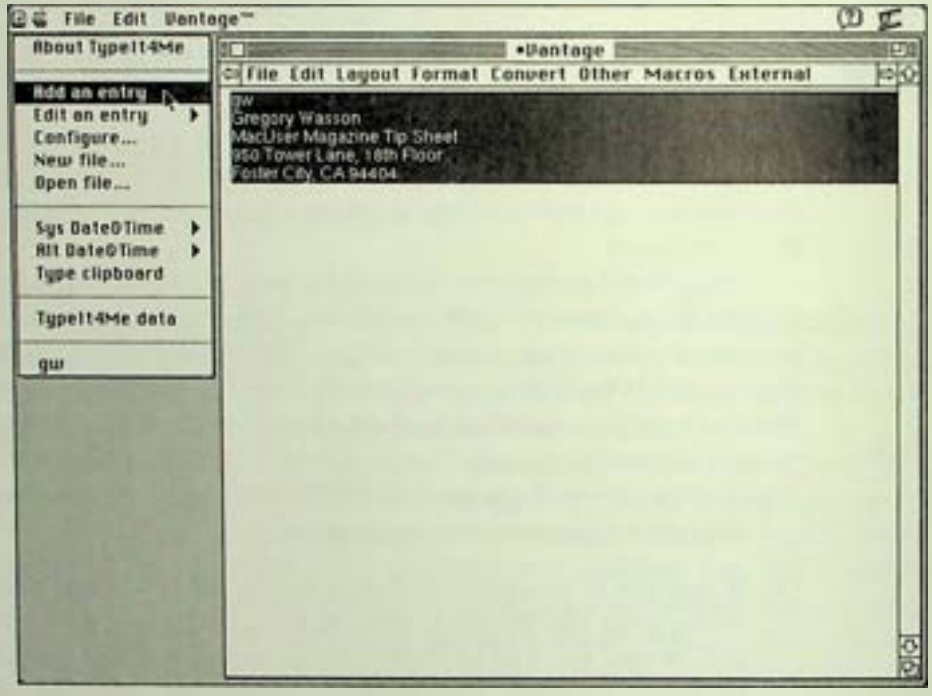


Figure 5.5
Creating a glossary entry in TypeIt4Me

If you don't like the presence of the TypeIt4Me icon in the menu bar, you can eliminate it and access it as a TypeIt4Me window anywhere on the screen, by assigning some keystrokes using the extension's Configure dialog.

Use a trigger or code such as !!! so that TypeIt4Me doesn't mistake a real word for an entry.

TypeIt4Me
Riccardo Ettore
Attn: TypeIt4Me
67 Rue de la Limite
1970 W-Oppem, Belgium
ZiffNet/Mac file name: TYPEIT.SIT

CHAPTER

6

Desktop Publishing and Font Tools

Add/Strip
Conversion DA
FontDisplay
Fonts
Pica Calculator DA
PM4 Shortcuts DA
SetPaths DA
theFONDler
theTypeBook
TypesettingMarksXT
Varityper ToolKit

ALTHOUGH MANY PEOPLE VIEW WORD PROCESSING AS PART OF THE daily nose-to-the-grindstone rut—just one more link in Jacob Marley's chains, if you don't watch out—eyes generally sparkle when you mention *desktop publishing* (often abbreviated DTP). "Word processing" may rudely remind many of us of the drudgery in being a drudge, but desktop publishing conjures forth images of creativity and play. (The perception of drudgery may well be an illusion and unfair to word processors—not to mention editors and secretaries—but I won't prick this particular balloon.) "Human kind," as T.S. Eliot noted, "cannot bear very much reality." We all need illusions, and the illusion of choice for this chapter is desktop publishing: the art of arranging text and graphics on pages.

The Macintosh shareware sector hasn't produced any full-fledged page-layout programs, so don't get your hopes up for low-cost alternatives to PageMaker, QuarkXPress, or FrameMaker. You could conceivably use DOC-Maker, mentioned along with text editors in Chapter 5, to do some low-end page layout. It wasn't really designed for that task, but the human body wasn't designed for upright walking, either. You can expect headaches from attempting the former, and backaches as you enter your thirties from doing the latter.

What you will find in this chapter are some interesting add-ons and utilities that will enhance the specific desktop publishing programs you may already have, and a few that do something the commercial products can't handle. For example, you'll find an extremely powerful program that prepares text files in a number of special ways for importing into a page-layout program. There are a couple of utilities that convert points, picas, and inches. One utility displays PageMaker tips and keyboard shortcuts (in case the usual mnemonics prove more demonic than tonic). You'll also spot several font tools.

There's an overview of the variety of shareware fonts available, followed by some specific product descriptions. Given Macintosh owners' passionate love affair with fonts from the get-go, it's not surprising there are probably as many shareware fonts ready to meet their PageMaker as there are Adobe fonts for sale. Considering the price of most commercial fonts, this is a prolific resource you'll want to explore and exploit. If you're interested in using the fonts on both the Mac and a PC running Windows, look also at the font conversion utilities, REFONT and TTConverter, discussed in Chapter 16.

Whether you use the shareware fonts or the DTP utilities mentioned in this chapter, they will help make your DTP documents page perfect.

Add/Strip

Although the times they are a changin', DTP work is often mostly done on a Mac, even if the text has been input on a PC or workstation. As in the case of telecommunications, this causes some problems (see the description of Alpha

in Chapter 5 for the gory details). Text files prepared on a non-Mac computer usually have to be massaged into shape before they can be imported into a Mac page-layout program. Many DTP applications automatically substitute curly (smart) quotes for typewriter-style straight quotes (primes), but that's about the limit of their prowess in the fine art of substitution. What if you need to deal with other typographical niceties such as ligatures, ellipses, and em dashes? Moreover, what if you're composing text on a PC and you can't enter the proper keystrokes to generate the foreign language characters and diacritics so fluently parlay-vooed by the Mac? It's more than likely that you'll need to find a solution for that problem, as well. Bilingual and typographical help is on the way, in the form of Add/Strip, an immensely powerful text utility that can deal with all these issues and more.

Add/Strip was originally developed by a company to facilitate the work of its DTP production department. It has since been released as shareware so that other companies and individuals can exploit its special talents. Its operation is remarkably simple. You start it, select a file or files (it offers batch processing), and click the Process button.

How Add/Strip processes files depends on the settings you choose. The options are plentiful, and you can use as many or as few as you like. As with some of the text editors mentioned in Chapter 5, you can use Add/Strip to exchange straight and curly quotation marks; to create em dashes out of two hyphens; to substitute ligatures for the *fl* / *fi* combinations; to strip out leading or trailing spaces; to remove control characters; to break lines at certain widths; and to add or strip carriage returns and line feeds. Add/Strip can also remove extra blank lines.

But Add/Strip doesn't stop there. It adds refinements (see Figure 6.1) to many of the functions already described. For example, in the case of curly quotes, you can instruct Add/Strip to curl quotes *except* when they follow numbers—useful if you use straight quotes (primes) to denote inches and feet. The program can remove or allow spaces around em dashes. There are additional controls that come in handy for DTP work. For instance, you can transform text in the CSV (comma separated values) format into tab-delimited text, and vice versa. That can be helpful if you need to turn CSV text into a table. Add/Strip can automatically add prefixes or suffixes to output file names. Best of all, the program allows you to set up your own replacement strings so that any characters can be replaced by other characters of your choosing. For example, someone typing Spanish text on an IBM might type n/ whenever they wanted the Spanish character ñ. You could then tell Add/Strip that every occurrence of n/ should be replaced by the Macintosh keystrokes for ñ (Option-n and n). You can define various Add/Strip settings and save them to disk for future use, so that you can keep one settings file for text from a UNIX workstation, another settings file for PC files, and so on.

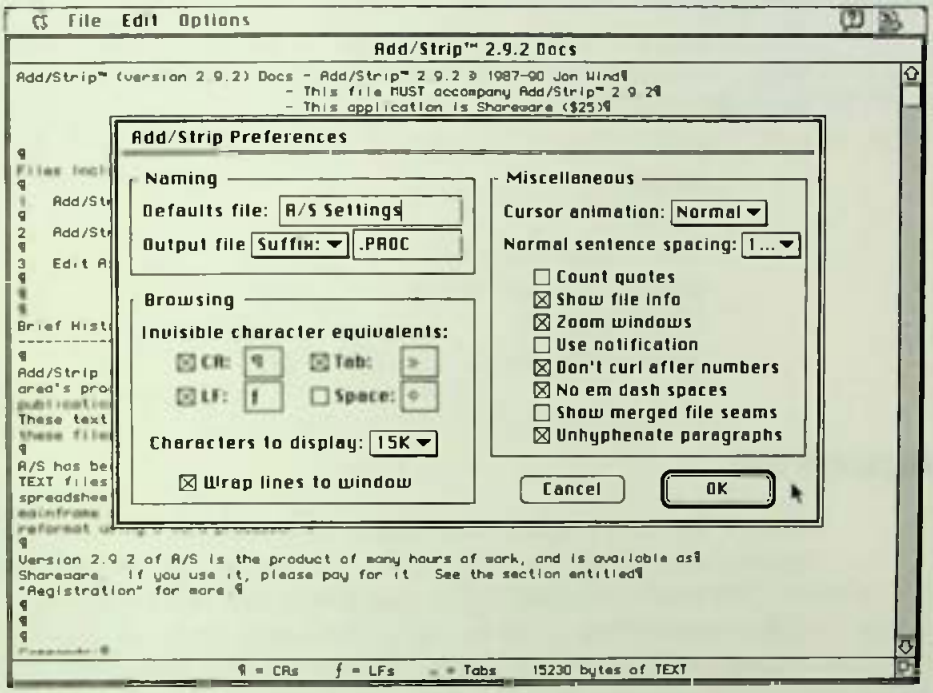


Figure 6.1
Add/Strip makes your text file DTP-ready

You cannot interactively edit text files. They are always processed automatically after you choose them and apply the current settings. You can, however, preview a processed file on screen to see if your settings worked as you anticipated. You can also set the file creator so that output files will open in your favorite word processor when double-clicked. Add/Strip has a Transfer command that lets you launch another program (for instance, a page-layout program to import the text file you just processed)—without returning to the Finder desktop first. This saves a step and some time for you.

Add/Strip stands out as one of the most remarkable shareware DTP tools that has appeared for the Mac. Unfortunately, most people have never heard of it. You now have, so check it out. It adds value to your existing programs without stripping you of your cash. Make sure you obtain version 2.9.2 or later to have access to all the features described here.

Requirements: Macintosh Plus or better

Limitations: You cannot interactively edit text files within the program itself.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: If Add/Strip's string-replacement feature is all you need, you can save a shareware fee and opt for Reponer, a free program

that's also by Add/Strip author Jon Wind. It's basically a pared-down version of Add/Strip that offers only the string-replacement function and nothing else. Be forewarned that even the author admits this program is somewhat buggy. The file is available in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum as REPONE.CPT

Add/Strip
Jon Wind
2374 Hillwood Drive
Maplewood, MN 55119
CIS: 70167,3444
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ADDSTR.SIT

Conversion DA

One of the most burdensome aspects of DTP is having to work in different measuring systems: English, typesetting, metric, and so on. Numerous conversion utilities have appeared, but none quite measures up to the Conversion DA in terms of the sheer variety of conversions it makes available. The author, Rick Johnson, originally wrote Conversion because he worked as a technical illustrator and grew weary of converting between inches and millimeters. Happily, he threw in numerous other measurement schemes so that the Conversion DA performs the appropriate mathematical magic for graphic artists, programmers, model railroad buffs, and desktop publishers.

Using the program is simple. You choose it from the Apple menu. When the Conversion window opens, you select the input and output measurement units (inches to picas or points, for instance), enter the actual number, and press Enter. The conversion appears below the input number. Conversion offers support for DTP (picas and points), programming (octal, hexadecimal, decimal, binary), volumes (liters, cords, various English units), area measurements (square miles, acres, metric units), temperature (Celsius, Fahrenheit, Kelvin), and even the major model railroading scales. You can use the program to convert fractions to decimal and back again—useful for anyone sizing photos. Conversion is a dandy DTP tool that may convert you into a full-time user. Look for version 1.5.6 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Incompatible with Quadra cache; may behave erratically under MultiFinder.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: To use the Conversion DA reliably under System 6 and MultiFinder, hold down the Option key when you choose the DA from the

Apple menu. This forces the current application to "host" the DA, bypassing the MultiFinder DA Handler, with which Conversion has some irreconcilable differences.

To install the DA under System 7, users need to drag the DA suitcase to an unopened System folder. Click OK when you are told that the file has to be placed in a special location within the System folder. The DA will then appear in the Apple menu.

Conversion DA
Rick Johnson
2216 Allen Lane
Waukesha, WI 53186
GEnie: RICK.JOHNSON
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: CONVER.CPT

FontDisplay

Apple's Key Caps DA (found in the Apple menu) can be helpful in exploring the fonts installed on your Mac, but it leaves a lot unsaid. Shareware author Jeffrey Shulman is best known for his antiviral crusade and VirusDetective software (see a detailed look at this program in Chapter 14). But his FontDisplay application will help you mind your p's and q's (and the rest of the ABCs to boot!) to a degree that Key Caps wasn't designed to do.

In short, FontDisplay displays and prints information about the fonts installed on your Mac. It can print a font's entire character set, including its key-combination, its location on disk, its ID number (useful for tracking down font ID conflicts), the sizes installed, the characters per pica for a selected size, and the character codes (in octal, hexadecimal, or decimal format). You can view or print any font in a grid called a Font Table, or in a keyboard layout (see Figure 6.2) similar to the one displayed by Key Caps. You can select from several keyboard layouts (the one connected to your Mac, or any of Apple's standard keyboards). FontDisplay will print the table or keyboard layout over several pages if it won't fit on one sheet. You can also use the program to print a font in various styles (italic, bold, plain, underlined, and so on), and you can change the sample text to anything you want. FontDisplay was discussed in the December 1989 issue of MacUser and it's a winner. Look for version 5.4 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: The demo shareware version has the Print command disabled until you register. Also, you cannot save your settings.

System 7: Compatible (but see *Tips & Techniques* for limitations and special instructions)

Registration Fee: $$

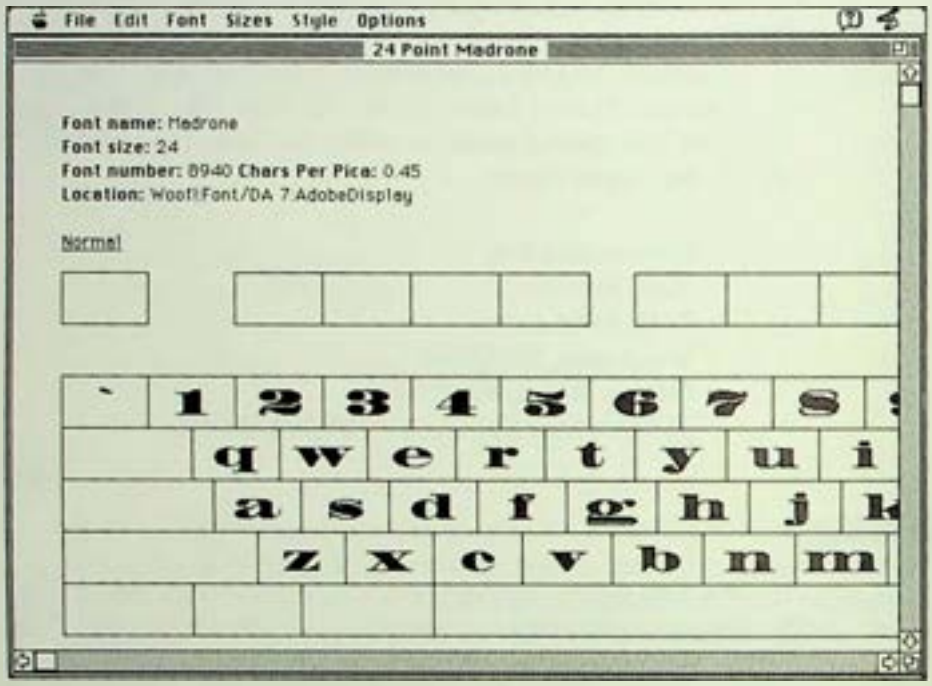


Figure 6.2
Fonts on parade in FontDisplay

Tips & Techniques: Although FontDisplay works under System 7, together they present some difficulty, because fonts are not installed into the System by Font/DA Mover as was the case under previous versions of the System software. FontDisplay needs to have access to the font suitcases used on pre-System 7 Macs. If you use Suitcase II or MasterJuggler under System 7, there is no problem—just open the font suitcases with FontDisplay wherever you keep them; but if the fonts have simply been dragged into the System file, FontDisplay won't find them. So, in order to use FontDisplay with System 7, you need to keep copies of the font suitcases around. It's not the ideal solution, but the only one possible until the program is updated for greater compatibility with System 7's font structure.

FontDisplay
Jeff Shulman
1111 W. El Camino Real, Suite 109-MAC
Sunnyvale, CA 94087-1057
CIS: 76136,667
GEnie: KILROY
MCI Mail: KILROY
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FNTDIS.SIT

Fonts

Macintosh users take fonts for granted, to a degree that astonished PC users until the advent of Windows. Fonts are everywhere now—and the Mac user's hunger for new ones continues to grow, fed by the new type technologies developed by Adobe (PostScript) and Apple (TrueType). There's a problem, however: Commercial typefaces, generally speaking, are outrageously expensive. The shareware community has risen to the occasion and produced a fanatic's fontasy (a small selection of the typefaces available can be seen in Figure 6.3). Indeed, fonts constitute the majority of DTP-related files available as shareware. It's impossible to catalog them all in this book, but the paragraphs that follow offer a selection of the best fonts available, by the best shareware type creators.

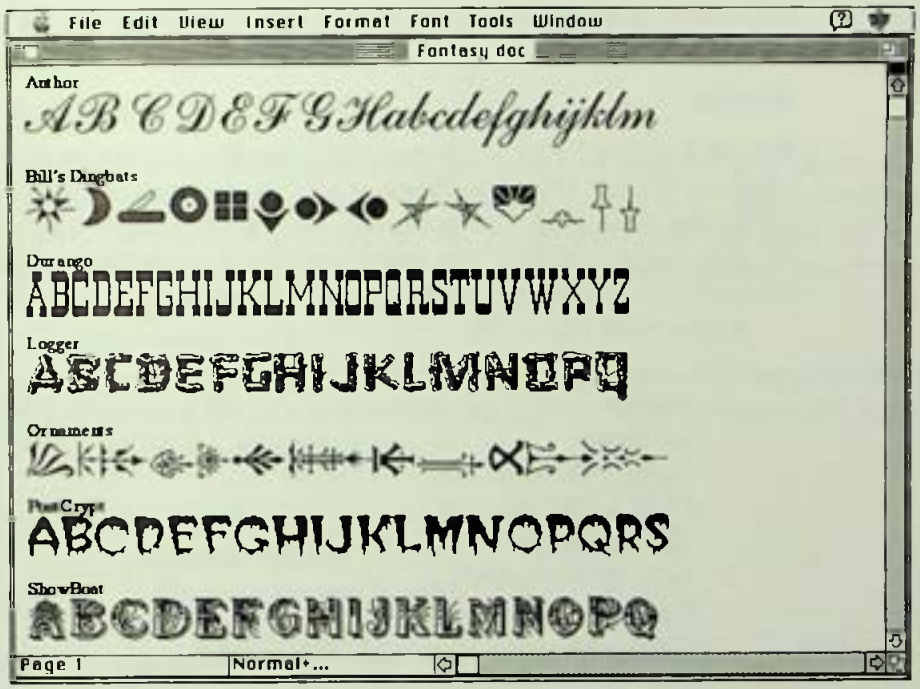


Figure 6.3
A fontasy come true—shareware fonts for the Mac

You'll encounter mostly Type 1 PostScript fonts here, as well as in your searches beyond this book. Type 1 fonts are based on a format developed by Adobe, one of the largest producers of digitized computer fonts. For best results, you'll want either a PostScript printer, or Adobe Type Manager (ATM) and a compatible non-PostScript printer. You will occasionally spot Type 3 PostScript fonts. These work fine on any PostScript printer, but will not function properly with ATM.

You'll also see TrueType versions of some of the Type 1 fonts. TrueType is a competing font format developed by Apple that has not met with much enthusiasm (despite the hype), at least among professional desktop publishers. It's not generally supported at service bureaus, so if you decide to use TrueType fonts, you might want to restrict them to your own personal use at home. Microsoft has included the TrueType technology in the 3.1 release of Windows, however; this might give TrueType the kick in the pants it needs to get up to speed. Keep your eyes peeled for developments. You'll need a Mac equipped to deal with TrueType. That means either upgrading to System 7 or, if you are sticking to System 6, obtaining the TrueType INIT from an authorized Apple dealer or any of the on-line services licensed to distribute Apple software (CompuServe and America Online are the two main ones).

In any case, here's a selection of some of the fonts waiting for you on shareware "shelves." This collection also serves to highlight some of the top talents in the Macintosh shareware font industry. These fonts should work on any Mac.

Author

Author is a Type 1 PostScript font that's cursive, attractive, and exudes quiet elegance. It's free from FontBank, a producer of commercial fonts. FontBank distributes some of its wares through the on-line services, as advertisements for its complete 150-face font collection that's available for considerably less than just one Adobe or Bitstream typeface package.

Registration Fee: None

Author
FontBank
Voice: 1-708-328-7370
FAX: 1-708-328-7491
CIS: 75300,632
AOL: FONTBANK
GEnie: FONTBANK
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: AUTHOR.SIT

Bill's Dingbats

Bill's Dingbats is a Type 1 PostScript font that adds a number of delightful PostScript symbols to your dingbat repertoire. If you're tired of the same old Zapf Dingbats that are built into almost every PostScript printer in existence, you'll love Bill's Dingbats. The font was discussed in the December 1989 issue of MacUser.

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Another dingbat font that's amusing is Armadillo, a PostScript font complete with six armadillos, four state maps, and the Texas

flag. It all started as a scan of a poster from Billy Bob's Texas, the world's largest honky-tonk. Armadillo is probably the best example of "beerware"—Russ Coffman, the author, expects you to chug a Lone Star beer if you use it. You'll find a reference to it, pardner, in the March 1990 issue of *MacUser*. It's free, and available as file ARMADI.SIT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum. As Joe Bob Briggs would advise, check it out.

Bill's Dingbats
Bill Tchakirides
c/o U-Design Type Foundry
201 Ann Street
Hartford, CT 06103
CIS: 75130,23
GEnie: UDESIGN
Ziffnet/Mac File Name: BILLSD.SIT

Boston II

Desktop publishers may not find anything very interesting in Boston II, but ImageWriter and PowerBook owners will. Boston II is considered the most legible bitmap font available for the ImageWriter, and has recently been "rediscovered" by PowerBook users who find it highly legible on the PowerBook's display. This is not a PostScript font.

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: Another ImageWriter shareware font worth looking at is Clairvaux III. It's available in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum as file CLAIRV.SIT.

Boston II
Charles E. Mauer
31 Forsyth Avenue South
Hamilton, Ontario L8S 2A4
Canada
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: BOSTON.CPT

Durango

An attractive freeware alternative to Adobe's best-selling Wood Originals collection of fonts, inspired by the Old West, is Durango. You can't beat the price! Durango author Hank Gillette is prolific as a font creator, and his work is generally quite good.

Registration Fee: None

Durango
Hank Gillette
(No address available)
CIS: 73627,3612
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: DURANG.SIT

Logger

Logger is a novelty display face with characters that look like logs. (A display face is a font that you would typically use in headlines or advertisements.) You'll find only caps and punctuation in Logger's character set. Like most display faces, it's best used at large point sizes. The author, David Rakowski, is another prolific font creator. He specializes in display faces, and most of his creations are well worth the trouble to find. His ShowBoat font, reminiscent of circuses, is another winner and also available in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum (file SHOWBO.SIT). Many of his fonts appear in the TrueType format, as well.

Registration Fee: None

Logger
David Rakowski
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: LOGGER.SIT
TTLOGG.SIT = the TrueType version

Ornaments

Ornaments is a Type 1 PostScript font composed of dingbats digitized from an old type book. It complements, but does not duplicate the ornaments found in the Adobe Wood Originals font.

Registration Fee: None

Ornaments
Nigel Yeoh
(No address available)
CIS: 100016,275
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ORNAME.SIT

PostCrypt

PostCrypt resembles the font used in the old William M. Gaines *Tales from the Crypt* comic book (and the new HBO series based on that publication).

It's a drippy, bloody novelty font that's creepy and makes a great display face for Halloween.

Registration Fee: None

PostCrypt
Walter Kafton-Minkel
c/o Portland Mac Users Group
Box 8949
Portland, OR 97207–8949
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: PSCRYP.SIT

Pica Calculator DA

The Conversion DA mentioned earlier offers more conversion options, but it's not the only option a calculating desktop publisher can choose. The Pica Calculator DA, by Jim Lewis, is aimed specifically at people involved in DTP (model railroad enthusiasts should stick to Conversion, in other words). This DA may look and act just like a standard desktop scientific calculator—the kind many of us rely on more and more as our math skills slip away—but it is designed specifically for desktop publishing. You can use it to make computations that involve any mixture of picas, points, ciceros (a European typesetting standard), and inches. That's right: You don't have to convert all the numbers to a common measurement unit. Pica Calculator transparently translates all the units to the desired output result, and then solves the equation you entered.

Pica Calculator supports 50 functions and has 10 nonvolatile memories that remember values even after you shut down your Macintosh. You can also create programs that perform frequently used calculations and apply them to new data later. A sample program called Scan Filesize calculates whether you have enough hard disk space for a scan, based on the proposed image size and resolution. Pica Calculator was mentioned in the July 10, 1990, issue of *MacWEEK*. Be sure to use version 2.01 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Incompatible with the Quadra cache. The demo shareware version has some of its programming functionality restricted until you register.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Under System 7, drag the Pica Calculator DA suitcase to the unopened System folder, and click the OK button when prompted. The program will then appear in the Apple menu.

Pica Calculator DA
Jim Lewis, c/o Golden State Graphics
2137 Candis Avenue

Santa Ana, CA 92807
AOL: JimXLewis
CIS: 71650,2373
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: PICALC.SEA

PM4 Shortcuts DA

Application keyboard "shortcuts" sometimes turn into long detours when you can't remember the keys you're supposed to press. PageMaker 4.0 is no exception to this problem, but there's help in the form of the PM4 Shortcuts DA. This extremely well designed DA provides a complete list of all keyboard shortcuts for PageMaker 4.0, neatly arranged in the following nine categories. To display the appropriate help screen, you simply click an on-screen button.

- *Text:* Shortcuts for changing type specifications
- *Kern:* Kerning shortcuts and kern-pair information
- *Edit:* Shortcuts for Edit and Options menu commands
- *Cursor:* Shortcuts for moving the insertion point and selecting text
- *Special Characters:* A list of extended characters and typographical characters, such as em dashes and ligatures
- *Metacharacters:* A list of metacharacters to use with the Find and Change commands
- *Page:* Shortcuts for moving around within a document, changing page views and palettes
- *Tools:* Shortcuts for changing tools and manipulating objects
- *Miscellaneous:* Power-user and unknown shortcuts

If you use PageMaker, get this DA. It may become outdated as PageMaker evolves, but for now it's a must-have utility.

Requirements: Any Mac and PageMaker 4.0
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $
Tips & Techniques: To install this DA in System 7, drag it to the unopened System folder and release the mouse button. Click OK when you are prompted for a response.

PM4 Shortcuts DA
Mark Teranishi and Paul Sorrick
11441 60th Ave. S.
Seattle, WA 98178
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: PM4SHO.SIT

SetPaths DA

Applications frequently require that support files, such as spelling dictionaries and help files, be located in a particular folder on your hard drive. Sometimes it's the System folder, and sometimes it's the same folder that holds the application itself. Similarly, the Mac has always needed printer fonts to be in the System folder or (under System 7) in the Extensions folder. Wouldn't it be great if you could put all your fonts in a font folder, and all the support files for all your applications in a folder set aside just for that purpose? If nothing else, it would cut down on the clutter that always threatens to overwhelm the System folder. Well, there is a partial solution, at least for non-System 7 users, called the SetPaths DA.

SetPaths is a simple DA by Paul Snively that lets you enter path names of several folders where applications and the System can look for files such as fonts or dictionaries when they are not located in the usual places. SetPaths cannot remember these paths when you shut down your Mac, but the DA usually comes with an extension called Boot Paths, which does remember your settings between start-ups.

The SetPaths DA was discussed in the April 10, 1990, issue of *MacWEEK* and the March 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Make sure you get version 1.3. Check out *Tips & Techniques* for some alternatives for System 7 users.

Requirements: Any Mac running System 6 or earlier
Limitations: None
System 7: Incompatible
Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: The SetPaths DA, alas, does not work with System 7, but there are several other options. If you want to work with application support files as well as fonts, look into Bruce Tomlin's remake of Snively's DA, called the SetPaths Control Panel. It mimics the DA version and works under System 7. Its main failing is that it does not support Type 3 PostScript fonts. Tomlin's program is somewhat experimental according to the author himself, so approach it with caution. SetPaths Control Panel is available in the ZiffNet/-Mac Download and Support Forum as file SPCDEV.CPT.

If you are concerned only with reducing System folder font clutter, consider commercial products such as Suitcase II and MasterJuggler. There's also a shareware font handler called Carpetbag that offers some of the same

capabilities as those two commercial products and does support Type 3 fonts. It's available in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum as file CARPET.CPT and is more fully discussed in Chapter 12.

SetPaths DA
Paul Snively
3519 Park Lodge Court
Indianapolis, IN 46205
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SETPTH.SIT

theFONDler

The Apple Font/DA Mover has frequently been cited as Apple's most flagrant offense against its own interface standard, so it's not surprising that companies and individuals alike have sought substitutes for it (and that even Apple has dropped it as a necessary piece of System software, with the advent of System 7). Jim Lewis's theFONDler, despite its mildly suggestive name, means serious business when it comes to managing fonts and font suitcases.

With theFONDler, you can transfer sets of PostScript fonts into new suitcases. You can also delete fonts from existing suitcases. This is a simple program, and its interface offers a more intuitive way to manage large font collections than what is found in Font/DA Mover. Since it deals only with suitcased fonts, theFONDler offers limited usefulness under System 7. But the program does display interesting information about fonts—such as their IDs, true PostScript names, possible conflicts with fonts already installed in your System, and the existence of printer fonts—so System 7 users may still find the program worth exploring. This program was discussed in the October 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 3.04 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Supports PostScript fonts only. Limited usefulness under System 7. Can only open inactive font suitcases.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

theFONDler
Jim Lewis
c/o Golden State Graphics
2137 Candis Avenue
Santa Ana, CA 92807
AOL: JimXLewis
CIS: 71650,2373
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FONDLE.SEA

theTypeBook

Professional print shops usually show their customers a book that displays sample text in various typefaces and styles. It helps clients select a face that's right for the job. Jim Lewis, a shareware author who has specialized in DTP-related software (see Pica Calculator and theFONDler in this chapter), thought Mac desktop publishers should also have the benefit of samples and came up with theTypeBook, a shareware application that lets you build and print out a typeface specimen book for any font installed in your Mac.

The program is insanely simple to use. You run it, select the font, and print; theTypeBook takes care of creating the specimen page. You can choose from four layouts. The standard sample page shows the font in a variety of point sizes, and in paragraphs at different point sizes and leading (to test the font's "color" and show how the font will work as body text). Each page also provides information on characters per pica, the font's ID number, PostScript/TrueType name, and style. The KeyCaps table prints a table using the selected font, indicating the keystrokes required to access each character. The Character Set layout prints out the entire character set of a font at a large point size. The Line Showings layout prints out a sample page with the main alphanumeric upper- and lowercase characters (along with some punctuation marks) of all selected fonts, in lines.

Lewis's theTypeBook is one of the finest DTP shareware products available. Its value is increased by the fact that it's free; there is no shareware fee to anguish over. It's frequently updated as the author adds new features. Look for version 2.37 or later. Now if only he would learn to capitalize that T...

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible; supports TrueType fonts
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: The page footer that prints on every layout holds the author's company name and address and theTypeBook logo. For a small fee, Lewis will create a customized footer that includes your name and logo, so you can add a professional touch to your type sample sheets.

If you're using a 300-dpi laser printer, theTypeBook is great for checking how well a font will look at particular point sizes. Some fonts do not hold up well, in smaller point sizes especially. This program lets you check for potential problems.

theTypeBook
Jim Lewis
c/o Golden State Graphics
2137 Candis Avenue
Santa Ana, CA 92807
AOL: JimXLewis
CIS: 71650.2373
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: TYPEBK.SEA

TypesettingMarksXT

QuarkXPress offers only basic filtering control of text that you import—namely, smart quotes substitution. But what about ligatures, multiple spaces, and the like? You can preprocess text files to be imported with a separate utility such as the Add/Strip program described earlier in this chapter. You can also avail yourself of the services of TypesettingMarksXT, a so-called xtension for QuarkXPress 3.0 or later.

You install this xtension by placing it in the same folder as QuarkXPress. Then when you run QuarkXPress, you'll find a new command in the Utilities menu: TypesettingMarksXT. This add-on lets you apply substitutions for quotes, ligatures, multiple spaces, and hyphens (transforming them to em dashes or en dashes where appropriate). To use the xtension, you choose it from the Utilities menu, make the appropriate setting in a dialog, and then apply the substitutions to either the entire document or just selected text. It's very handy for text that you enter directly in QuarkXPress, or that has already been imported and placed from external word processing files. The xtension was discussed in the September 1991 issue of *MacUser*.

Requirements: QuarkXPress 3.0 or later
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Another QuarkXPress xtension you should look at is the FlashEditing XTension from Reseaux. It prints a report that tells what fonts and images are in a QuarkXPress document. It offers much the same power that the CheckList utility gives PageMaker 4.0 users, but conveniently, within the program. FlashEditing does not seem to work properly with any version of QuarkXPress other than 3.0. This xtension is available as file FLASHE.SIT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum. (Incidentally, a noncommercial version of CheckList, version 1.0c, is also available as file CHKLST.SEA.)

TypesettingMarksXT
Ben Taylor
c/o MacPublishing
30 Monmouth Street
Bath, Avon, England
BA1 2BW
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: TYPESE.SIT

Varityper ToolKit

Varityper is a company that markets a line of medium-to-high-resolution PostScript-compatible imagesetters. It's not surprising, then, that the company has developed some in-house utilities of interest to desktop publishers—for example, the free font utility called Varityper ToolKit for Mac desktop publishers. This utility actually combines several older Varityper DAs (FontMaster, FontWizard, FontConflicts, and PSFontFinder) into one application.

The ToolKit displays any selected font in a character table, indicating the keystrokes needed to type a specific character. You can also click any character in the grid with the Option key pressed, and the character is copied to the Clipboard so it can be pasted later. This feature is an improvement over the Apple Key Caps DA. ToolKit can also provide extensive information about any installed PostScript font, including the font family name, ID number, and so on. You can print this material out or save it as a tab-delimited text file that you can import into a spreadsheet, database, or other application. The utility can also scan any PostScript text file and compile a list of fonts used in the file. The fellow who wrote the ToolKit, Ken Winograd, also set Brickles Plus loose on the world (see Chapter 4 for details on this arcade game).

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Does not support TrueType fonts.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: The Varityper ToolKit is a free, scaled-down version of a heftier package called Varityper ToolBox, which sweetens the pot with a large number of PostScript and imagesetter utilities. You can purchase the ToolBox directly from Varityper by calling the number given below.

Varityper ToolKit
Ken Winograd
c/o Varityper
11 Mt. Pleasant Avenue
East Hanover, NJ 07936
(800) 526-0767
In NJ: (201) 887-8000, ext. 999
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: VARITY.SIT

CHAPTER

7

Graphics Tools

About Clip Art
AppleDraw DA
Artisto+
Blender DA
Camera DA
Flash-It
Image
ImageCatalog
LightningPaint
MacBillboard
MandelTV DA
PICTuresque DA
SnapJot
SnapShot
Super Ruler DA

IGNORING THE VALUE OF GRAPHICS IS ONE OF THE MOST COMMON MISTAKES made by inexperienced desktop publishers. They'll try to cram in every possible word, as if it were Holy Writ, even if the only way to accomplish the feat is to reduce the type to some barely discernible point size. They forget the old adage, "A picture is worth a thousand words." Don't make the same error. Remember that graphics always make layouts more attractive and inviting, thereby encouraging reluctant readers to read. (Even empty, wordless space can be considered a kind of Zen graphic, I suppose.)

Many of the tools in this chapter will serve you well when you have serious desktop publishing to do, or even if you just gotta doodle. You'll discover shareware programs similar to MacPaint and popular commercial draw applications. Several screen capture utilities let you take "snapshots" of whatever happens to be on your Mac's screen, including pull-down menus and dialog boxes. There's a DA that can help you make professional, graduated blends in PostScript graphics programs. You'll also find a Clipboard enhancer, a program that generates banners, an on-screen ruler you can use in programs that don't have one, an image cataloger, and much more. If you're interested primarily in converting files between different graphic formats (for example, GIF to TIFF or EPS to PICT), you should also check out the graphic conversion utilities described in Chapter 16, "Connectivity Tools."

About Clip Art

Although clip art is not covered in this chapter or even in this book, you will want to know about the wealth of clip art available through the on-line services. It's easy to spend hundreds or thousands of dollars each year for commercial clip art. The noncommercial clip art available on line (or on floppy disk collections from mail-order outfits) is definitely an alternate source you should consider.

CompuServe probably has the most to offer in its various graphics forums. (Type GO CIS:GRAPHICS at any ! prompt to go to a menu leading to several forums that contain downloadable graphics and clip art.) Many of the files you'll find this way are not specifically Mac files. The majority, in fact, were created for DOS machines. That may mean you will have to convert them once you have obtained them. Your best bet for converting foreign-format files is the shareware application, GIFConverter, described in Chapter 16. If you don't want to bother with file conversion, look for Mac graphics files in the MacFun (GO CIS:MACFUN) and Mac Applications (GO CIS:MACAP) forums. Altogether, CompuServe has tens of thousands of such files available.

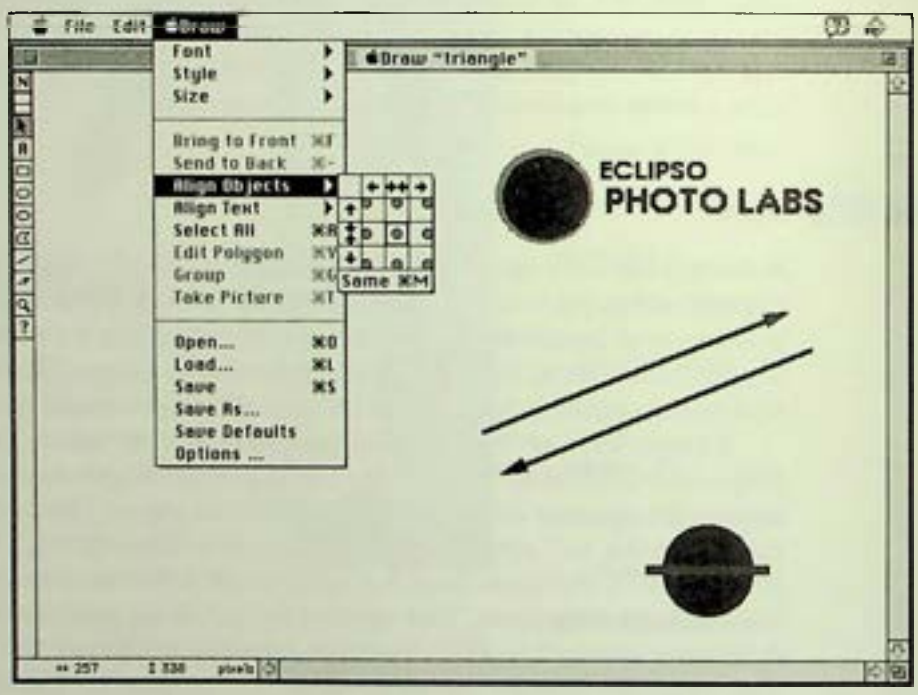
America Online also provides over 7,000 examples of Macintosh clip art and graphics in its Graphic Arts & CAD Forum. You can find everything there, from StartupScreen graphics to EPS (PostScript), PICT, and even Japanimation.

The high quality of much of the material on both of these services will surprise you.

AppleDraw DA

Object-oriented, or so-called *draw programs* are some of the most popular and expensive graphics software available. Draw objects, unlike MacPaint-style bitmap graphics, resize well and are therefore ideal for use in page layout, where such flexibility is required. Commercial draw products such as Canvas or MacDraw Pro are valuable additions to anyone's computer software library, but they are often too elaborate for many people. They also hog disk space and require substantial amounts of RAM. It's hard to justify all that when you only want to design a simple logo or create some basic graphic shapes for insertion into a word processing document. The AppleDraw DA is a draw program that excels at just these types of simple tasks (see Figure 7.1 for some examples). It even includes some remarkably powerful features at just a fraction of the cost of commercial draw applications.

Figure 7.1
The AppleDraw DA



AppleDraw supports the basic shapes: rectangles, rounded rectangles, ovals, lines, arrows, and polygons. The program operates mostly in a black-and-white world, but you can use the eight standard QuickDraw colors: black, white, red, green, blue, cyan, magenta, and yellow. You get a full palette of pen and fill patterns, control over text formatting (font, point size,

style, and framed text), object aligning, and zooming. AppleDraw also has a unique Load command that lets you insert other AppleDraw documents into the current drawing window. This great option lets you create picture libraries of commonly used elements (such as logos, arrows, and ornaments) that you can easily use again and again in multiple documents.

The AppleDraw DA is accompanied by a program called AppleDrawer. This miniapplication lets System 6 users double-click AppleDraw documents and have them open in the DA (DA documents cannot normally be opened by double-clicking). System 7 users will have to jump through some hoops to make this feature work properly, but the process is clearly explained in the AppleDraw documentation.

Perhaps as important as what AppleDraw does is what it doesn't do. It cannot create Bezier curves, freehand shapes, arcs, or wedges. You're constrained to some basic shapes, although there are work-arounds (see *Tips & Techniques*). It does not support the full justification of text, sub- or superscripting, or the use of more than one font, point size, and so forth in the same text block. There is no way to flip or rotate objects, create custom patterns, or even print the current graphic from within the AppleDraw DA. The program is meant strictly for on-the-fly doodles or graphics that you immediately bring into another program by pasting or importing.

Even with its limitations, this superb DA is a handy graphics tool to have in your Apple menu. Make sure you obtain version 5.1.4 or later for full compatibility with System 7 and the newer Macs.

Requirements: Mac Plus or better, and at least System 4.1.

Limitations: Incompatible with System 6.0.1.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$$

Tips & Techniques: Polygons can be tricky to close properly, because it's difficult to click the endpoint precisely. There are a couple of ways to do it right the first time, every time. You can draw with the grid on, and your cursor should snap to the point. Or you can have AppleDraw auto-close the polygon by holding down the Option key with your last click.

AppleDraw doesn't offer any specific special effects for text, but here's a method to do some simple text tricks. Select the text block you want to transform, and choose the Group command. You can then stretch or distort the text block by resizing it.

As mentioned, AppleDraw does not let you create arcs, wedges, and the like. But the DA's Partial Pictures feature lets you mimic this capability. For example, if you want to create a dome or semicircle, first draw a circle or oval. Then draw out a rectangle over the portion of the circle you want to clip. For best results, the fill of the rectangle should be set to None. Make sure the rectangle is selected (tiny black "handles" will appear at its corners), and choose the Take Picture command. This transforms the rectangle into a

new object containing only that part of the underlying object it covers, in this case, half a circle. You can drag this "dome" anywhere in the drawing window. The original circle is left unchanged.

AppleDraw has a Group command, but provides no obvious way to ungroup objects. Sounds a little too chummy, doesn't it? Here's how to break that group up: Select the grouped object and choose the Edit Group command. A special group editing window appears. Cut all the objects in it, and exit the group by closing the window. Since the group is now disbanded and empty, it simply disappears from the draw window. Now choose Paste from the Edit menu (or press Command-V), and you'll see all the cut objects reappear as individual objects that you can reposition.

AppleDraw DA
Günther Blaschek
Petzoldstr. 31
A–4020 Linz, Austria
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: APDRAW.CPT

Artisto+

The Macintosh Clipboard is a handy way to transfer graphics between applications, but it doesn't give you much artistic license: you can see the contents of the Clipboard, but you can't do anything to it besides paste it. The Artisto+ DA overcomes that shortcoming, in a way, by letting you clip an image before it is copied to the Clipboard.

Here's how it works. Once Artisto+ is installed, you access it from the Apple menu. It prompts you to open a graphic saved in the MacPaint or PICT format. The DA then displays the graphic and lets you select any portion of that graphic with a standard selection marquee. When you choose the Copy command, only that clipped portion is copied to the Clipboard. Artisto+ also has a hand or grabber tool that lets you scroll around a large graphic until you spot the area you want to clip. Once you have the clipped image in the Clipboard, you can paste it into any application that supports the PICT or MacPaint formats.

Artisto+ was discussed in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 2.01 or later.

Requirements: 512k Mac or better.

Limitations: Incompatible with Quadra cache, does not support color graphics or any formats other than PICT or MacPaint.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: You can use Artisto+ as a clip art library management tool. For example, you might create a variety of arrows in a drawing or paint program and save them all to one PICT or MacPaint document. When you needed an arrow in a page-layout program or whatever, you could just open the arrow "library" with the Artisto+ DA and select the desired arrow, copying it to the Clipboard.

Artisto+
Tom Taylor
3405 Walton Way
San Jose, CA 95117
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ARTSTO.SIT

Blender DA

One of the most dramatic and popular special effects used in PostScript graphics is a *gradient* or *graduated blend.* This is a smooth, gradual transition from one color to another or from one shade of gray to a lighter or darker shade. To create this effect in some professional-level programs, such as Adobe Illustrator, you have to specify the number of steps or gradations between the two colors or grays. How do you know how many steps are required to create a smooth transition? If you indicate too few, an ugly banding of separate colors mars your graphic. The problem is compounded by the fact that the number of steps needed depends on what printer you're using for output. You can rely on trial and error, but a far easier solution is the Blender DA.

Blender calculates the minimum number of steps needed to generate a smooth gradient blend. To obtain the number, you select Blender from the Apple menu and enter the screen frequency, output resolution, and the CMYK (process colors) percentages of the two colors you want to blend. Blender calculates the number of gradations and even recommends the best size for the object that contains the blend. Simply enter the result in any program that prompts you for the information when you create blends.

Blender isn't perfect. As the author warns, it may simply "minimize your disappointment." This is especially true when you are printing to a low-resolution device such as a 300-dpi laser printer, where some banding almost always occurs. But Blender is better than just guessing, and it calculates the number of steps based on an equation developed by Adobe Systems, the creators of PostScript. Look for version 1.41 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: Incompatible with Quadra cache.
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $

Blender DA
Rick Johnson
c/o Graffix
2216 Allen Lane
Waukesha, WI 53186
GEnie: RICK.JOHNSON
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: BLENDE.SIT

Camera DA

Say Cheese! Or at least instruct your monitor how to say it ... by using the Camera DA to take snapshots of your screen. Why would you even want to capture your screen and save it as a graphic? Perhaps you need to illustrate some menu or window in a report or manual. There is, of course, the standard Command-Shift-3 keystroke (a built-in FKEY or function key on every Mac) that takes a snapshot of the entire screen, but this method is limited. It always includes the cursor in the snapshot, and it isn't flexible enough to let you have a menu pulled down when you invoke it. The Camera DA gives you that flexibility.

To use Camera, you choose it from the Apple menu. The Camera dialog offers options for saving the screen capture to a MacPaint file, printing it immediately to a printer, and having invisible or visible cursors. You also enter the time delay (1 to 60 seconds) for Camera to wait before it takes the shot. Close the DA. Then pull down a menu, open a window, or do just about anything but shut down your Mac, and after the time interval you specified, the screen is captured to a file named Picture 0. If you take more shots at this time, subsequent files are named Picture 1, Picture 2, and so on.

Camera was discussed in "Shooting Gallery," a substantial article about screen capture in the October 1989 issue of *MacUser*.

Requirements: Any compact Mac (9-inch screen).

Limitations: Incompatible with color or large monitors.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: To install Camera under System 7, drag the Camera file onto an unopened System folder and click OK when prompted. The file will then appear in your Apple menu.

Camera, like the Command-Shift-3 keystroke, saves the entire screen. If you want to capture just a portion of the screen (for example, a dialog box or just one open window), check out SnapJot and SnapShot, discussed later in this chapter. And for a full-featured commercial product, I highly recommend Capture from Mainstay. I couldn't work without it.

A simpler enhancement of the standard Apple screen capture FKEY is available as FKEY3. This freeware gives you expanded Command-Shift-3 capabilities: You can take up to 26 screen shots by pressing Command-Shift-6. FKEY3 names the resulting files Screen A through Screen Z. It centers the picture in a MacPaint-format file, and adds a border around the menu bar, just like the screen shots of any Apple manual. Like Camera, FKEY3 doesn't work with color or large-screen monitors. It's available as file FKEY3.SIT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum. If you have a color or large monitor, check out Color SnapShot or Flash-It, described later in this chapter.

Camera DA
Keith Esau
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: CAMERA.SIT

Flash-It

Flash-It is one of the most popular screen capture utilities, especially among owners of Macs with color or large screens. It's a System 7-compatible control panel extension that can capture the entire screen or just the frontmost window, with or without the cursor. You can have menus pulled down. Flash-It can also direct the screen capture to a printer rather than to a file, with an Exclude option that lets you turn this feature off for specific applications (it can cause problems in some programs).

Flash-It saves in several formats: Clipboard, Scrapbook, PICT, and PICT resource (useful for programmers). It lets you set the creator code of the PICT files it generates so that they will open in that application when double-clicked. Look for version 2.2 or later. The program was discussed in the October 2, 1990, issue of *MacWEEK*.

Requirements: Mac Plus or better; System 6.0.3 or higher.

Limitations: Its image-to-printer feature may conflict with some programs (MicroPhone II is specifically mentioned in the documentation).

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Flash-It
Nobu Toge
P.O. Box 7114
Menlo Park, CA 94026
CIS: 76334,650
GEnie: N.TOGE
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FLASHI.SIT

Image

Image is a powerful image-processing program with a sophisticated interface (shown in Figure 7.2) for manipulating and analyzing scanned gray-scale or color images. Although its features and tools match or surpass those found in many commercial products such as Digital Darkroom or Enhance, Image carries a price tag of zilch dollars. That's right, zilch. The author, Wayne Rasband, wrote the program on taxpayers' time as a project for the National Institutes of Health, and U.S. federal law forbids such projects from being distributed commercially. So the program has entered the public domain, where John or Jane Q. Public can use it free of charge.

Figure 7.2
Image, a powerful image-processing program that's free!

The Image interface includes all of the usual tools found in image-processing software: airbrush; magic wand (for selecting areas of a common color or gray); drawing and text tools; customizable special effects filters; and controls for rotating, flipping, inverting, and scaling graphics. You can add to or subtract from the current selection. The PICT and TIFF graphics formats are supported. There are also histograms, contrast enhancement, and much more. Image supports half-toning of gray-scale images—handy especially when you are printing to 300-dpi PostScript laser printers. The program will

even acquire graphics directly if you have either the Data Translation Quick-Capture or Scion Image Capture 2 frame-grabber card installed. Numerous tools for analyzing images are also built into the program (for example, density measurement). Data collected by these tools can be exported to statistical programs such as StatView or KaleidaGraph, or even to a spreadsheet.

The most discouraging thing about Image is its complexity. Its origins in the biomedical world of genetic research and medical image analysis clearly show in its sometimes obtuse program manual and esoteric terminology. In other words, Image will probably be intimidating to new users. On the other hand, Image is your tax dollars in action (and for peaceful, benign purposes to boot!), so at least think about taking advantage of the opportunity and give it a try. If you're a U.S. citizen, it's practically your patriotic duty! Image is a terrific program that would never have been nominated for Senator William Proxmire's old annual award for government boondoggles. The program was discussed in the January 30, 1990, issue of *MacWEEK*.

Requirements: 2Mb minimum RAM (4Mb or more recommended), a monitor capable of displaying 256 colors or grays, and an FPU (a floating point processor that is standard in Mac IIs and Quadras).

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: The extensive documentation for Image has been made available as a separate file called IMGDOC.SEA in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

Image
Wayne Rasband
(No address available)
CIS: 76067,3454
Internet: wayne@helix.nih.gov
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: IMAGE.SEA

ImageCatalog

Most of the files in this chapter, like most political campaigns, are concerned with creating good images. Creating images is one thing, but keeping track of them is quite another—especially if you are trying to manage a large collection of clip art. There are a handful of commercial image catalogers or graphics databases available, but many of them are aimed at vertical markets and are priced sky-high accordingly. ImageCatalog is all the more welcome, then, because it is completely free.

Photographers use contact sheets to display a collection of photographs. ImageCatalog provides the same sort of function for computer images. Each ImageCatalog sheet displays graphics as 30 to 40 thumbnail sketches at a time. The procedure for creating these sheets and organizing your computer artwork is pretty straightforward. You pull up a new catalog sheet via a menu command and then scan folders for images. ImageCatalog directly recognizes MacPaint, PICT (also EPS with PICT previews), and GIF graphics. Included with ImageCatalog is a utility called Make Twins that provides a clumsy way to incorporate images in formats ImageCatalog doesn't recognize.

Once you have cataloged your images, you can view the catalog as thumbnails or in a text listing (similar to viewing the contents of a folder in the Finder's By Name view). The text view provides information on each file's format, size in kilobytes, dimensions in pixels, and any comments you have attached to it. You can also select entries in the text view and choose the Copy command to copy the entries to the Clipboard as text. You can then paste this text into other programs as fields delimited by spaces or tabs. If you double-click a graphic in either thumbnail or text view, the graphic appears in actual size in a window. In the text view you can add comments to any graphic; you can also link an application to any graphic so that double-clicking the graphic causes that application to start and open the chosen graphic.

ImageCatalog isn't perfect (for example, there's no way to search a catalog except visually), but the program is virtually unknown among Mac users and deserves wider recognition. With a polishing of the rough edges, it could be a killer shareware or freeware application. Look for version 1.0b3 or later.

Requirements: Color-capable Mac, and System 6.0.3 or later.

Limitations: Only recognizes GIF, MacPaint, and PICT formats directly; it can catalog graphics in other formats only through a clumsy work-around described in the documentation.

System 7: Compatible, but application linking feature doesn't work under System 7.

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: To scan a folder, don't just highlight the desired folder's name in the standard Open dialog that ImageCatalog displays when you scan in images this way. Instead, double-click the folder's name so that its contents appear in the dialog and then click the Scan Folder button.

You might, during your travels in Shareware Wonderland, encounter GraphXbase, another image database application. It's far more ambitious than ImageCatalog (and has a very slick interface), but it's also the most agonizingly slow program I've ever used—and this was on a Mac IIcx and Quadra 700! It's not available on ZiffNet/Mac for this very reason, but you might find it in MAUG's Mac Applications Forum (GO CIS:MACAP) or on another service. Caveat emptor.

ImageCatalog
Tom Bereiter
4613 Shoalwood Avenue
Austin, TX 78756
Usenet: cs.utexas.edu!halley!twb
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: IMGCAT.CPT

LightningPaint

They say nothing good in life is free, but LightningPaint, an outstanding shareware graphics program similar to MacPaint, comes pretty darn close. Perhaps I should say MacPint, because LightningPaint dwarfs the Claris commercial product in features and power. Humayun S. Lari wrote LightningPaint when he was 16 years old, but could not distribute it initially because he did not have access to any on-line services from his homeland of Pakistan. Fortunately, when he became a computer science student in the United States, all that changed. The program is now widely available.

LightningPaint is in essence a bitmap paint program. It boasts a large palette of typical paint tools such as pencil, paintbrush, lines, spray can, filled and unfilled shapes, eraser, font, and so on. The program also has some more unusual tools, such as the charcoal, starburst, and spiral. Many tools can be customized. For example, you can control flow rates or pressure for tools such as the airbrush. You can zoom in to the fatbits level. The available fills and patterns can be expanded with custom variations. Several advanced features round out the program: masks that let you restrict your painting to defined areas of the current graphic, and special effects (fish-eye, trace edges, lighten, darken, and so on) to add that creative *je ne sais quoi* to your work. The program also supports graduated blends. You can see some examples of what you can do in Figure 7.3.

You can save files in several formats: LightningPaint's proprietary format, MacPaint, PICT, and the StartupScreen format (you can use this last format to create custom start-up screens for your Mac).

The program lets you use the standard eight QuickDraw colors (black, white, red, green, blue, cyan, magenta, and yellow), but the color chosen is globally applied. That is, if you choose magenta, the entire graphic is painted in magenta. It's all or nothing.

Are there any major negative aspects of LightningPaint? It's basically a simple paint program (just like MacPaint). The on-line documentation (the only kind you'll get) isn't very good. It will whet your appetite, but you'll have to dive into the program to really learn about its full capabilities through experience and exploration. The benefits are worth the work involved.

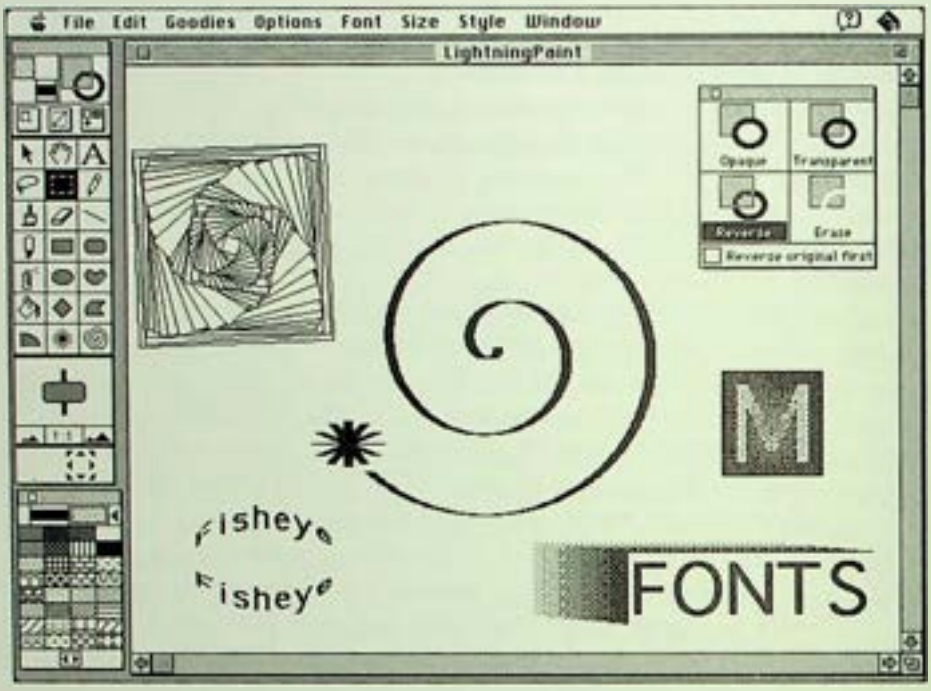


Figure 7.3
LightningPaint outpaints the competition

LightningPaint is a stunning example of the best in Macintosh shareware, so encourage this author by paying the modest shareware fee promptly (there's a special lower rate for students). For all the features mentioned here, make sure you have version 1.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Primarily a simple paint program.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: LightningPaint will operate considerably faster on some configurations if you set the Monitors control panel to black and white.

LightningPaint
Humayun S. Lari
c/o Adeel Lari
14117 Frontier Lane
Burnsville, MN 55337
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: LPAINT.CPT

MacBillboard

Billboards and banners aren't exactly high art, but MacBillboard at least makes it fun to create them. MacBillboard is a black-and-white graphics program that lets you create large-sized documents, such as banners ("Happy Birthday," "Welcome Home," and so on), by printing a file across several pages that you then have to piece together. You combine text and graphics created within the program with its paint tools (line, paintbrush, spray can, paint bucket, and pencil). MacPaint users will feel right at home.

The program lets you work with two views of your document: the work view, and a zoomed-out view that displays the work area at various print sizes (ranging from 17 by 22 inches to 21 by 26 feet) along with the page breaks. You spend most of your time in the work view, entering and manipulating normal-sized text (10 to 12 points), and then set the print size in the zoomed-out view. This is the step that takes your dinky text and graphics and transforms it into a mighty banner. In addition to the usual paint and selection tools, you'll also find transformation commands such as flip, rotate, and scale. There's on-line help if you need it. Most people probably won't, because the program is so simple and intuitive.

MacBillboard is the shareware brainchild of Donald Brown, head of CE Software—makers of QuicKeys, the most popular macro program for the Macintosh. Look for MacBillboard version 4.01 or later. This graphics application was discussed in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Incompatible with Quadra cache, and doesn't support TrueType.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$$

Tips & Techniques: To create reversed (white on black) text, enter your text in the usual way, select it with the marquee selection tool, and apply the Invert command from the Goodies menu.

Double-clicking the eraser clears the entire screen, just as in MacPaint—but there's a catch: Your MacBillboard document is larger than one screen, and only the visible portion of the current document gets erased. Use the Split Window view to make sure there aren't any stray elements remaining that you meant to give the heave-ho.

MacBillboard
Donald Brown
CE Software
P.O. Box 65580
Des Moines, IA 50265
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MCBILL.SIT

MandelTV DA

A Mandelbrot is not a variety of German sausage, but rather a term for a peculiar type of mathematically generated graphic that would have felt quite at home in the psychedelic seventies. Think bell-bottoms, light shows, and Peter Max: Mandelbrots look a lot like ink blots on LSD. And MandelTV is a slick, color Mandelbrot generator in DA form developed by Abbott Systems. It's fast, and lets you save the generated Mandelbrot images as PICT graphics that you can use in other programs. MandelTV works best with the monitor set to 256 colors.

Operation of this DA is simple. You first enter the number of steps or iterations the DA will use to generate the Mandelbrot (the higher the number, the more complex the graphic and the longer it takes to appear). Then you click the Resume Calculating button. The Mandelbrot is drawn in the DA's display window. Finally, you click either the Animate Towards Center or Animate From Center button to set the Mandelbrot into pulsating overdrive. You can resize the DA window to fill more of the screen—and you may want to, because the special effects are so stunning.

Requirements: Macintosh II family, SE30, or Quadra; FPU; 2Mb of RAM.
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: You can use the Animate Black Out toggle to turn the MandelTV DA into a screensaver. Just make sure the toggle has a check mark by it, and when you need to leave your Mac unattended, click either the Animate From Center or Animate Towards Center button. It's simple but beautiful. If you're worried about the incompatibilities that regular screensavers (usually extensions of some sort) sometimes cause, then MandelTV may be the perfect solution for you.

MandelTV DA
Abbott Systems
62 Mountain Road
Pleasantville, NY 10570
(800) 552-9157
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MANDTV.SIT

PICTuresque DA

The name PICTuresque conjures up images of countrysides and quaint villages, but the DA of this name is actually a serious tool for working with graphics in the PICT or EPS formats. The program lets you open and view

MacPaint, PICT, or EPS files, offering several options that many of you will find useful.

You can convert color PICTs to black and white. You can save any open file as either a PICT graphic or a PICT resource file (of interest to programmers and ResEdit hackers). You can also convert EPS screen previews from draw format to bitmap. The advantage of this is that EPS draw format previews take longer to appear on the screen and occasionally cause printing problems. You can use the DA to strip out the PostScript code of an EPS graphic before you copy and paste it into another application. This gives you a smaller file, but makes sense to do only if you never plan to print the graphic.

The DA's final trick is the best one. Although the highest-quality Mac clip art tends to be in the EPS format, some programs still cannot accept EPS files. PICTuresque's Copy EPS as PICT option lets you copy an EPS graphic to one of these stubborn holdouts, but keeps the PostScript code hidden within the graphic, so that the graphic still prints out as if it were an EPS image. It's sneaky and underhanded, and you'll love it.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $$

PICTuresque DA
Tim Herzog
c/o Two Bits Worth
45 South Avon #20A
Saint Paul, MN 55105
AOL: Hertim
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: PICQUE.CPT

SnapJot

SnapJot is another screen capture utility, but before you start moaning, "Not *another* screen capture utility," look closely at this one. SnapJot gives an unusual twist to the typical screen capture program; it makes this particular offering worthy of an entry all to itself, rather than just a cross-reference or footnote.

To begin with, SnapJot supports color, large, and multiple monitors. It can capture menus and segments of the screen (you don't have to capture the entire screen). Versions 3.01 and later are fully System 7-compatible. SnapJot has two components: an extension you place in your System folder, and a DA. You capture a screen or portion of a screen by pressing a user-defined keystroke (the default is Command-Shift-S). A special cursor appears, which

you drag out to define the area of the screen you want to capture. SnapJot is unique because, as soon as you do a capture, the captured image appears in its own window. You can then print that window or save the image in it to disk in the MacPaint or PICT formats. You can also continue to capture other parts of the screen and have several capture windows open at the same time.

SnapJot's special multiwindow approach lets you use the program for tasks other than just screen capture and graphics work. You can use the windows to gather notes and data from various active programs, and then arrange all this information together on screen, rather than having to repeatedly cycle through the programs. For example, you might capture an on-line message in one window, spreadsheet data in another, and an address from a word processor in yet a third, and then use the combined information to prepare a report. True to this program's name, the process is very much like jotting down notes (or, perhaps more accurately, pasting Post-Its™). SnapJot was discussed in "Shooting Gallery," a substantial article about screen capture in the October 1989 issue of *MacUser.*

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: The demo version available from on-line services limits you to screen capture windows of 1½ by 2 inches or smaller until you register and pay the full commercial price.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$$$

Tips & Techniques: The version you frequently find on on-line services or through mail order is 2.0. If this is the only version you can find, be aware that the keyboard shortcut does not operate under System 7. To activate SnapJot 2.0, you must choose the DA from the Apple menu. Better yet, obtain version 3.01 or later.

SnapJot
Wildflower Software
21W171 Coronet Road
Lombard, IL 60148
(708) 916-9360
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SNAPJO.CPT

SnapShot

SnapShot, like FKEY3 (mentioned in the discussion of Camera earlier in this chapter), is a beefing-up of the standard Apple FKEY for capturing screens. You can install this FKEY with third-party commercial software such as Suitcase, or have it install itself into your System file. There's no need to fool around with a resource editor such as ResEdit. SnapShot is compatible with

any Mac and with any size monitor, but it saves captures only as black-and-white graphics in several formats: MacPaint, FullPaint, StartupScreen, MacDraw, CricketDraw, Canvas, Giffer, and Clipboard.

When you invoke the SnapShot FKEY, you'll see dialogs prompting you for a format and file name. There's also an option that delays the screen capture, allowing you to pull down a menu you want included in the capture. There are also some options for automatically clipping or scaling the capture before it is saved to a file. SnapShot was discussed in the October 1989 issue of *MacUser* and the December 12, 1989, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: The demo version you can obtain from on-line services is crippled, limiting you to 12 shots before the FKEY disables itself. SnapShot's implementation of the StartupScreen format may not work on the Mac SE, Plus, or old 512k Macs.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: There's a color version of SnapShot, appropriately called Color SnapShot, by Josh Blume. Color SnapShot (version 2.0 or later) is a screen-dump FKEY exclusively for Mac II owners. It supports several formats: GrayView, PixelPaint, PICT2, StartupScreen, Giffer, and Clipboard. Except that it captures color, Color SnapShot operates just like its black-and-white cousin. It also limits the number of times you can use it (20) until you pay the registration fee. It's available as file COLSNA.SEA in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

SnapShot
Mike Whittingham
396 Meeker Road
Vestal, NY 13850
CIS: 74326,156
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SNAPSH.SIT

Super Ruler DA

Although most DTP programs such as PageMaker or QuarkXPress provide rulers galore for precision layout work, other programs just don't measure up. Such features would be welcome especially in word processors, which are frequently used as low-end alternatives to more expensive page-layout programs. Word processors usually have a horizontal ruler, but almost never a vertical one. Super Ruler DA is an older program (from 1987) that provides both kinds of rulers in any application, as demonstrated in Figure 7.4.

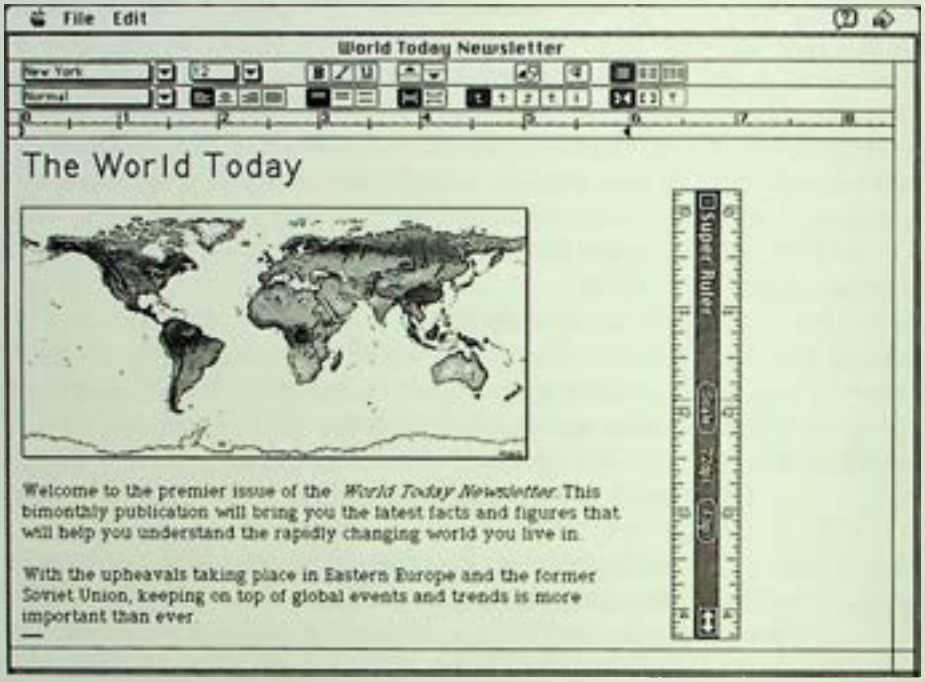


Figure 7.4
Measuring up with the Super Ruler DA

When you choose Super Ruler from the Apple menu, it displays a movable, resizable ruler (in inches only). You can flip it to either horizontal or vertical orientation. You can also measure objects at different resolutions, even when you are in zoomed views. The DA is simple, but invaluable when you need it.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Displays rulers in inches only.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: When Super Ruler is active, the location of the mouse is always mirrored in the ruler by dotted lines. To install Super Ruler under System 7, drag it onto the unopened System folder and click OK when you are prompted.

Super Ruler DA
Randy Ubillos
c/o COMPUTER Applications
12813 Lindley Drive
Raleigh, NC 27614
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SRULER.CPT

Database Tools

Personal Information Managers

Number Crunchers

PART

4

Databases and Number Crunching

CHAPTER

8

Database Tools

Academic DataManager

The CD Catalog

DAbase

FileList+

GradeBook

INFOMaker

Loodle

Pro Series FileMaker Pro Database Applications

Retriever Light

TAKING CARE OF BUSINESS, WHETHER IT'S YOUR OWN BEESWAX OR SOME corporate kettle of fish, often means delving into databases and information managers. As a confirmed nerd, I love databases; they're probably my favorite kind of software. In fact, most of this book was written in a database (4th Dimension from Acius) and then exported only at the last possible moment into a word processor (Nisus). But even if databases don't light your fire as much as they do mine, don't dismiss this chapter. There's some interesting stuff here that may just catch the corner of your eye, even if it doesn't make you ogle.

One beast you won't find in this chapter, however, is a full-fledged database application of the 4th Dimension, FileMaker Pro, or FoxBASE order. Such a beast is about as common in the shareware world as the unicorn is in nature. The only two programs described here that most closely resemble real database software are DAbase and Retriever Light.

What you *will* read about are database templates and tools or utilities for use with specific database programs. There are free-form databases for storing text and graphics, utilities that manage large collections of files on hard disks or floppies, a CD cataloger for audiophiles, and more. You'll also spot specialized minidatabases where you have little or no control over your database destiny. These programs don't let you create fields, structures, procedures, or the other advanced elements of commercial database products. Instead, these elements have all been preordained, in good Calvinistic fashion. Teachers will find a gradebook, and students a tool that will help them make the grade. So take a look around—you have a date with data.

Academic DataManager

One of the more irritating tasks of university life (it's not all ivory tower, you know!), especially at the graduate level, is creating bibliographies. It's grunt work, pure and simple. Most people rely on that old dependable standby, 3-by-5-inch notecards. But that approach leaves all the hard work up to you: alphabetizing, and remembering the correct format for bibliographical entries. Academic DataManager is a HyperCard stack that frees your intellect for more creative pursuits.

Academic DataManager was specifically designed for historians and others in the liberal arts; it will likely be of little interest to chemistry majors and science junkies. The stack mimics the standard notecard, with fields that you tab to and fill in, such as Author, Journal, Title, Date, Publisher, and so on. A Journals pop-up menu lets you enter names of periodicals simply by selecting the name from the menu (but see *Limitations*, just below). Once you've entered all your bibliography information, you can search through and sort the stack by any field. You can print the entire stack, or a subset created through a search. You can also export to another stack, or to a text file if you want to

incorporate the bibliography in a dissertation or report. The entries appear in the text file with the various fields arranged and properly punctuated according to *A Manual for Writers*, by Kate Turabian. The documentation for the stack appears as on-line help (it can be printed).

Requirements: Any Mac running HyperCard 2.0 or later.

Limitations: No Boolean searches. Formatting (for example, italic for titles) is not maintained when you export to text files, so you have to reformat the text files. Note fields are limited to 30k. Customizing the Journals pop-up menu requires some HyperCard skills.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Academic DataManager does not support Boolean or similar complex searches when you export to a text file, but there is a workaround, albeit torturous. Let's say you have a DataManager stack that includes a listing of articles and books, both fiction and nonfiction, by various authors. You want to export a text file that lists works of fiction by Fay Weldon. To do this, you first go to the Edit menu and choose New DataManager Stack. Give the new stack a new name. Second, click the Print button in the original stack and print to the new stack you just created. Search on the criteria Keywords=Fiction (assuming you used Fiction as a keyword). This fills up the new stack with a subset (fiction books) of the original one. Finally, enter the new stack and click the Print button again. This time print to a text file, and search on Author=Fay Weldon. The result: a text file that includes only works of fiction by Fay Weldon. The technique is messy, but it does work.

Academic DataManager
Tom Marx
4716 Fessenden St. N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20016
CIS: 76346,534
Internet: TMARX@AUVM.AMERICAN.EDU
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ACADAT.CPT

The CD Catalog

"CD or not CD" is not really the question anymore. Today it's increasingly difficult to find "record" stores that sell anything but those shiny silver disks. And one of the best database tools to appear as shareware for the Mac is, happily, The CD Catalog, a HyperCard-based system for organizing and managing your compact disk collection. This stack has all the necessary tools, so it's a great way to get started.

The CD Catalog sports a snazzy, well-designed interface that mimics a CD. As shown in Figure 8.1, the CD's title and relevant information appear on a drawing of a CD, with the track names and times in a scrollable list to the left. If you have a color monitor, you'll find a tasteful touch of color scattered throughout the program in various menus and screens.

Figure 8.1
Catalog your CD collection with The CD Catalog

The CD Catalog lets you input or import your own disk data, as well as assemble and print labels for CDs, tapes, and R-DAT cassettes. You can also export data to text files. There are controls that let you scan and display all CDs in the stack sequentially, as if you were flipping through the plastic jewel cases themselves. You can search for specific CDs by artist, title, track, or track time, but the program does not support Boolean or similar complex searches. The CD Catalog can also sort your collection by artist, title, record label, catalog number, year of release, and classification (rock, blues, classical, and so on). A navigation palette floats at the ready, with buttons that take you to the first, previous, next, and last records.

Requirements: Any Mac, System 6.0.3 or later, with HyperCard 2.1.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: If you're a laserdisc aficionado, Calice's LD Catalog is also available on ZiffNet/Mac; the file name is LDCATA.SEA.

The CD Catalog
Mark Calice
c/o Ardenwood Software
34766 Monaco Common
Fremont, CA 94555
AOL: MarkC17
CIS: 71101,645
GEnie: M.Calice
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: CDCATA.SEA

DAbase

Many Mac purists probably don't know this, but dBASE is the premier database environment in the computing world as a whole. You isolationists out there might not know a .DBF file if it bit you in the BVDs. Chances are, however, in this brave new world of connectivity between the Mac and PC platforms, that you will eventually need to access dBASE (.DBF) files. DAbase, an inexpensive shareware DA, lets you do just that with a minimum of fuss, and even creates simple databases in the .DBF format.

DAbase can open and display .DBF files created by FoxBASE (Mac or PC versions) and the PC programs dBASE III and III+ from Borland. DAbase does not support dBASE IV files. Once the .DBF file is open, you can edit the contents of any field or add records. If you click a field name (as opposed to its contents), the Find dialog box opens, letting you search using whatever key you type into the entry box. In the Find dialog, there's also a pop-up list of all fields so you can easily switch to another field if necessary. There is no list view that shows several records at the same time. (Think of it as a form of serial monogamy: Only one record can be viewed at a time, but you can switch from record to record faster than you can say "I divorce thee, I divorce thee, I divorce thee.") Also, there is no option for sorting or deleting records.

The program's database creation capabilities are low-end, but they will let you construct very modest database digs, such as a to-do list, a videotape collection, or an address book. DAbase has no support for procedures, macros, calculated fields, or similar bells and whistles. It lets you define up to 12 text fields and that's about it. The program's limitations, as noted, are severe, but if you are content with a stripped-to-the-bare-bones database or simply want to view .DBF files, it's just the ticket. Look for version 2.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Incompatible with Quadra cache; limited to 200 uses until you register.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: If you use DAbase to create and manage a simple list of addresses, you can use the program's Copy Entire Record command to copy the current record and paste it into a letter in a word processor, or perhaps into an envelope utility or template.

DAbase
Vik Rubenfeld
128 14th Street, Suite B
Manhattan Beach, CA 90266
CIS: 72416,1215
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: DABASE.CPT

FileList+

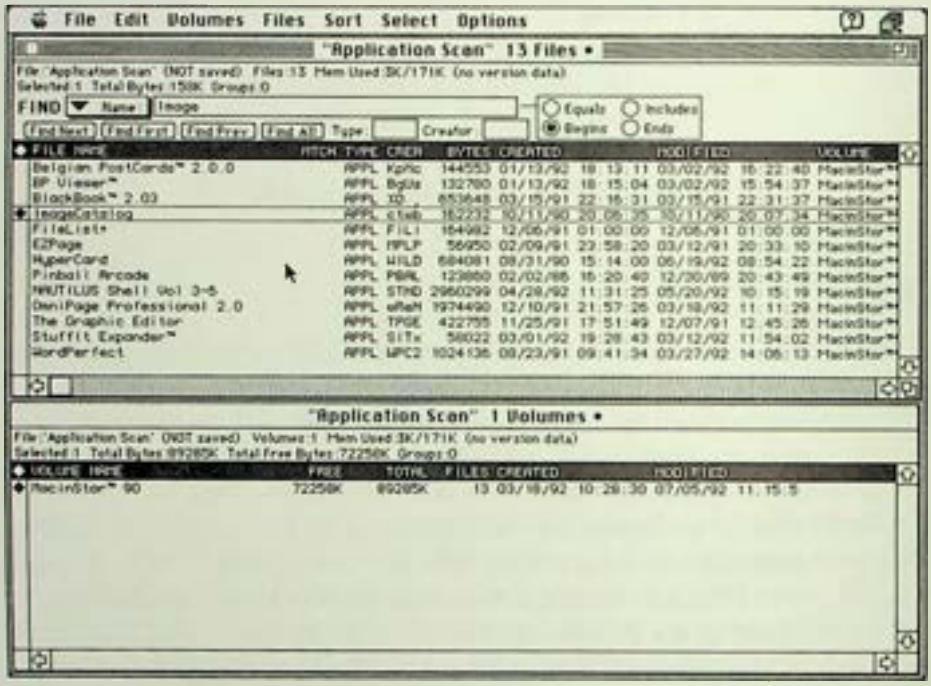
FileList+ is an extremely powerful disk/file management utility with flexible, sophisticated off-line searching and database functions that simplify tracking and reporting on all your volumes, files, and applications. It's so simple, in fact, that you might actually be tempted to stop procrastinating and do it! The Mac operating system, unlike DOS, has no built-in way to sort and compare files or to display certain types of files through the application of a filter. If you need that capability, FileList+ is the most reliable way to get it.

FileList+ displays two main windows: One window displays volumes (hard disks, floppies, CD-ROMs, and so forth), and the other contains a list of files on those volumes. When you first start the program, the windows are empty. You choose the volumes you want to scan for files. There is an automatic scan mode that scans each floppy inserted into the Mac and then ejects it after the scan is complete, so you can immediately pop in another disk. Before starting a scan, you can define a filter so that only certain types of files are listed. For example, you might tell FileList+ to scan for and display only applications, MS Word documents, or System files such as extensions. The resulting list would only include the kinds of files culled by the filter.

Once you've created a list of files, you can merge it with other file lists; search through it; mark and select files (either manually or by instructing FileList+ to mark certain kinds of files); or sort files in various ways. Boolean selection is supported. The Find command lets you search for files with names that begin, end, include, or equal specific strings. The files window presents each file on a line by itself (see Figure 8.2) with information about the file name, type, creator, size, version, and so on (you have full control over how much information is displayed). What you do with all this information is up to you. The program makes it possible to compare and mark duplicates, and can even delete duplicate files (although this is a potentially dangerous procedure

if you don't really know what you're doing, so tread carefully). FileList+ can also serve as a way to audit files. For example, a network administrator could use the program to make sure that everyone has the same version of PageMaker or the same LaserWriter printer drivers.

Figure 8.2
FileList+ should be first on your list of must-have file/disk utilities



FileList+ provides an extremely fast way to catalog and manage large numbers of files on hard drives or floppies. Look for version 1.0B20 or later. The author, Bill Patterson, frequently updates the program, so keep your eyes open for new versions.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Incompatible with QuicKeys 1.2 (upgrade it to 2.1 or later), Now Utilities AlarmsClock 2.0 (3.0 works okay), and Suitcase II versions earlier than 1.2.11.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: FileList+ is Bill Patterson's remake of an earlier program called FileList, which was written by another author named Erny Tontlinger. Unlike the usual Hollywood scenario, this remake is much better than the original, so make sure you obtain FileList+ and not FileList.

Since FileList+ reveals the type and creator of each file, the program is a quick way to obtain this information about every single file on your hard disks and floppies. Once you have the information, you can set the FileList+ display options to show only the file name, type, and creator, and export the data to a text file for future reference.

FileList+'s extensive documentation (over 40 pages) is generally available only in MS Word format. The documentation is usually a separate download and is not included with the program itself. On ZiffNet/Mac the manual is in file FLDOCS.SEA in the Download and Support Forum. If you need it in a format other than MS Word, contact the author directly to see if he can provide the manual in a format you can use.

The Delete Selected Files command is extremely powerful and potentially disastrous if used carelessly. But System 7 users, at least, are given a reprieve of sorts. The "deleted" files aren't actually erased, but rather simply placed in the trash, where they stay until you choose the Empty Trash command. So if you accidentally delete files with FileList+ on a System 7 Mac, you can retrieve those files by running, not walking, to the trash. Double-click it, and drag the files you'll see in the opened trash window into a folder on your hard drive or floppy.

If you only need to work with floppies, FileList+ might be overkill. Check out the Loodle floppy cataloger/labeler program discussed later in this chapter.

FileList+
Bill Patterson
(No address available)
CIS: 73720,2200
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FILELI.SEA

GradeBook

Making the grade is a snap for teachers with GradeBook, a simple but efficient gradebook organizer. The program uses a spreadsheetlike interface (rows = students, and columns = grades) for tracking individual tests, homework assignments, classwork, and so on. GradeBook supports three common grading methods: weighted averages, category averages, and total points. You enter grades as numbers (0 to 100), and the program will automatically convert the entries into letter grades. The program defaults to a conversion scheme of 100 to 90 = A, 89 to 80 = B, and so on, but you can customize it as you wish.

GradeBook lets you define categories (such as tests, homework, quizzes, and classwork) and assign each category a different weight for use in averaging the final grade. You might have tests count for twice as much as classwork, for instance. When you select a column and choose the Get Info command, the program displays a bar chart of the grade spread for an individual test or

assignment. When you select a row and choose Get Info, a window displays a summary of that particular student's grades along with the current average. You can print gradebooks and change the font used in the printouts, but the font selection is applied to the entire printout. You cannot format row or column labels in different fonts.

GradeBook will prove a useful addition to any instructor's tools of teaching torture. Look for version 2.3 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Not well behaved with the Quadra cache; does not print properly with the 7.1.1 LaserWriter driver; no manual until you register.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: You can double-click a row or column label, instead of selecting it and then choosing the Get Info command.

GradeBook
Lee Ann Rucker
1407 Shady Lane #1306
Bedford, TX 76021
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: GRADEB.CPT

INFOMaker

INFOMaker is a utility that formats database-generated data taken from PCs or from VAX, UNIVAC, and Cray mainframes, for use on the Macintosh. The program swiftly places all fields of a record on one line, with the fields separated by tabs; strips control characters and leading and/or trailing spaces; inserts information in fields with missing data; and removes unwanted data such as headers. The program lets you set parameters or toggles for all of these options, and then save the settings as scripts that you can load and apply to other documents. These scripts also tell INFOMaker what the input file looks like (how many fields, how the fields are separated, and so on).

INFOMaker's Get Info command provides information on selected input files: number of lines, number of control characters, and file size. The program also lets you merge text files, or split a large file on record boundaries or on specific characters. The documentation is fairly sparse, so unless you feel comfortable with foreign-platform database files, INFOMaker may not be for you. Make sure you obtain version 2.6 or later.

Requirements: System 4.2 or later, and at least 512k RAM.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

INFOMaker
Mike Wall
c/o Green Mountain Software
9404 Valley Lane
Huntsville, AL 35803
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: INFOMA.CPT

Loodle

Loodle is generally distributed as a floppy disk label maker, so what's it doing in the chapter on databases? Loodle is actually a pretty decent disk/file cataloger or database management tool masquerading as a printing utility. Even the program's authors have recognized this fact and now include a HyperCard stack, called LoodleList, that helps Loodle maintain an on-disk, searchable catalog.

The main Loodle program works quite simply: Start it up, and insert floppies while Loodle is the active program. As you insert the floppies, Loodle compiles a label list for each disk (including the contents of SIT and CPT archives), and then prints all the labels when you're done inserting. You can filter out invisible or System files so they do not appear on the labels.

The program supports both sheet-fed and pin-fed forms, so you can use it with either laser or dot-matrix printers. It uses a variety of forms (suppliers and addresses are listed in the documentation). Labels can include borders and graphics (PICT only). The disk name can be printed on the edge of the label so that the name is visible in the floppy slot or when the floppy is stored in a box. Although you have control over fonts and styles, Loodle uses its noodle to automatically choose the proper point size so that all the disk's contents can be printed on one label. There's no frustrating trial and error involved for you in this task.

You don't have to print labels, however. Loodle functions very well just as a disk cataloger. When you insert the floppies, you have the option of not printing labels, and instead saving the label list to a text file for use in a word processor or other program, including LoodleList, a HyperCard 2.0 stack. LoodleList imports Loodle text files and lets you view them in a databaselike environment. It's very handy for keeping an index of files archived to floppies.

Loodle was mentioned in the March 1991 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 5.2.2 or later. The program is frequently updated and well supported by its authors. Its name, by the way, has an interesting origin based on its four-letter Creator code and a dog. In the authors' own words:

> *The name is from the original signature for the program, "lwdl"—it stands for "laserwriter disk labeler" since in its original incarnation it was supposed to print labels on the LaserWriter (it now prints on all types of printers). "Loodle" also happens to be a word that for some reason drives our dog crazy and that's the real reason the program was named that.*

Requirements: Any Mac; and HyperCard 2.0 if you use LoodleList.

Limitations: Only catalogs files on floppies; no other removable media, such as Syquests or floptical, are supported, although the authors promise a future version will support such peripherals. PICT graphics only on labels.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: Avery label form #5196 (nine labels to a page) works well with Loodle.

Once you have the program's settings defined for your setup, you can keep yourself and others from inadvertently changing those settings. Select the Loodle icon and press Command-I. Click the Locked check box in the resulting Get Info window, and close the window by clicking the Close box in the upper-left corner. Your settings are now safe.

If you need to catalog hard disks instead of or in addition to floppies, check out FileList+, described earlier in this chapter. It doesn't do labels, but it's a superb disk cataloger.

Loodle
Josh and Nick Franco
1117 Kagawa Street
Pacific Palisades, CA 90272
AOL: Loodle
CIS: 72571,1010
GEnie: G.FRANCO
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: LOODLE.SIT

Pro Series FileMaker Pro Database Applications

FileMaker Pro is by far the most popular and accessible database among Mac users, and is amazingly easy to use. Database design, however, is not everyone's idea of a good time. For those people, the Pro Series of predesigned FileMaker Pro database templates is a slick way to avoid the hassles of developing your own database.

The Pro Series templates are distributed primarily through on-line services. The package you are likely to encounter contains three sample templates: Note Pad, Phone Directory, and Regional. You can obtain other templates from the author, including Contact Manager, Customers, Vendors, Inventory, and more, for between $10 and $20 each at this writing. The templates are graced with an attractive, well-implemented interface that lets you use any of FileMaker Pro's standard Find, Sort, and other commands within the current template.

The Note Pad template serves as a free-form database for storing text or graphics (MacPaint, PICT, EPS, or TIFF). The Phone Directory operates as a

Rolodex-type address book with fields for notes, on-line contacts, and so on. About three dozen Mac-related companies are already entered. The Regional template provides a wealth of information on the 50 states, with data ranging from official wildflowers and birds to cities and their telephone area codes. You can select a particular state in a list view or by clicking that state on a U.S. map. (Given the low level of geographical awareness often reported among U.S. citizens, the latter method could be about as entertaining as a game of pin the tail on the donkey.)

The Pro Series is a great way to get up and running with FileMaker Pro, especially if you're new to databases.

Requirements: Any Mac, and FileMaker Pro.

Limitations: You cannot create or modify layouts (including pop-up lists) and scripts until you register.

System 7: Compatible

Registration: $ to $$

Tips & Techniques: You can keep several Pro Series modules open at once, switching among them via the Windows menu to exchange data.

Pro Series FileMaker Pro Database Applications
Bob Davis
7250 York Avenue South, Suite 317
Edina, MN 55435-4421
AOL: BobD20
CIS: 70625,717
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: PROSER.SEA

Retriever Light

Of all the files in this chapter, Retriever Light comes the closest to being a bona fide database program. It lacks many of the amenities found in commercial database breeds such as FileMaker Pro or 4th Dimension, but it provides some basic tools that will serve you well in managing simple lists and similar data.

Retriever Light creates flat-file (nonrelational) databases within a spreadsheetlike environment where columns equal fields, and rows are the equivalent of records, as shown in Figure 8.3. A line of icon buttons just above the records list lets you perform a variety of common database tasks, such as searching, marking, and sorting. The buttons' functions are duplicated in the Retriever Light menu.

Adding fields to the list is as easy as inserting and naming a new column. You tab from field to field. Double-clicking a field opens its contents for editing. Double-clicking a column label or header hides the field for all records. Resize a field by dragging the column dividers. The program restricts you to

Figure 8.3
Simple database building in Retriever Light

File Edit Retriever

Retriever™ Light

File Name: "Real Estate Listing" Last Modified: 3/9/92

Rec	Agent	Price	Sq Ft	City	Community	Style	Address	#BR	#Bath	Notes
1	Bill	114000	2000	Wyoming	Wyoming	Split level	7000 Main	3	2.5	quiet street
•2	Bill	208000	2300	Cincinnati	Colerain	Ranch	955 Johnson	5	3	inground pool
3	Bill	127000	1750	Wyoming	Wyoming	2 story	778 Niedermann	4	3	quiet street
•4	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
•5	Dave	62000	1300	Cincinnati	Forest Park	Ranch	279 Longacre	3	1	wooded lot
•6	Dave	199000	2100	Cincinnati	Finneytown	2 Story	384 Holly tree	4	2.5	nice neighborhood
•7	Ed	395000	3000	Cincinnati	Indian Hills	2 Story	159 Thunderbird Dr.	6	3.5	Acreage
8	Ed	115000	2000	Florence	Florence	Quad-Level	45 Nightingale Rd.	3	2	finished basement
•9	Ed	58500	1200	Cincinnati	Mt. Healthy	Ranch	7941 Adams Rd.	3	1	close to shopping
•10	Jean	225000	2750	Cincinnati	Western Hills	Ranch	5490 Yancy	4	3 full, 2	horse stables
•11	Jean	152000	2200	Cincinnati	College Hill	2 story	14 Fedder	5	3	new carpeting
12	Jean	65000	1600	Norwood	Norwood	Ranch	1557 Race	3	1.5	quaint
•13	Jean	162300	1950	Cincinnati	Western Hills	2 story	1445 Vine	3	2.5	solar heat
14	Jean	69500	1500	Norwood	Norwood	Ranch	1557 Race	3	1.5	quaint
•15	Jean	100000	1950	Cincinnati	Finneytown	Split-level	1234 May	3	2.5	1 acre lot, fenced
•16	Joe	85500	1700	Cincinnati	College Hill	Ranch	10 Neff	4	2.5	owner financing
17	Joe	75000	1700	Norwood	Norwood	2 story	1008 Fleece	3	1.5	upstair apt
•18	Joe	87000	1700	Cincinnati	Finneytown	2 story	8177 Applewood	3	2.5	new kitchen
19	Joe	136800	2100	Wyoming	Wyoming	Ranch	118 Boolin	4	3.5	next to bus route
20	Penny	102000	1700	Evendale	Evendale	Tri level	1156 Neumann	3	2.5	new construction
•21	Penny	98000	1950	Cincinnati	Mt. Adams	3 story	333 Toadvine	3	2.5	great view of city.

21

Trash

text-type fields, but you can enter the current date or time as text with Date (Command-Y) or Time (Command-T) keyboard shortcuts.

You can sort the database by any field, in ascending or descending order. Just select the entire column by clicking once on the column header, and then choose the Sort command.

Marking files comes in handy for exporting or printing. You mark records for further action by double-clicking the leftmost row label. To mark several records at once, press the Mark button and select the Mark command from the pop-up menu (or just press Command-M). Enter some text in the resulting dialog, and click the OK button. Retriever Light then marks all files that contain that text in any of their fields. The Find command works much the same, but only locates records that match the text string; it does not mark them.

You can export or print either the entire database or only marked records. Retriever Light lets you export records as tab- or comma-delimited text. You can even select one record, copy it, and then paste the record into another program as tab-delimited text.

I heartily recommend this program for general, low-end use. This Retriever is no dog, but it's definitely golden and well behaved. Check it out; it might become your Mac's best friend.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: The Undo command is basically undone—it doesn't undo anything, not even an edit in a field. There is no manual, and only minimal online help. The program supports text fields only.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: You can delete several records at once by first marking them—manually or through the Mark dialog—and then choosing the Delete Record (Command-D) command.

If you crave more calories and cholesterol than Retriever Light can provide, you can order an enhanced commercial version of the program from Exodus Software at the address just below. Retriever II offers calculated and numeric fields, phone dialing, multilevel sorting, the ability to merge fields during import, and other power-user features.

Retriever Light
Exodus Software
800 Compton Road, Suite 9240
Cincinnati, OH 45231
(513) 522-0011
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: RETRIE.CPT

CHAPTER

9

Personal Information Managers

Address Book

Calendar DA

Do It All!

Easy Envelopes Plus

MacRoots

MailIt

Remember? Personal Reminder System

To Do! DA

Visual Time Manager

PERSONAL INFORMATION MANAGERS (OFTEN REFERRED TO AS PIMS) comprise a bewildering variety of programs. PIMs are an area of software that is still undergoing definition. In general, though, PIMs are organizers. They can store and organize dates, events, appointments, and addresses. The category may include simple calendars, scheduling programs, sophisticated alarm reminder systems that beep at you until you pay some attention to whatever urgent task is at hand, or little black books.

You'll find all these types of PIMs in this chapter. The one called Remember? even combines a couple of these functions (calendar and alarms) into one product. You'll find templates for various tasks that you can use with Excel, so you won't have to buy and learn some other program if you're already familiar with Excel. A couple of schedulers will keep you on time. There's even an application that tracks your family tree—you can't manage information much more personal than that.

Address Book

Almost everyone has an address book or card file of some sort where they store the addresses and phone numbers of friends and associates. HyperCard comes with an Address stack that many Mac users never outgrow. But if you *have* outgrown it, or if you just don't like HyperCard applications, Jim Leitch's Address Book is a splendid replacement, with lots of added power and context-sensitive on-line help. The program exists in two forms: a DA and an application. The application is a better deal, because the DA does not print or export records. The interface is a little "busy" for my tastes, but that's a minor criticism compared to all the power you get.

The program opens to the index or list view of all your records in the default address book file. You can maintain several address book files and switch among them, but the program defaults to a particular one when it first opens (this feature can be overridden). You click any name in the list to open that record, or add a new record to enter the view window. This view area contains several fields: name, address, information, and three phone numbers. You enter a surname first, followed by a period, a space, and then the given name (the program can flip the two names in printouts). You can also create a set of categories—Business, Pleasure, and so forth—and apply a category to a record as you enter it. This lets you scan Business contacts only, or print holiday mailing labels for just your Personal names, for example.

Address Book also lets you mark files by searching through records using a text string you enter. This feature works a lot like the Mark command in Retriever Light (see the description of this program in Chapter 8). There's also a Find command; and you can navigate to files by pressing Command-G and then a letter—Address Book goes to the first record that begins with that letter.

Address Book can dial telephone numbers (through the modem, or you can simply hold the phone receiver up to your Mac). There are controls for changing the colors of the background, text, buttons, and other elements. You can print labels, envelopes, and address books in a variety of formats and to any printer. The program even lets you enter boilerplate text in macros that you can paste into any field with Command-key shortcuts. Finally, Address Book auto-saves your records, and can be configured to create a backup of the current address book file when you quit the program.

Address Book is usually packaged in one compressed archive that includes the application, the DA, and help files. Make sure you use version 3.3.2 or later. The program was mentioned in the December 1990 issue of *MacUser*.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: The DA version does not support printing or exporting. The fields in the view window are not labeled, so you must remember what each field is for (name, address, and so on) when you are entering new records.

System 7: Compatible

Registration: $$$

Tips & Techniques: Address Book author Jim Leitch also distributes Address Book Utilities, a collection of three programs: a stack that converts the HyperCard Address stack to a text file; an application that converts text files (from the HyperCard Address stack or exported from a database program) to the Address Book format; and an application that translates files in the SideKick format to the Address Book format. These utilities are available on ZiffNet/Mac as file ADBKUT.SEA in the Download and Support Forum.

Address Book
Jim Leitch
61 Shaughnessy Blvd.
Willowdale, Ontario, Canada M2J 1H9
CIS: 70416,1532
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ADDRBK.SEA

Calendar DA

If you need to keep track of the days of your life with a program that's as unobtrusive as possible, it would be difficult to imagine a vehicle more ideal than David Oster's Calendar DA. You get a simple monthly calendar in a small floating window. Below the calendar is a text-entry area. You can enter text notes such as appointments, people to phone, or due dates, for any day. Just click the date in the monthly calendar and type the day's agenda. When the day arrives, its agenda appears to jog your memory. The standard Copy and Paste commands let you extract text for use in other applications.

To the right of the calendar is a palette of months. You just click a month name to move to that month in the calendar. Below the palette are four buttons that let you move the calendar backward or forward in one- or ten-year increments. And you thought time travel was just the stuff of science fiction! H.G. Wells would be proud.

Calendar DA has no colors, no sounds, no special effects or graphics on New Year's Eve or the Fourth of July. It's just a no-nonsense desktop calendar for your Mac. Look for version 2.1 or later.

Calendar Tools, a utility that lets you save Calendar DA files as text files and recover text from corrupted Calendar DA files, is usually packaged with the DA (you'll need to pay a separate $ registration fee if you want to keep it). Calendar DA was mentioned in the December 1990 issue of *MacUser*.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: The Options command of Calendar Tools does not work properly under System 7, because System 7 expects the Calendar DA to be installed with Font/DA Mover (as is the case with pre-System 7 Macs).

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: Mark Wall's GMS Calendar is a very attractive alternative to Calendar DA. It's very slick looking, but costs much more ($$). It's fully System 7 compatible. On ZiffNet/Mac it's available as file GMSCAL.SEA in the Download and Support Forum.

Calendar DA
David Phillip Oster
c/o Mosaic Codes
2140 Shattuck Ave. Suite 2036
Berkeley, CA 94704
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: CALEND.SIT

Do It All!

If the biblical exhortation, "Do not worry about tomorrow; tomorrow will take care of itself," is viewed with some suspicion by your bosses or handlers, you probably use up a lot of time and Post-its™ to remind yourself of upcoming chores, appointments, and meetings. You can simplify your life with a shareware organizational tool called Do It All! by J. Christopher Bell. The author wrote the program to help with his own organizational problems, and despite some eccentricities and shortcomings, it can help you, too.

Do It All! takes a real visual approach to scheduling. You can enter jobs in either the Jobs List or Schedule view. Schedule view lets you simply drag out with the mouse the time allotment for a job, as shown in Figure 9.1. The program

defines four kinds of jobs: Normal, Appointments/Events, Due, and Schedule. Normal jobs are not tied to any specific date or time period, but can be prioritized on a scale of 1 to 10. Appointments/Events are tied to one date, and you have to assign a time slot to them. Examples of this kind of job are a dentist appointment, a concert, and so on. Due jobs have two levels of priority assigned to them: one when they start, and a second level they reach gradually as their due date approaches. Schedules are recurring jobs, such as a staff meeting held every Monday from 10 a.m. to noon. When you create a Schedule job, the program automatically allots time for it in every weekly calendar. Do It All! also has enough smarts to warn you when you allot the same time slot to more than one job.

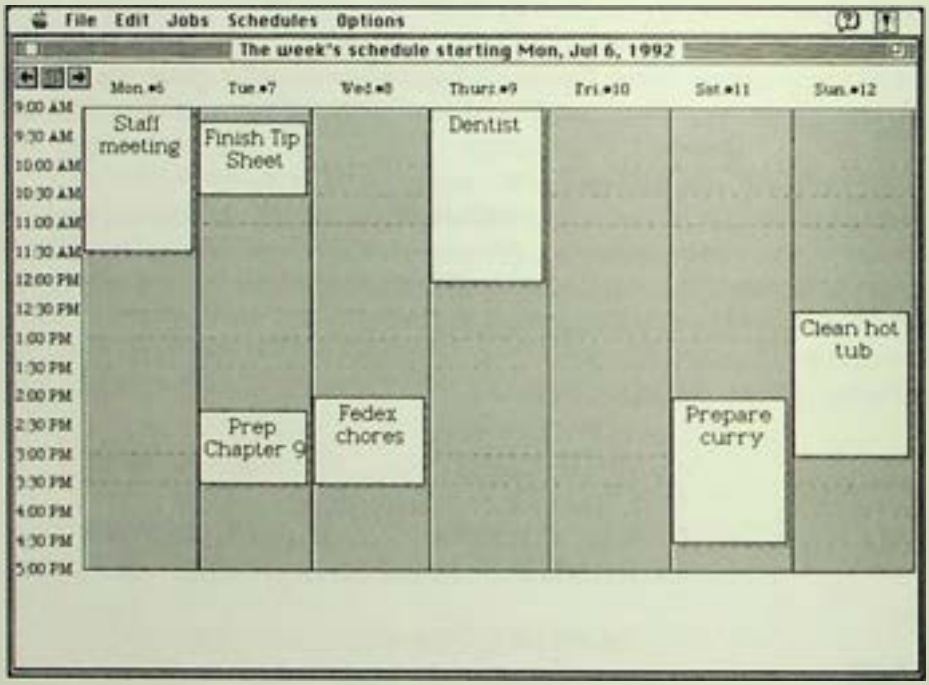


Figure 9.1
Setting up a schedule with Do It All!

You can sort jobs in the Jobs List view by date, name, or priority. Top-priority jobs appear in red (if you have a color monitor) and can also be displayed in bold or outlined text. You can configure the Schedule view so that only Monday through Friday appear. You can also specify which hours appear, so that you can limit the display to work hours only if you are using Do It All! strictly for business.

This is all pretty serious business, but some humorous sound effects, dialogs, and alerts lend a welcome touch of whimsy. For example, if you attempt to add a job with a date that's already past, the program warns that you cannot break the laws of physics.

Do It All! is a remarkable organizational tool that serves as things-to-do manager, calendar, and scheduler. It's a gem in the rough and should definitely be examined if you need to put your hours and days in order. Look for version 2.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with at least 1Mb RAM.

Limitations: The on-line help leaves a lot to be desired. It's plagued by typos and is badly arranged; perhaps the author should have scheduled some time to organize and proofread the help files.... Also, there have been some minor print problems with the LaserWriter 7.1.1 driver.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: Do It All! forces you to set the size of fonts not in points, but in minutes! The explanation given in the on-line help is unfathomable because it's so poorly written, but here's the rationale (I think): The Schedule view usually displays jobs as blocks, longer or shorter depending on the time allotted to the job. In setting the point size for these blocks, you might discover that the 24-point Helvetica that fit fine in an hour-long appointment would not fit in a 15-minute job. In other words, you'd have to engage in some trial and error to find a point size that fit in all your job blocks, no matter how long or short they were. So the author of Do It All! decided to define point size in terms of how well the text would fit into job blocks of various time allotments. For example, if you choose 15 minutes as your "point size," the program sizes the letters so they fit properly in a job block that takes up 15 minutes in the Schedule view. This approach makes a certain amount of sense, but is confusing and poorly explained; it's a serious, but not fatal, flaw in the program.

Organizing your work is not a benefit unless you are forced to look at that organization from time to time. You can do this with Do It All! under System 7 by placing the program (or an alias of it) in the Startup Items folder. Every time you start your Mac, your default Jobs List will appear.

You cannot delete a job in the Schedule window, but must go to the Jobs List window, highlight the job you want to delete, and cut it (Command-X).

Try creating a generic schedule: Open a new Jobs List and select the Suppress Dates option in the Options for Do It All! dialog. Then print the Schedule view, and you can write in jobs and schedules the old fashioned way—with a pen.

Printed schedules look much better if you print them in landscape orientation. Choose the Page Setup command (File menu) to switch to this orientation.

Do It All!
J. Christopher Bell
1830 Austin Ave.
Los Altos, CA 94020
Internet: j.christopher.bell@dartmouth.edu
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: DOITAL.CPT

Easy Envelopes Plus

"Plus what?" you might want to know. At first glance, Easy Envelopes Plus looks like a simple DA utility that prints out envelopes, but the plus is the program's ability to double as a Rolodex-type database. In fact, it's as much a database as a printing utility.

You start Easy Envelopes Plus by choosing it from the Apple menu. You're greeted by a simple, clear interface that relies largely on easy-to-use icon buttons that let you get the work done. This main window lets you add, edit, or delete addresses. One address is displayed at a time, along with a Notes field where you can store information such as fax or voice telephone numbers, birthdays, and contact names. You can recall and edit entries at any time. Return addresses can include graphics. You can save as many as five return addresses—one for business mail, one for personal items, and so on. The Search text box lets you enter text to search for; searches are not case sensitive. An Import button lets you import data from the commercial QuickDEX program or export data as text.

The DA's printing features abound. There's an option that swaps the return and mailing address, letting you print a self-addressed envelope. The program can print U.S. Postal Service bar codes on your envelopes, which speeds up the mail but slows down printing. You can also store up to five messages that can be printed in the lower-left corner of the envelope ("Handle With Care" or "Dated Material—Please Expedite," for example). You can set the font, style, and point size, but such settings are global.

Easy Envelopes Plus was written by one of the Mac shareware community's most prolific and popular authors, Andrew Welch. You will spot his name several times in this book, and will want to give anything done by him serious consideration. Easy Envelopes Plus is no exception. Just keep in mind that this DA is primarily for personal, low-volume use. Look for version 2.52 or later for all of the features described here.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: No way to do bulk mailings or print out a range of addresses; 32k limit in Notes field for each address entry.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: To install Easy Envelopes Plus under System 7, drag the suitcase icon onto the unopened System folder and click OK when prompted.

Easy Envelopes Plus
Andrew Welch
29 Grey Rocks Road
Wilton, CT 06897
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: EASENV.CPT

MacRoots

The television miniseries "Roots" stimulated a strong interest in genealogy that sent Americans scurrying to family Bibles and county archives to leaf out their family trees. If your family's black sheep and skeletons in the closet haven't yet cooled your jets and your curiosity, MacRoots is a genealogical database program for the Mac that makes tracking family ties a snap.

You start a family tree in MacRoots by entering the names of individual family members. The program can handle 30 generations and up to 999 individuals. Each entry has areas for surname and given names, and then fields for date of birth and death, arranged in columns. The MacRoots manual has one of the funniest lines I've ever seen in any documentation. Regarding your own entry, the manual counsels: "Unless you are already dead, you will only enter into the first (birth) column."

Once you've entered all the individuals you can think of (you can add more later if a long-lost relative shows up), you start defining their relationships. You can join couples in matrimony faster than any Las Vegas justice of the peace. You must also link parents and their children together, by selecting the child's record first and then choosing the Parents command. This presents you with a list of possible candidates, females in the left column and males in the right. Select your parents and click the Join button. The manual delightfully deadpans: "If you have qualms about doing this or you think you made a mistake, select Cancel." Oh, if only it were that simple....

MacRoots displays or prints all this data in several chart formats: descendant, family group, ancestor, and pedigree. (This last one looks like what most of us think of as a family tree.) There are also a simple list view, sorted by surname or record number, and a search capability. You can mark or add notes to any record.

MacRoots will never replace Salt Lake City as a genealogical research center, but it's easy to find and it works. The program was examined in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 5.7 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac, with at least 1Mb RAM.

Limitations: Incompatible with Quadra cache and 400k floppies.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$$

Tips & Techniques: Back up, *back up*, ***back up!*** MacRoots files, like many databases and spreadsheets, can go south more frequently than other types of files.

Each MacRoots database is composed of five files: your base file, and four files with your base file's name plus a three-letter suffix. If you move your database around, make sure you move all five files. The easiest way to ensure that this happens is to save your database to its own separate folder

when you first set it up. Then you can just move or back up the folder, and be certain that you have all the necessary files.

MacRoots
Bruce Muckala
c/o Itasca Softworks
Rt. 1, Box 408
Bagley, MN 56621
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MACROO.SIT

MailIt

If you already have Microsoft Excel, MailIt is a dandy macro/worksheet set that makes it relatively easy to maintain an address book and print a large variety of labels using selected addresses.

Using MailIt is straightforward. You open the Mail Out macro and the Sample Addresses template. Then customize the template with your own addresses. The template's field structure expects input for Company, Phone, First Name, Last Name, Street, City, State, and Zip. The Company field might not be too helpful for personal use, but you can leave it empty without causing any problems.

To print labels, select the records for which you want to print labels (to select discontiguous addresses hold down the Control key). Then choose one of the printing macros you'll find appended to the Macros menu: Fancy Mailing Labels, Quick Mailing Labels, or Envelopes. Each macro clearly and carefully leads you through the process of printing labels or envelopes to PostScript or QuickDraw printers. You'll be prompted for a return address, point size, font, and other elements of the label. The macro then creates a new worksheet with the selected addresses laid out, with the proper formatting and spacing. Just choose the Print command once the macro has run its course, and you'll soon be slapping labels on envelopes, packages, bulk mailings, or whatever.

This Excel macro utility works like a charm. Look for version 1.2.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac, and Excel 3.0 or later.

Limitations: You must use the supplied address sheet (customized with your own addresses, of course), and this restricts you to the sheet's layout and field structure; only Avery labels are explicitly supported.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: If you are keen on pushing Excel to its limits, the best source of Excel macros, templates, and other Excel-based applications is Heizer Software. To get a catalog, call or write

Heizer Software
P.O. Box 232019
Pleasant Hill, CA 94523
(800) 888-7667
Fax: (510) 943-6882

MailIt supports the following Avery labels: 5160–5164, 5260–5262, 5267, 5660, and 5662–5663. It also supports two envelope sizes: 4 by 9½-inches, and 3½ by 6½-inches.

MailIt
Terry Cipher
3811 Douglas Dr.
Garland, TX 75041
CIS: 73750,207
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MAILIT.SIT

Remember? Personal Reminder System

In the words of its author, Dave Warker, Remember? is the "Personal Reminder System for mnemonic misfortunates, perennial procrastinators, alliterative authors, and just plain folks." Whatever categories you might fall into (I manage to fit all four!), Remember? is a glorious combination of a simple calendar and a scheduler, in one very memorable package.

The Remember? system consists of two main elements: a DA and a system extension. The extension lets you create reminders that warn you of deadlines and upcoming events with a pop-up alert or sound. The DA portion is where the program all comes together, however. The DA's main window contains a calendar and an Occasions section. The calendar can be set to display an entire month, a week, or even just one day. Controls on either side of the calendar let you move forward or backward in weekly, monthly, or yearly increments. The Occasions area displays important or scheduled events for the current day, week, or month, depending on what you're viewing in the calendar.

To set an occasion, you must first create the Occasions file where events are stored. This file and any other Occasions files you create (you can have more than one) reside in the Occasions folder, which Remember? expects to find in the System folder. If the program can't find the Occasions folder, you are prompted to find it and specify its location; the program will then look for the folder there in the future. Then you simply double-click a date. The Occasions Setup window appears. Just type in a descriptive name, make adjustments to the date or time, and select an occasion type (Personal, Birthdays, Business, and so on; you can define your own categories if the default ones don't suit you).

Remember? offers some pretty sophisticated control over dates and scheduling. The occasion can be a one-time-only or a recurring event. For example, you can define a meeting that occurs on the first, last, or second Wednesday of every month if that's what you need to do. You can configure the Remember? extension through the DA so that it warns you about upcoming events at some predetermined time in advance—a week, a day, or whatever. Occasions are indicated in the calendar section of the DA by red or styled dates. To find out what's special about the date, just click it, and the Occasions text area below the calendar scrolls to the descriptive notes or title you originally assigned to the event.

The Preferences command lets you customize many aspects of the DA, including the text and colors used in various parts of the program. You can print your calendar and occasions list at any time.

The program also supports a variant of the normal occasion called a To Do item. If you choose this command from the Remember menu, an Occasions Setup window pops up, with the date set to the current date and the Persistent check box already checked for you. This means that the To Do item or task will reappear every day until you indicate that you have done it. Nag, nag, nag.

The Remember? Personal Reminder System is a great utility for better organizing your time. It's worth far more than what the author asks for. Be sure to obtain version 2.3.2 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac; System 6.0X or later.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: If you suffer from extensionphobia or INIT conflicts, you can still use Remember? as a calendar and to-do list without installing the extension. Not using the extension cripples the alert features of Remember?, but the DA still functions.

Remember? Personal Reminder System
Dave Warker
P.O. Box 273
Egg Harbor, NJ 08215-0273
AOL: DaveWarker
CIS: 70406,626 (infrequently)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: REMDA.SEA

To Do! DA

The To Do! DA is a smart little information manager that keeps track of your chores, appointments, and meetings in a simple, elegant environment. It's another product from the indefatigable Andrew Welch, author of a number of extremely popular shareware tools mentioned in this book and available through on-line services.

To Do! lets you organize your days and ways on the fly, without having to remember any complicated commands or procedures. You first create some general topics, such as Meetings, Doctor Appointments, and Household Chores, in a scrolling list on the left of the screen. Then you enter events or things to do within those topics in a scrolling list on the right, as shown in Figure 9.2. The program sorts events and topics alphabetically on the left; events are grouped and sorted by priority in the scrolling list on the right. When you switch to a different topic, only that topic's items appear. Double-click an item in the Things To Do list, and a window/dialog appears containing the event's name and a notes field where you can enter additional notes or assign a priority to the event.

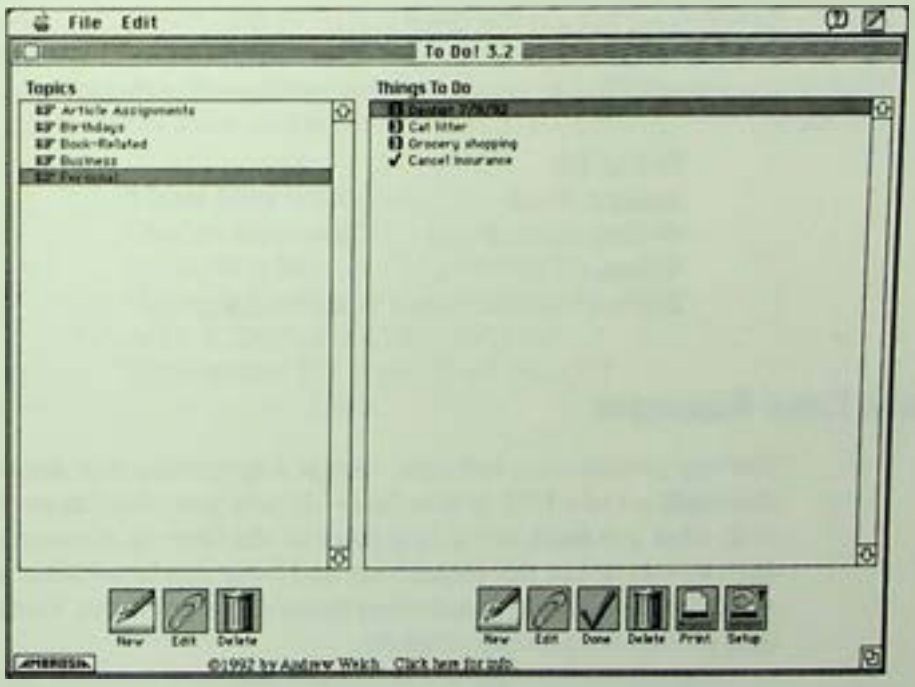


Figure 9.2
Organize your schedule with To Do!

If you need to print your To Do! topics and events, you have several options. The DA can print all topics and events, or only events in the selected topic, or only the selected event. You also have control over the font used, and whether event notes or priority numbers print.

To Do! isn't jam-packed with features, which is actually one of its strongest points. It's not a "busy" program, so you can get done the work that needs to be done, instead of struggling to learn and use a piece of software. Look for version 3.2 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Version 3.1 is incompatible with the Quadra cache; version 3.2 fixes that problem.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: If you want to close a Thing To Do window/dialog while the insertion point is in the notes field, don't press Return; it just inserts a carriage return. Press Enter instead.

Hold down the Option key as you click "Ambrosia" at the bottom of the main To Do! window, and you'll see a special screen.

If your business scheduling needs are more important than your personal ones, or if you'd like to check out a more sophisticated program, consider the Do It All! application discussed earlier in this chapter. If you want a scheduler that will actually remind you of events, automatically, explore the Remember? DA and extension, also mentioned in this chapter.

To Do! DA
Andrew Welch
29 Grey Rocks Road
Wilton, CT 06897
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: TODO.SEA

Visual Time Manager

You may already have software, such as a spreadsheet or database program, that could act as a PIM or scheduler—if only you could tame the application to do what you want, and if only you had the time. Shareware authors haven't been slow to notice this conundrum and have produced some excellent templates for use with Excel and other commercial products. Visual Time Manager (VTM) is a superior example.

Visual Time Manager is a worksheet and macro set for Excel users that creates graphlike weekly schedules. VTM makes it easy to size up a week at a glance, assign tasks to time slots, spot your busiest and least busy days, and so on. The top part of the VTM worksheet is the weekly schedule. Each column

is a day of the week, and the rows represent the hours of the day. You assign a time block to a task by dragging down one column for as many rows (hours) as the task requires. Then press Command-Option-N, and the selected hours are filled with a gray shading and you can type in a short name for the task.

The lower part of the worksheet displays some important statistics for the current week, such as the percentage of each day open for assignments, and the percentage that is already scheduled. The worksheet's macro keyboard shortcuts are also listed here.

Visual Time Manager is simple, but quite handy. If you already do much of your work in Excel anyway, this package might be the ideal way to keep track of your weekly agenda.

Requirements: Any Mac, and Microsoft Excel 3.0 or later.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: To use VTM properly, you must first load the Excel VTM macro sheet. You'll be prompted for a file. Open the VTM Template, and once it's open, use the Run command to run the New_Week macro. This inserts the current week's dates in the column headers. Now save the template under a different name and start scheduling.

When you first use VTM, fill in any established, recurring weekly tasks or events in the template, and save this customized version of the VTM Template to disk. Base all your future weekly schedules on this personalized Template rather than on the generic copy you receive with the program.

Visual Time Manager
Charles DeShazer
551 E. 46th St.
Chicago, IL 60653
AOL: CDeShazer CIS: 76136,1123
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: VISUAL.CPT

CHAPTER

10

Number Crunchers

Amortize
BaseToBase DA
BiPlane
Home Budget Stack
Household Shopper
HyperBucks
Mariner
Time Logger DA

MOST OF US, LIKE LEWIS CARROLL'S ALICE, CAN'T EVEN MAKE IT through the multiplication table without a stammer or a stumble. Fortunately, computers—as Lewis Carroll himself did—love numbers and manage them with exceptional proficiency. Although it might sound more like jabberwocky to you and me, computers speak in numberese with ease. The majority of the number-crunching programs available as shareware for the Mac are aimed at a very specific audience—namely, the rarefied environs of the scientific community—and present little or no usefulness to most of us. There are some notable exceptions, however, and you'll find the best of them described in this chapter.

The programs examined here range from replacements for the Calculator DA that Apple ships with all Macs, to full-fledged spreadsheet programs. The calculator clones add a splash of color or have a feature or two over Apple's program. The two spreadsheet programs (BiPlane and Mariner) each have their respective strengths and weaknesses. They both benefit from a simplified approach to spreadsheets that may overcome your hesitations toward using this kind of financial tool. You'll also find a HyperCard stack that helps you establish and keep to a sensible household budget. There's a complete checkbook system, an amortization schedule generator, and a slick program to simplify your weekly shopping and save you some money, as well. And if you want to make money in addition to saving it, there's even a utility that tracks the time you spend on jobs so you can bill your clients fairly and easily.

In short, this chapter is a sort of numbers game. If you're facing (or putting off) a close encounter with the chill ciphers of mathematical distraction, something in this chapter is likely to interest you. Start counting.

Amortize

Amortize is a simple, one-trick pony of a program: It generates amortization (loan payment) schedules based on information you supply. Each time you start Amortize, it displays a dialog box in which you must enter the payment period (monthly, quarterly, semiannually, or yearly), the number of payments or the amount of each payment, the date you took out the loan, the interest rate, and the amount of the loan. When you click OK, Amortize does some quick ciphering and spits out an amortization schedule on the screen. You can print it out or save it to disk as a text file.

Reading through a loan schedule like this (especially for a mortgage) can be a humbling experience; but if you're up to the challenge or just a masochist, Amortize will lay bare the cold, hard, financial reality of what you've got yourself into. Look for version 2.1 or later.

Requirements: None

Limitations: Incompatible with the Quadra; you can't resize the schedule window on a large monitor.

System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $$

Amortize
Jerry Welsh
608 Northampton Plaza
600 Airport Rd.
Chapel Hill, NC 27514
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: AMORTI.CPT

BaseToBase DA

Getting from base to base isn't the goal of just baseball players. You may find you need to do it in a mathematical sense, by converting numbers from one base (or numbering system) to another. For example, PostScript programmers may want to know a text character's octal code in addition to its decimal number. The BaseToBase DA hits a grand-slam homer if you need to make these kinds of conversions.

In addition to being a base converter, BaseToBase is an RPN (Reverse Polish Notation) calculator. This means you start by entering the numbers you want to calculate, and then you perform the mathematical operation. For example, to add 8 and 4, you would enter, in this order,

```
8
Enter
4
+
```

The result (12) would then be displayed.

RPN calculators can be a puzzling way for most people to make 2 + 2 = 4, so if all you need is basic calculator functions, you might want to stick with the calculator that ships with the Macintosh operating system. But BaseToBase is the simplest way to work with numbers in different bases, and works just fine as a simple converter. It supports the binary (2), octal (8), decimal (10), and hexadecimal (16) bases, and lets you add, subtract, divide, and multiply in these bases. You can enter numbers through the keyboard, by clicking buttons on the DA itself, or by pasting in the numbers. BaseToBase is unique in that it lets you edit numbers after you type them in (but before you press Enter). (With most Mac calculators, once you've typed those numbers they're written in stone, and you have to clear the register and type them again if you made a mistake.)

BaseToBase was discussed in the October 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Make sure you get version 1.0; an earlier version (with no version number) lurks out there, but it's not reliable.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: You can know whether or not you have version 1.0 by looking in the entry box when you first start BaseToBase. It should specifically state that you are using version 1.0. The non-numbered version doesn't display this message.

If you feel comfortable with RPN calculators, but want something a little meatier than BaseToBase, look at the RPN Calc DA, by Jonathan Hess. This is more of a full-fledged calculator, but can be a real bear for the uninitiated to use. It's available as shareware file RPNCAL.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum, and is System 7 compatible.

If all you want is a snazzy replacement for the Apple Calculator, the freeware DA Calculator II by Joe Cicinelli may sate your appetite for snazz. This one sports some nice color and adds trigonometric functions, hexadecimal to decimal (and vice versa) conversion, and more. It's available as file CALCII.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

Jim Mahoney's Number Crunch shareware DA (version 1.41 or later) is aimed at hard-core scientific types. Number Crunch is unique among most calculators in that it parses and computes any algebraic expressions you enter—it doesn't just apply mathematical operations to entered numbers. Number Crunch also graphs functions. Mathematical lightweights should steer clear. Number Crunch is available in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum as file NUMCRU.CPT.

Also, check out Pica Calculator by Jim Lewis, a calculator for desktop publishers that is discussed in Chapter 6.

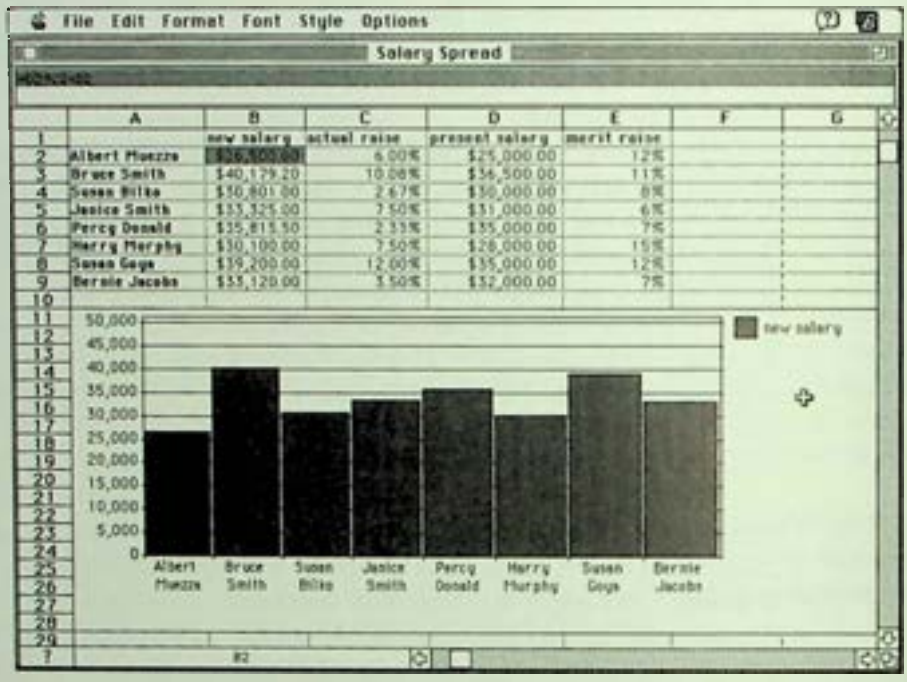
BaseToBase DA
Remy Malan
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: BASETO.BIN

BiPlane

BiPlane, despite its name, isn't a quaint, period-piece version of the popular Glider game (see Chapter 4). It's a straightforward spreadsheet program especially for people who view spreadsheets with a certain amount of trepidation. It has a simple, clean interface (as shown in Figure 10.1) that is a lot less demanding than the icon- and button-laden command bars found in most commercial spreadsheet programs. When you open the program you'll see a sparse column-and-row grid, a typical spreadsheet entry area or bar,

and some menus. This lack of clutter makes it a lot easier for spreadsheet tyros and mavens alike to get some serious number crunching done.

Figure 10.1
Flying high with the BiPlane spreadsheet program



BiPlane offers eight basic chart types for plotting data, and lets you use color as well as the usual Macintosh patterns in your charts. You can choose from the basic eight System colors: black, white, red, green, blue, cyan, magenta, and yellow. You can't select charts and drag them around, or modify their labels and legends; but you can copy charts in PICT format to the Clipboard and then paste them into other applications. The program offers no macro or drawing tools. There are 102 trigonometric, financial, and mathematical functions available.

The shareware version doesn't come with a manual, so you'll have to fly solo with the program until you upgrade to the full user version. There is, however, a list of the functions and their syntax. If you do upgrade, you'll receive a manual with 200+ pages, an on-line help module, and a DA version to complement the application. (The DA is a somewhat pared-down version suitable for small worksheets.)

It's been quipped more than once that BiPlane proves you don't need Wingz to fly or Excel to soar. If spreadsheets are, generally speaking, a puzzle to you, BiPlane will be a welcome surprise. The program was discussed in the December 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 2.05 or later.

Requirements: 1Mb RAM
Limitations: Version 2.05 is incompatible with the Quadra.
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $$$$
Tips & Techniques: If even BiPlane sounds like it might worsen your fear of spreadsheet flying, take to the seven seas, instead—check out Mariner, another shareware spreadsheet alternative discussed later in this chapter. Mariner has an even friendlier face and generally better graphics capabilities than BiPlane. (There's no color support, though.)

BiPlane
Alan Porter
c/o Night Diamonds Software
P.O. Box 1608
Huntington Beach, CA 92647
AOL: BIPLANE
CIS: 76244,640
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: BIPLAN.SEA

Home Budget Stack

Frivolously spending your money isn't quite as much fun once a program has told you exactly how much you have to spend—it sort of takes the wind out of your moneybag. In that respect, Home Budget, a HyperCard-based personal finance program, is a real party-pooper.

Home Budget is a simple but practical tool for organizing and controlling your household income and expenses. The stack opens to a window divided into two main areas: the Income List and the Unavoidable Expenses List. There is also a Day-to-Day Expenses List (Food, for example) that you enter by clicking the down-arrow button. Each List contains categories (Main Business Income, Rent, Insurance, and so on). You simply enter the totals for each month and then click the Total Income and Total Expenses buttons, and Home Budget cruelly calculates how much money you have left for the month. There are context-sensitive help, easy navigation from month to month, and summary reports in this generally well designed stack.

Home Budget doesn't track checks or single transactions of any kind, which means you'll still have to refer to your checkbook, credit card statements, and invoices. But the program's very simplicity will make it less intimidating for the casual user than a typical budget or financial software package, so it's worth a look-see.

Requirements: Any Mac, and HyperCard.

Limitations: Editing the names of the income/expenses categories will make the stack inoperable, because the category names are used in the HyperTalk scripts that control the stack.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: If you can't cozy up to HyperCard-based applications or find Home Budget's simplicity simpleminded, take a look at Finance by Thomas DiPiero. This shareware personal finance program offers a feature set similar to Home Budget's, but in a lackluster interface only an accountant could love. Finance suffers from several limitations. It can display only 20 fonts in its Font menu (for use in printed reports). And you can establish only eight categories of transactions. Also, it's incompatible with the Quadra. Despite these flaws, Finance is fairly popular, and it does keep track of checks and ATM transactions, in addition to maintaining a budget. You can find Finance on ZiffNet/Mac as file FINANC.CPT in the Download and Support Forum. Look for at least version 2.0.

Home Budget Stack
Jon C. Koerber
c/o Tremendous Software
Attn: Home Budget
200 Saluda River Road #21
Columbia, SC 29210
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: BUDGET.CPT

Household Shopper

Following the consumer ethic of "Shop 'til you drop!" can be a bit tiresome and unfulfilling, even if you have the money to burn. If you'd like to cut back on those spending binges or on spending in general, you won't find a better helpmate than Household Shopper, a splendid piece of shareware penny-pinching magic.

Household Shopper lets you shop the right way: from a list, and far from the influence of advertising glitz and seductive packaging. The program presents you with a list of grocery items arranged by categories (Vegetables, Canned Goods, and Dairy, for example). You simply check off items and quantities in this main list and then print a hard copy of the selections you can take with you to the store. You can even tell the program you have a coupon for a certain item, and the printed list displays a special symbol next to the item name as a reminder. Keep to the list (no impulse shopping, please!), and your weekly expenses will go down.

The list stores as many as 2,000 items. Household Shopper's supplied main list has items and categories ready for use, but you can customize the list to suit your own tastes and favorite brands. Each item entry has six fields: name, brand, quantity, cost, size, and location. You can sort your list by these fields. The program also lets you search for items with a Find command.

Household Shopper's interface is sharp (see Figure 10.2) and a pleasure to work in. The program has been updated frequently, and you should look for version 2.2 or later.

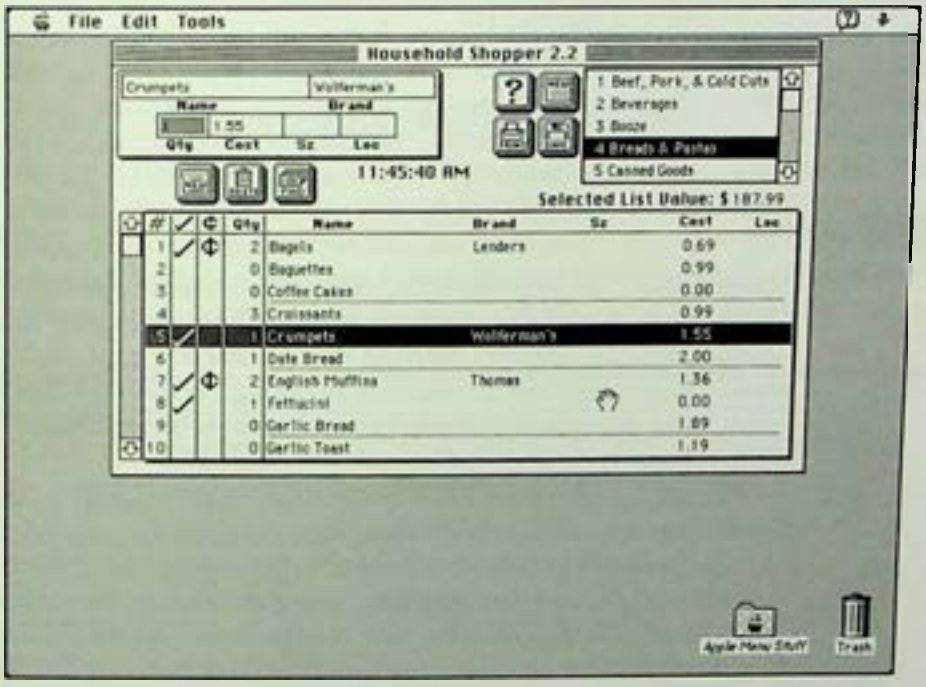


Figure 10.2
Traversing the supermarket aisles in Household Shopper

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Can be quirky on the Quadra; for optimal use the program requires a considerable amount of initial input on your part.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Keep the cash register tape you get at the grocery store and use it to update the price field for items in your main Household Shopper data list.

Household Shopper is set up specifically for grocery shopping, but there's no reason you can't use it for other types of stores. You might want to have various shopping lists: one for groceries, one for the drugstore, one for the discount warehouse, and one, of course, for the computer store.

If you are using Household Shopper under MultiFinder or System 7, make sure the memory allotment is set to about 1Mb for the best performance. To change the program's memory allotment, select its icon, press Command-I, and then enter 1000 in the memory box in the lower-right corner of the window. Then, close the window by clicking the Close Box on the left side of the window title bar.

Household Shopper
Charles R. Vass
5416 Galley Court
Fairfax, VA 22032-3305
AOL: CharlesV14
CIS: 73057,344
GEnie: C.Vass
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: HSHOPP.CPT

HyperBucks

HyperBucks is an admirable HyperCard-based personal financial manager. When you first open this stack, you personalize it with your address, phone number, account numbers, starting check numbers, and opening account balances. The program can handle one checking and two savings accounts. The initial setup procedure also forces you to set up budget categories (Insurance, Entertainment, Postage, and so on).

Once set up, the stack will track checks, reconcile bank statements and checkbooks, handle automatic debits such as monthly bank charges, and print checks (for this you need to order special laser or continuous-form checks from Capital Software, listed later). The program exports data to text files that can be used in a spreadsheet. It also prints out a variety of reports: expense and income summaries, tax-deductible expenses, credit card balances, and a profit and loss statement.

Quicken it isn't, but HyperBucks is still an attractive piece of HyperCard programming that will help keep your checks and balances fully accountable.

Requirements: Any Mac with at least a 12-inch screen; HyperCard.

Limitations: Won't work on compact Macs (SE, Mac Plus, Mac Classic) or PowerBooks.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

HyperBucks
Capital Software
49 Valley View Rd.
Watsonville, CA 95076
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: HBUCKS.CPT

Mariner

Using a commercial spreadsheet program the first time can generate feelings much like Columbus must have had when he set sail over a route he didn't even know for certain would get him where he wanted to go. He just guessed—and that's what many people do with the major-league spreadsheets. Programs such as Excel and 1-2-3 are so feature-rich that beginners may be overwhelmed by the choices. The shareware spreadsheet called Mariner can prove a good, unintimidating alternative that guarantees smooth sailing and lets you hoist those (spread)sheets with confidence.

Mariner, like the BiPlane spreadsheet program discussed earlier in this chapter, is an ideal option for first-time spreadsheet users or anyone who doesn't want the complexity and steep learning curve of an intricate commercial program. That doesn't mean Mariner is a lightweight, however. The feature set addresses most basic spreadsheet functions. You can divide each window into four scrollable panes. Graphics, charts, and text labels can be mixed on a worksheet. The program supports variable row and column size, individual cell formatting, tear-off palettes and menus, multiple levels of undo, and a command bar à la Excel 4.0. And the interface is slick (see Figure 10.3)—a cut above what you'll find in BiPlane, although BiPlane is the more powerful of the two programs.

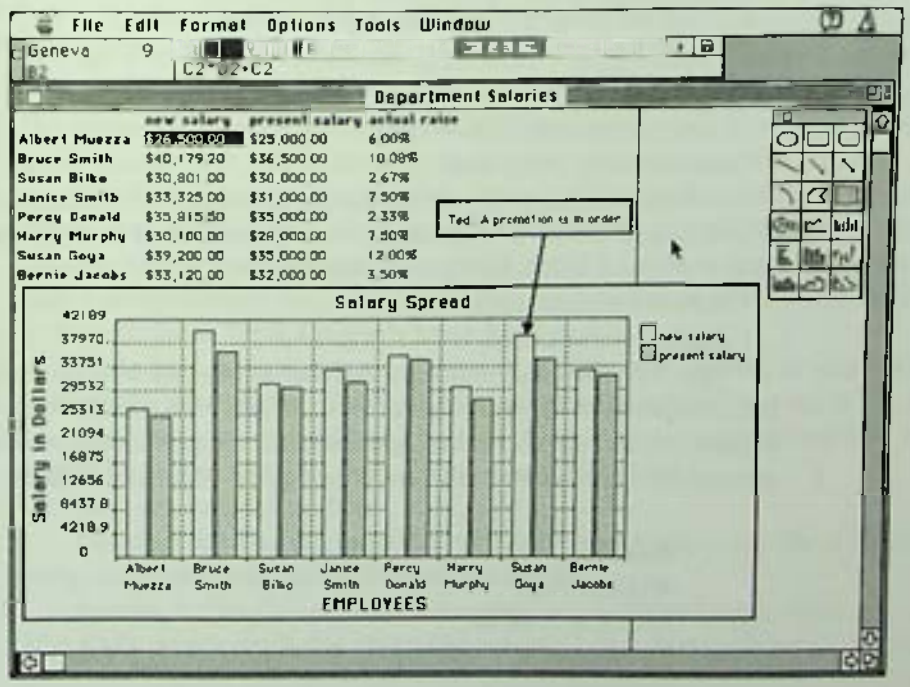


Figure 10.3
Full-blown spreadsheets with Mariner

You'll find nine chart types from which to choose; charts are hot-linked to data so that changes in worksheet cells are automatically reflected in charts. Several drawing tools (oval, rectangles, line, and arrows), along with fill patterns, can be used anywhere on the worksheet. Data can be exported/imported as ASCII text. You can paste in any of Mariner's 66 functions by selecting the desired function from a list by category (math, trigonometric, financial, time, logical, worksheet, and statistical) under the Function menu. If the function requires arguments, the insertion point will appear in parentheses after the function itself, and you simply type in the arguments.

Before obtaining Mariner, be aware that several features are missing: linked spreadsheets, macros, string functions, 3-D charts, color, and System 7 events (Mariner is, however, compatible with System 7). Despite the missing features, Mariner can be a useful tool. It's fast and is still being supported and developed by its author, who has high hopes for the program. In his own words:

> *I purchased my Mac Plus in 1987 to help me organize my investments... Mariner was started in late 1988 using code I developed for a chart and graph DA as the starting point. By January 1990 I had a working model of the program (no graphics). I worked on the graphics for a year and then started adding features (charts, sorting, interface, etc.) and rewriting much of the original code for speed improvements. I intend to refine the program to compete with any spreadsheet! Mariner already has the start of a macro language and file linking built into it. The name Mariner relates to my father's work with computers in the early days of the space program and our passion for sailboats.*

Look for version 1.2d or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: The program flounders and sinks (stops running) 28 days after you first launch it. You receive the unprotected version only when you have registered and paid the shareware fee.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$$

Tips & Techniques: Although Mariner offers only nine chart formats, you can combine charts and overlay them (for example, a financial over a line chart) to create hybrids. You can turn off specific chart elements, such as labels, and thus prevent one chart's features from covering text or numbers in the other.

Mariner
William Paar
1903 Fox Trail Dr.
La Grange, KY 40031
CIS: 71410,2403
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MARINE.CPT

Time Logger DA

Time is money, especially if you bill by the hour. Indeed, if you use your Mac to generate income, you've probably looked for a reliable way to keep track of the time spent on individual jobs so you can accurately bill your clients. Though numerous commercial products do this, the Time Logger DA, by CompuServe MAUG sysop Loftus E. Becker, Jr., is a great shareware alternative.

Time Logger works quite simply. When you begin a job for a client—laying out a newsletter, for example—you first open the Time Logger DA. It prompts you for a log file (a default Logger File is created in the System folder the first time you use the DA) and a client name, and then immediately closes. It happens so abruptly that you might think the DA has crashed. Not so. As soon as you finish the newsletter job, you launch the DA again, select the same log file, and close it. Time Logger writes eight bits of information about the finished job to that log file: client name, client code, comments, date work started, time work started, time work stopped, number of minutes you've worked, and the billing charge (calculated by multiplying the time spent on the job by the hourly rate you enter elsewhere in the program). A typical line in a Time Logger report looks like this:

```
Matrix Journal  BUSINESS  September Issue  8/5/1991  04:26  04:46  20  50.00
```

The eight information fields are tab delimited so you can easily import the log file into a database or spreadsheet for invoicing and accounting purposes. If you need to answer the phone or go to another room, or whatever, and don't want to charge a client for the time, the DA supports a pause mode that puts the current job and the clock on hold. Time Logger also lets you enter a minimum charge that will be used no matter how little time is spent on a job.

The DA comes with a System extension (INIT) that makes Time Logger run automatically every time you start or shut down your Mac or switch applications. Those features can be useful, if the INIT runs with your Mac (see System 7 compatibility section just below), but you do not need to use the INIT to benefit from Time Logger's basic functions.

Time Logger might seem confusing at first—due, in part, to some poorly written documentation. But using the program is actually as easy as sin, and soon becomes second nature. Think of it as just punching in and out on a DA version of a time clock. Look for version 2.11 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: The documentation could stand a major rewrite; it makes the program seem more difficult than it really is.

System 7: The DA portion is compatible; the Time Logger INIT is not. The INIT won't crash the Mac; it just doesn't do anything, because it expects the Time Logger DA to be installed with Font/DA Mover, which is not the case in System 7.

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Time Logger usually keeps a default log called Logger File in the System folder, and writes information about each task to this file. That means records for several clients are mixed in the same log. If you don't want to have to sort them out, you can create a separate log for each client or job. Then you simply have to remember to open the correct log file for the current task.

If you don't want to keep the default Logger File in the System folder, click the Change Defaults button and enter the full path name of the Logger File you want to use as the default, with colons separating each part of the path. For example, if you have an external hard drive named Drive2 and want to store the default Logger File there in a folder called Billing, the full path name would be Drive2:Billing:Logger File.

Time Logger DA
Loftus E. Becker, Jr.
University of Connecticut
65 Elizabeth St.
Hartford, CT 06105
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: TIMELO.CPT

System 7 Add-ons

System Enhancements

General Utilities

Security and Antiviral Tools

PART

5

System Programs

CHAPTER

11

System 7 Add-ons

INITs and cdevs and FKEYs, Oh My!
About ZiffNet/Mac Exclusives
AKA
Alias Director
Alias Stylist
AppDisk
AppleEase
Applicon
BalloonPrinter
Basura
CacheOut
CLAM
CommentKeeper
Dropple Menu
DTPrinter
Extensions Manager
Find Pro II
Finder Sets
FinderToFront
Folder Icon Maker
Helium
HideAlways
INITLoader
JustClick
MacUser's Alias Assassin
MenuChoice
MODE32
NoBalloonMenu
Nom de Plume
Popcorn
Print2Pict
ProSwitch
System 7 Pack
Texx
TrashAlias
Trash Chute
WindowWizard
ZMakeAlias

ONCE SYSTEM 7 HIT THE SILICON CIRCUITS, A WHOLE FLURRY OF SHAREware programs designed especially for System 7 began to appear—games, business software, and a variety of other program types. This chapter takes a long look at programs that are not just exclusive to System 7, but also change the way System 7 works. Many of them deal with new concepts System 7 has introduced to Mac users, such as aliases, and the new, more powerful Apple menu where almost anything goes. You'll find alias, trash, and extension managers. There are add-ons for QuickTime, the Chooser, and more.

Many of the programs in this chapter and the next one fall into the category of so-called System extensions. This kind of program can cause problems, so let's start with some background material to keep you out of trouble.

INITs and cdevs and FKEYs, Oh My!

Extensions—that's Apple-talk for what used to be called INITs and cdevs (control panels). They're all start-up documents that are loaded into memory and then change or "patch" the System file whenever you start your Mac. The whole extension-loading process during start-up is reflected in the small icons that appear at the bottom of your screen. Those icons indicate which extension is currently loading. The extensions are almost always located somewhere in the System folder itself.

Why would you want to change something that Mac fanatics staunchly defend as the best operating system in the world? Well, because best can be bester. If that offends your delicate sense of syntax, here's another way to look at it: The Mac operating system *is* the best operating system in the world precisely because it is so open to change, through add-ons, customizers, and extensions. This openness lets programmers fine-tune or tweak that best-of-all operating systems so that it works the way each user wants it to work. You don't like the fact that you have to mouse up to the application menu or icon to switch applications? You can change it. Do the Mac's windows or scroll bars leave you cold? Don't worry; the way they operate isn't written in stone. There are extensions and utilities galore to transform them into what you want.

There may be a price to pay for all this freedom, however. System extensions actually modify (patch) the System file at least temporarily. If you add lots of extensions to your Mac (I know some users who have 30 or more in their System folder), you will eventually encounter conflicts. When one extension bumps heads with another, the result can be erratic mouse or application behavior, weird noises, and even system or application crashes. Extension conflicts (you'll see them called INIT conflicts, too) can make you lose data. They can corrupt the System file to the extent that you must reinstall it from scratch. This worst-case scenario doesn't really happen that often, but you'll

want to be prepared for it by keeping backups handy. Far more frequently you'll simply find that soon after you add a new extension, some odd things start to happen that you can't explain.

How do you figure out which extension is causing the problems? One common way is to pull all of the non-Apple extensions out of your System folder (and out of the Control Panel or Extensions folders if you're using System 7). Restart the Mac, and drag half of the extensions back into the System folder. Restart the Mac again. Is the problem still there? No? Then add half of the remaining extensions back in, and restart once again. If the problem reappears after any restart, take out half of the extensions you just added back in. Continue this process until you've found the culprit. Sometimes you can rehabilitate a bad extension simply by renaming it so that it loads in a different order (extensions load alphabetically). For example, you could add a *z* to the beginning of its name to make it load last. If that ploy doesn't work, be prepared to kiss the guilty party good-bye.

This trial-and-error method can be time-consuming and frustrating. To avoid some of the hassles of managing extensions, consider using an extension or INIT manager. These programs let you turn extensions on and off without physically dragging them out of the System folder (you'll still have to restart the Mac, though). For some shareware solutions, take a look at Extensions Manager (for System 6 and 7) in this chapter, or INIT cdev 3.0 (System 6 only) in Chapter 12.

My general advice to you, however, is to avoid unnecessary extensions. They eat up memory and increase the chances of crashes. Keep your computing environment as simple and clean as possible—the way Mom and Apple intended it. I have a self-imposed absolute limit of ten extensions on my main Mac. It's a rule that reduces some of my Mac friends to peals of laughter or expressions of disbelief, but my Mac crashes far less often than theirs, so I endure the slings and arrows.

Another type of system enhancement you might come across is the FKEY. You're probably familiar with one FKEY already, but don't know it. By pressing Command-Shift-3, you can save an image of your screen as a MacPaint document. That keystroke calls up a screen-capture FKEY that's preinstalled in your System by Apple. All FKEYs are activated by pressing Command-Shift and some number on the keyboard.

Using FKEYs is simple, but installing them can be an adventure. Normally, you have to install FKEYs directly into the System file. One way to do this is with a free program from Apple called ResEdit (Resource Editor). You can download a copy of ResEdit from some on-line services, or check with any Apple dealer. Using ResEdit, however, can be a frightening experience for nonprogrammers.

Fortunately, there are other options. The commercial font/DA utilities called Suitcase II and MasterJuggler both let you install FKEYs quite painlessly (see Carpetbag in Chapter 12). On the shareware side, look into EasyKeys, also discussed in Chapter 12. Finally, some FKEYs come with installers that do it all for you.

Whether you're dealing with FKEYs, control panel extensions, or other types of System customizers, if it's related to or requires System 7, you'll probably find it mentioned in this chapter. Notwithstanding the scary scenarios and dire warnings of possible system crashes mentioned above, extensions can be fun as well as useful ways to make System 7 work more efficiently for you. Indeed, sometimes they're the *only* way to get some things done.

About ZiffNet/Mac Exclusives

In this chapter you'll be introduced to a number of programs that are *ZiffNet/-Mac Exclusives.* These Exclusives are free, and available on line only on ZiffNet/Mac. Exclusives can be freely distributed by individuals, so go ahead and share them with your friends. If you don't have access to ZiffNet/Mac, you might find Exclusives being passed around at user group meetings. Just be sure you get the version number mentioned here in the product descriptions.

AKA

Note. Aliases are small files in System 7 that point to other files and let you launch programs or open documents without clicking the original files.

AKA (as in *also known as*) is a simple System 7 extension that lets you create aliases by dragging a file icon with the Control key pressed. To install AKA, you drag it to the System folder, and click OK when you're prompted about placing the extension in a special folder. Restart your Mac and Control-drag away. This basic technique should be familiar to anyone who knows how to create a copy of a file by pressing Option as you drag the file to a new location on the same hard drive or floppy. Similarly, if you press Control as you drag on a Mac with AKA installed, you'll create an alias to the original file.

AKA is generally distributed with two other System 7 extensions (Basura and Dropple Menu, discussed separately in this chapter) in a combined package called Fred's Finder's Hacks. These three extensions were developed as a contest entry at the annual MacHack convention, a gathering of the most talented programmers in the Mac community. The contest rules encourage contestants to come up with cool programs during the conference—while surviving on substances your mama never wanted you to ingest, such as Jolt cola and potato chips. Given that scenario, you'll be relieved to know that AKA and its companion files are remarkably stable.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.
Limitations: None
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: See also the entries for Basura and Dropple Menu in this chapter.

AKA
Fred Monroe
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FRED.CPT

Alias Director

Lights! Cameras! Alias! Written by Larry Harris, Alias Director is one of the most powerful alias management and creation utilities available. If you drag a file onto the Alias Director icon, the program creates an alias to the file and deposits it in any location of your choice. A pop-up menu lets you save the alias to the Apple Menu Items folder, the System folder, or any other spot. You can even add destinations to the menu. Holding down various keys while you initially drag files onto the Alias Director icon forces the program to place the alias on the desktop, Apple menu, and so on, so you don't have to bother with the pop-up at all if your heart just can't stand the excitement.

If you want to delete a file from your disk and want to make sure all its aliases are deleted as well, you hold down the Command key as you drag the original file onto the Alias Director icon. This forces the program to place the files in the trash. You must then actually empty the trash to delete the file and its alias, so that added step acts as a safeguard against accidentally deleting important files.

Author Harris frequently updates the program and listens carefully to suggestions from users on how to improve his brainchild. Look for version 2.8.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.
Limitations: None
Registration Fee: $
Tips & Techniques: Alias Director lets you create aliases without icons. That may seem as silly as a cat without claws, but it can be useful on a crowded desktop. If you drag the iconless alias to the desktop, all you'll see is the alias name in a narrow bar—grinning at you, as it were, like the Cheshire cat. Obviously, you can stack a lot more of these on the desktop than you could if they had bulky icons.

See also the entries for AKA, Nom de Plume, and ZMakeAlias in this chapter for some other alias-creating alternatives.

Alias Director
Larry Harris
23 Hilltop MHP
Chapel Hill, NC 27514
AOL: LHarris
CIS: 76150,1027
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ADIREC.CPT

Alias Stylist

A ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive

Italicized or oblique type is a great way to emphasize text on paper, but it can be a real pain in the eye when you have to view it on screen, especially in System 7's alias names. Alias Stylist straightens those slants by letting you change the type style used by the Finder when it displays the names of alias files, whether on the desktop or within standard file dialogs. Alias Stylist offers several alternatives to the standard italic style: bold, underlined, or (if you want to live on the wild side) shadow, outline, condensed, and extended. Unless your goal is to make alias names even harder to read, you might want to stick to bold or underlined. You can combine several of the styles and really do serious damage to your retinas, as well as to Apple's interface guidelines.

Alias Stylist was commissioned by *MacUser* and is one of the many ZiffNet/Mac Exclusives mentioned at the beginning of this chapter. Make sure you obtain version 1.31 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: None

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Don't change the style to Plain, or you risk confusion. The alias and the original file will look exactly the same, especially if you like to remove the alias suffix that the Finder's Make Alias command automatically tacks on.

Alias Stylist
Bill Monk
(No address available)
CIS: 72267,2124
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ALISTY.SIT

AppDisk

If you have RAM to spare, you can use a type of program called a *ramdisk* to speed up your programs. A ramdisk lets you load one or more programs entirely into RAM. Normally, when you start a program, only part of it loads into RAM, and the Mac accesses the hard drive or floppy whenever it needs other portions of the application to perform some task. This disk activity can slow things down quite a bit. But if you load a program entirely into RAM via a ramdisk, all read and write activities take place in the superspeedy world of RAM. The ramdisk of choice for System 7 users is AppDisk.

AppDisk is fully System 7-kosher. In fact, it's a bit of a snob: It *only* runs under System 7. To use AppDisk, you must first set the amount of RAM you want to allocate to the ramdisk, by selecting the AppDisk icon and pressing Command-I (or choose Get Info from the Finder's File menu). In the entry box in the lower-right of the window, type in the amount of memory you want to give to the ramdisk. Close the window and double-click the AppDisk icon. You'll soon see a disk icon mounted on your desktop. Now, whenever you want to work with a file in RAM, just drag the file to this icon, open the ramdisk by double-clicking, and then open the file normally.

The danger of all this computing in the fast lane is that the files you work with in the AppDisk environment are not saved to your hard disk or floppy. So if you quit AppDisk or suffer a power outage, everything in RAM is lost. AppDisk does provide some safeguards to protect you: It warns you to save changes when you quit; and it can auto-save work at any interval you establish or when you quit, if you set the appropriate options. I'd strongly recommend you take advantage of these safeguards—at least until you feel totally comfortable with the program and how it works.

AppDisk was discussed in the October 22, 1991, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 1.4 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: Incompatible with File Sharing turned on. Be selfish and stop sharing.

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: You can quit AppDisk by dragging the icon it mounts on your desktop to the trash. It quits, or "dismounts," just as if it were a floppy- or hard-drive volume.

If you use antiviral software such as SAM, you might be frightened by an alert when you run AppDisk. Don't worry about it; let AppDisk do its thing. Some antiviral utilities see AppDisk's creation and mounting of a ramdisk as an assault. It's not.

If you don't have System 7, but want the speed enhancements offered by ramdisks, check out RAMdisk+. It's discussed in Chapter 12 and is available as file RAMDSK.SIT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

AppDisk
Mark Adams
11215 Research Blvd. #2036
Austin, TX 78759
AOL: MarkA38
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: APPDSK.CPT

AppleEase

AppleEase is an application/extension combination that enhances System 7's Apple menu and lets you automatically place new aliases in specific locations simply by pressing a particular key. The link between the Apple menu and aliases is almost traditional. Most people place aliases of favorite programs in the Apple menu, and it's a nuisance to have to open the Apple Menu Items folder each time you want to do this. The AppleEase package makes it unnecessary—here's how it works:

Drag the AppleEaseOut extension into your System folder and click OK when prompted about placing the extension in a special folder. Restart your Mac. Place the AppleEaseIn application in a handy location (on the desktop, for example, so it will always be within an easy mouse drag). Now choose a file or program you want to appear in the Apple menu, and drag it onto the AppleEaseIn icon. Presto! An alias to the dragged file is inserted into the Apple menu, and the original file remains in its own folder. Various modifier keys change the alias destination from the Apple menu to other common locations: Command = Startup folder; Option = desktop; Return = System folder; Tab = Preferences folder; Control = Control Panels folder; and Esc = Extensions folder. (Also, Delete = trash, but even the AppleEase author himself doesn't know why you would want to do this.) If you press the Shift key with any of these other keys, no alias will be created; the original file is affected, instead.

The other part of AppleEase is the extension AppleEaseOut. If it's installed, you can remove items from the Apple menu to the desktop by pressing Option as you choose an item in the menu.

AppleEase is well supported by its author and is an invaluable tool for anyone afflicted by Apple menu mania. Look for version 1.4 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.
Limitations: None
Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: If you don't plan on removing items from the Apple menu on a regular basis, you can pass on installing the AppleEaseOut extension. It's not required for the AppleEaseIn application to work.

AppleEase
Peter Kaplan
(No address available)
CIS: 76645,656
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: APEASE.CPT

Applicon

System 7's built-in MultiFinder environment lets you simultaneously run as many applications as you want—provided your Mac has enough RAM, of course. But switching between several open applications means pecking for the right window of the application you want to bring to the front, or mousing up to the Application menu to choose it. Applicon (application+icon), by Rick Holzgrafe, offers a welcome alternative for System 7 users.

When you run Applicon, it looks for other applications that are already open and places their icons in tiles that float above the desktop (see Figure 11.1). As you close or open programs, the tiles are updated. To switch to another application, you just click on its tile. If you hold down Option when you click, Applicon hides the window of the current application before it switches you to the next. Applicon sports three different tile types: big icon and program name, small icon and name, and small icon without any name.

Commands under the Preferences menu let you control how tiles are placed (constrained to a grid, in a corner, and with either horizontal or vertical orientation). You can also designate hot spots so that the Applicon tiles pop to the front whenever you move the mouse to a selected corner. You can hide a tile by Command-clicking it and choosing the Hide Tile command.

Since Applicon is an application and not a potentially troublesome extension, you won't run into any INIT/extension conflicts. It's not a memory hog, either: 55 to 100k of RAM should be enough for most configurations. Displaying the big icon tiles on a color Mac takes more memory; black-and-white small icons take less. Full on-line help is available under the Balloon Help menu. Look for version 2.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.
Limitations: Can be fussy in low-memory situations.
Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Applicon automatically encourages you to place all its tiles together in a rigid column or row in some corner of your screen. That sort of conformity can make for a less-cluttered desktop, but free spirits will be glad to know that you can drag a tile to anywhere on the screen your mouse will go. You can place an Applicon tile in every corner or put all of them in the center of your screen. (The center placement actually makes sense for people with large screens. It's usually faster to mouse to the center of a large monitor than to one of its far-flung corners.)

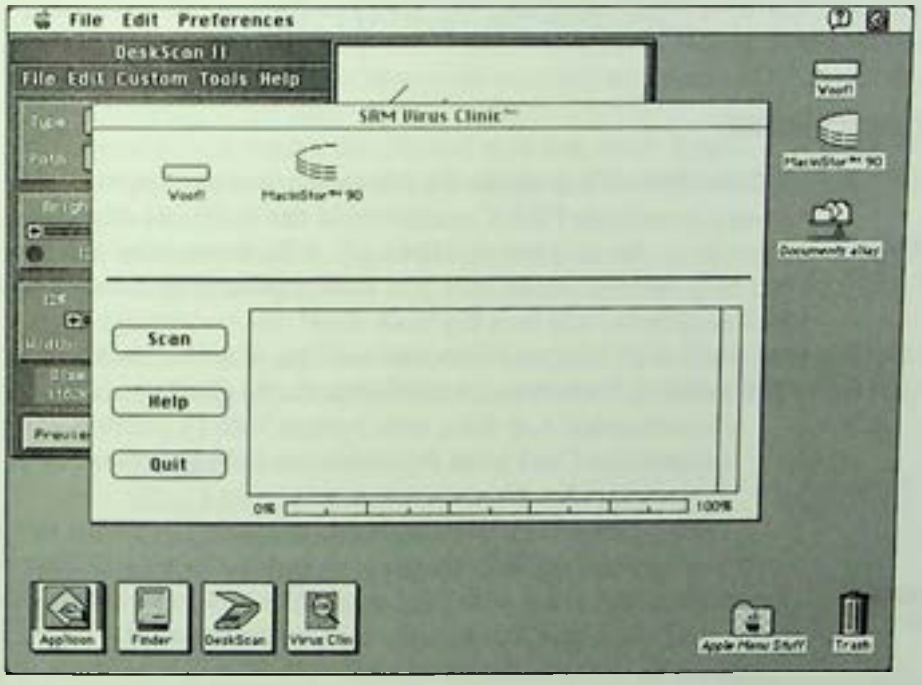


Figure 11.1
Applicon tiles come in a variety of styles

If you use the QuicKeys macro extension, you may have to increase Applicon's memory allocation by 30 to 40k (in the Get Info window that you open by pressing Command-I when Applicon's icon is selected).

If Applicon's tiles metaphor isn't to your liking or you just "hate meesies to pieces," check out ProSwitch. It relies on specific keystrokes to switch between open applications. JustClick is another alternative; it lets you cycle through the open applications by clicking on the current application icon in the right side of the Finder's menu bar. JustClick and ProSwitch are both discussed later in this chapter.

If you find yourself always using Applicon whenever you work at your Mac, place it in the Startup Items folder that is located in the System folder. Then Applicon will automatically run every time you start your Mac.

Applicon
Rick Holzgrafe
Semicolon Software
P.O. Box 371
Cupertino, CA 95015-0371
Internet: rmh@taligent.com
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: APPLIC.SIT

BalloonPrinter

A ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive

BalloonPrinter is a simple FKEY that prints the current help balloon. You simply install this FKEY using one of the methods described in the introduction to this chapter, and then press the keystroke assigned to it to print the help balloon. Make sure you have a printer attached and turned on, or BalloonPrinter will be a big bust.

BalloonPrinter was commissioned by *MacUser* and is one of the many ZiffNet/Mac Exclusives mentioned at the beginning of this chapter.

Requirements: Any Mac, with System 7 and a printer.

Limitations: Can't print PrintMonitor help balloons.

Registration Fee: None

A ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive

Tips & Techniques: WhetherBalloon is an FKEY that saves System 7 help balloons to disk (as PICT graphics embedded in a TeachText document), or prints them out along with the cartoonlike balloon outline. Few people will ever want to do that, but it might be a useful capability if you are creating graphics for documentation of some sort. WhetherBalloon, too, is a ZiffNet/-Mac Exclusive, available as file WHEBAL.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum. Make sure you obtain version 1.0 or later.

BalloonPrinter
Kurt Matthies
(No address available)
CIS: 72511,105
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: BALPRT.SIT

Basura

Taking out the trash is a chore many of us remember from our childhood with something less than nostalgia. Dragging files to the trash on the Mac is also a pain (to the wrist!), especially on large monitors. Basura turns dragging drudgery into a simple keystroke—at least for fortunate System 7 users.

Simply drag this System 7 extension to your System folder, and click OK when you're prompted about placing Basura in a special folder. Restart the Mac. Then, whenever you want to take out that trash, simply select the files you want to trash and press Command-Delete. All selected items will be placed in the trash. If you want to go a step further and actually delete the items in the trash as well, press Command-Option-Delete. This keystroke causes selected files to be thrown in the trash and then issues the Empty Trash command for you.

Basura is generally distributed with two other System 7 extensions (AKA and Dropple Menu, discussed separately in this chapter) in a combined package called Fred's Finder's Hacks.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: None

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: See also AKA and Dropple Menu in this chapter. Check out Trash Chute and TrashAlias, as well, for other trash-related utilities.

Basura
Fred Monroe
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FRED.CPT

CacheOut

A ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive

Apple's Quadra family of 68040 computers incorporates a special type of memory cache that dramatically accelerates programs. Unfortunately, a lot of applications are incompatible with the Quadra cache. If you try to run them while the Quadra's cache is enabled, some unpredictable things can happen, ranging from the program quietly stalling, to frozen screens and crashes.

The number of such incompatibilities will diminish as older programs are updated, but until then, you need a solution. Apple supplies a control panel extension called Cache Switch as system software. It's automatically installed in the Control Panel folder when you install System 7 on a Quadra. But Cache Switch is an all-or-nothing affair; the cache is either on or off for all programs. Moreover, every time you change the cache status, you must

restart your Mac for the new setting to take effect. A better solution is a ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive called CacheOut.

CacheOut is the result of collaboration between *MacWEEK* and Fred Hollander of HandOff Corporation (the company that produces Hand Off II and TrashMaster). CacheOut is a control panel extension that lets you turn the Quadra cache on or off automatically, depending on what application is running. There's no need to restart the Mac; all the switching happens on the fly. The control panel has a simple list that lets you add or remove applications for which the cache should be switched off. An icon option places an icon to the left of the Apple menu in the menu bar; the icon indicates the cache status.

CacheOut was commissioned by *MacWEEK* and is one of the many ZiffNet/Mac Exclusives mentioned at the beginning of this chapter. Make sure you cash in on CacheOut version 1.1 or later.

Requirements: System 7 and 68040 Mac (Quadra).

Limitations: Sometimes causes AppleTalk connections (printers and networked Macs) to be lost.

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: If you lose your AppleTalk connections, open the Chooser from the Apple menu and switch AppleTalk off and then back on. This should restore the connections and make printers or network volumes available again.

When you install CacheOut, make sure you remove Apple's Cache Switch control panel at the same time. There's no need for both extensions to be in the Control Panel folder, and the presence of both may cause some confusion.

CacheOut
Fred Hollander
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: CACHEO.CPT

CLAM

Where do people come up with these cute little names? CLAM (CLean Apple Menu) is a System 7 extension that strips all those colorful iconettes off the Apple menu. Why would you want to embark on such an iconoclastic rampage? Rather than maliciousness or misdirected fanaticism, there's a very practical reason for this: Displaying those icons each time you pull down the Apple menu takes time. On slower Macs, it can be a noticeable distraction. Plop the CLAM extension in your System folder, restart your Mac, and the problem is solved. If you decide you want the icons back again temporarily, just hold down Shift as you choose the Apple menu, and the icons will reappear.

CLAM's author, Pete Gontier, doesn't request any shareware payment per se, but he does ask that you do one of two things if you decide to keep and use CLAM. Either pay for some shareware you're already using and have never paid for, or make a contribution to the Electronic Frontier Foundation (EFF). This group exists to lobby and educate politicians about computer-related concerns. As CLAM's author puts it: "In short, the EFF keeps the fingers of misguided bureaucrats out of your technological affairs." That's probably not a bad idea. Whatever you decide to do, look for version 1.0b1 or later, and you should end up happy as a clam. For more information on EFF, write to Electronic Frontier Foundation, 155 Second St. #22, Cambridge, MA 02141.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: Incompatible with the commercial program, HAM.

Registration Fee: None

CLAM
Pete Gontier
250 Acalanes Dr. Apt. #2
Sunnyvale, CA 94086-6909
Internet: gurgle@netcom.netcom.com
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: CLAM.CPT

CommentKeeper

The Mac's Get Info box is a window you can display for any file, simply by selecting the file and pressing Command-I. This box displays various items of information about the file, including a text-entry box where you can enter comments. For example, you might want to store an application's serial number here, or a company's technical support phone number, so you can easily access these without running the program or digging through manuals. The Get Info box is a great touch, but there's a worm in the apple. The comments you place in the Get Info box are erased each time you rebuild the desktop. People have complained to Apple about this flaw for years, and a shareware author named Maurice Volaski finally took matters into his own hands and wrote CommentKeeper.

CommentKeeper is a System 7 extension (but see *Tips & Techniques* later) that automatically preserves the Get Info box comments just before you rebuild the desktop. This should take just a few seconds in most cases. Once the rebuild is completed, CommentKeeper restores the comments. You'll never realize that they were actually erased during the rebuild. If you use the Get Info comments a lot, you'll want CommentKeeper. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7, or System 6.05–6.07 with the Desktop Manager extension installed (see *Tips & Techniques*).

Limitations: Doesn't work with 400k or 800k floppies.

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: CommentKeeper also works with System 6.05 or 6.07 if you are using Desktop Manager, an old AppleShare extension from Apple. You must change the name of either CommentKeeper or Desktop Manager so that the latter loads before CommentKeeper at start-up. If you have System 6.05 or 6.07 but can't get a copy of Desktop Manager, check out Comment Editor (version 1.01 or later). This $ shareware comment saver is compatible with System 6.0 Macs. It's available as file COMEDI.SIT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum. Unfortunately, it forces you to save the comments one application at a time. It doesn't operate automatically as does CommentKeeper.

CommentKeeper
Maurice Volaski
173 Princeton Ave. Apt. #2
Amherst, NY 14226-5006
Internet: volaski@contra.med.buffalo.edu
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: COMMEN.CPT

Dropple Menu

System 7's Apple menu is truly a wonder. You can place anything in it—applications, documents, folders—you're not restricted to DAs, as in the old days before Seven made Heaven on Earth. But you still can't drag a file to an Apple menu item to open it. So if you have placed Word or an alias of Word in the Apple menu, you can't drag a Word document to the Word item and expect the file to open. But since Dropple Menu dropped in, all that has changed.

Dropple Menu (Dropple, a portmanteau word of Drop and Apple) is a System 7 extension that lets you drag items from the Finder onto Apple menu items. The files will open in the appropriate application, just as if you had done all this in the Finder itself. It's simple, but a real helper that you'll love if you use your System 7 Apple menu as an application launcher, as many people do.

Dropple Menu is generally distributed with two other System 7 extensions (AKA and Basura, discussed separately in this chapter) in a combined package called Fred's Finder's Hacks.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: None

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: See also AKA and Basura in this chapter. If Dropple Menu doesn't put enough spit and shine on your Apple menu, check out AppleEase, also discussed in this chapter.

Dropple Menu
Fred Monroe
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FRED.CPT

DTPrinter

One of the few advantages over the Mac interface that I spotted in Windows 3.1 was the feature that lets you print a file on your default printer by dropping its icon on the Print Manager icon. Wow! I loved it; and I suspect a lot of other Mac users, too, would like to see this trick trucked into the Mac environment. Well, it has been—in shareware author Leonard Rosenthol's DTPrinter, a System 7 drag-and-drop miniapplication.

Drag-and-drop printing was originally supposed to be part of System 7, but Apple in its infinite, inscrutable wisdom pulled the capability from that release of the operating system. This unfortunate decision set the bats in Rosenthol's belfry into a mad flurry, and DTPrinter soon hit the on-line services as a result.

To use DTPrinter, first make a copy of the original program (using the Finder's Duplicate command). Double-click the copy and choose Customize from the File menu. Next, select the kind of printer, and even the individual printer (helpful when you're using networked printers). After you click OK and quit the program, the file will have a new name: the prefix DTP, followed by a slash and the name or type of printer you selected. Now whenever you drag-and-drop a file on this customized copy, the appropriate program will run and the standard Print dialog will appear. Specify the number of copies you want, plus any other options, and click OK. The file goes off to the printer and the program closes.

DTPrinter was mentioned in the July 16, 1991, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 1.1 or later. Some people reported problems with earlier versions, especially when printing to HP DeskWriters and other non-PostScript printers.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: When you recustomize a copy of DTPrinter, the custom icon may not be updated. It's an aesthetic bug, but not a fatal one.

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: If DTPrinter doesn't work for you, remember this simple Finder trick (and this doesn't require System 7): In the Finder, select the file you want to print and press Command-P. The program that created the

file opens and prints it, and then closes (unless the program was already open, in which case it remains open and active).

DTPrinter
Leonard Rosenthol
(No address available)
AOL/GEnie: MACgician
Internet: leonardr@sv.portal.com
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: DTPRNT.CPT

Extensions Manager

System extensions (they used to be called INITs or cdevs) seem to breed like rabbits on many Macs. These often helpful system-enhancing programs, however, can abruptly transform into a nest of angry hornets if they conflict with one another or with other programs. And this does sometimes happen—it's a bit like what DOS people go through with TSRs (terminate-and-stay-resident programs). So if some of the extensions you use are helpful only occasionally, or you are bothered by conflicts, you may want a way to turn the extensions off and on again. System 7 lets you turn them all off at start-up by holding the Shift key down. But that's not very flexible, so you'll want to explore some of the extension/INIT managers that are available. The noncommercial extensions manager of choice (at least for System 7 users) is a freebie from Apple Computer called, rather unimaginatively, Extensions Manager.

The Extensions Manager package consists of two parts: a control panel called Extensions Manager and an extension called EM Extension. To install the package under System 7, just drag the two files onto your System folder and click OK when you're asked about placing the files in specific folders. Then restart your Mac.

You access Extensions Manager by choosing Control Panels from the Apple menu. Double-click the program's icon. You'll see a list of all extensions currently loaded, as shown in Figure 11.2. They can be in the Control Panel folder, Extensions folder, or loose in the System folder. The Manager can even control programs stored in the Startup Items folder. All of the names will be highlighted, and you can turn individual ones off by clicking them so they are no longer highlighted. You can also save working sets of extensions that you want to turn on and off at the same time, by highlighting those sets and using the pop-up Sets menu to name and save them. You can also call up the Extensions Manager control panel whenever you start or restart your Mac, by holding down the Spacebar (to do this with System 7, you must have EM Extension installed). This forces the Mac to display the

control panel interface, so you can control what extensions or sets are loaded before the start-up process really gets started.

Figure 11.2
Managing System extensions with Extensions Manager

Extensions Manager can be a godsend if you have many extensions and want to manage them efficiently. There's balloon help, too, if you need it. Distributing Extensions Manager for free was a nice gesture on Apple's part. Now if only they could come up with a more imaginative name... . Look for version 1.6 or later.

Extensions Manager is an Apple product and is available on line only through services that have signed a licensing agreement with Apple (see the list below). You should also be able to obtain a copy from most authorized Apple dealers (but bring your own floppy disk!).

Requirements: System 4.2 or later.

Limitations: Apple offers no technical support for this product. Don't even think of calling about it!

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Although Extensions Manager is generally known as a System 7 product, it works just fine with Systems 4.2 through 6.07, as well. If you are not using this manager with System 7, install only the control panel, not the EM Extension, which is useful only with System 7. System 6 users might also want to look at INIT cdev 3.0. It's available as file INIT30.SIT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum and is discussed in Chapter 12.

Extensions Manager
Ricardo Batista
AOL: Search for Extensions Manager using AOL's File Search file finder.
CIS: Enter GO CIS:MACSEVEN to get the MAUG MacSeven Forum.
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: Not available on ZiffNet/Mac.

Find Pro II

Find Pro II is included on the bonus disk attached to this book.

A ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive

The System 7 Finder has a Find command under the File menu. Though a welcome innovation when it first appeared, the command leaves a lot to be desired. It's fairly pokey, and displays the items found during a search by opening their folders and highlighting them. Most people come away from the experience less than impressed. Finder's Find command is better than nothing, but it still doesn't do much to alleviate the needle-in-the-haystack syndrome. Fortunately, someone has invented a better mousetrap: It's an application called Find Pro II, and you can use it to search through your hard disks and floppies to snag those files. It's easier to use than the Find command and about 10 to 20 times faster.

Find Pro II deliberately mimics the appearance of the standard Find command dialog, so it will seem fairly familiar to most people. Balloon help stands ready to rescue stranded searchers. You select the search criteria through pop-up menus or by typing in a text string. Then you click the Find button, and Find Pro II displays all items matching the search criteria in a two-paned window (see Figure 11.3). The left pane is the Hit List of all files located. The right pane shows the exact location of any item you select in the Hit List; if more than one item is highlighted, no location will appear. Buttons in the Find Pro Hit List window let you open a selected item, show it (displayed in its folder), access the Get Info window for it, delete it, or move it to the desktop. You can also create a copy or alias for any selected item.

Searches can be done across all mounted volumes (hard disks, CD-ROMs, floppies, and so forth) or restricted to one volume. You can search on file name, size, kind, label, lock or visibility status, and more. You can even locate only aliases or only empty folders. Instead of displaying found items in the Hit List, there's an option that lets you create a folder full of aliases to all found items. You could, for example, find all applications on your hard disk and automatically create an alias for each of them. The program supports background searching, but it's so fast you'll probably seldom have enough time to switch to another application.

Find Pro II was commissioned by *MacUser* and is one of the ZiffNet/Mac Exclusives mentioned at the beginning of the chapter. Make sure you obtain version 1.2.1 or later. There is no Find Pro I, by the way. Author Bill Monk simply liked the look of the Find Pro II name and decided to keep it.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: You may encounter some errors or weirdness when you search networked volumes. Find Pro II cannot display more than 32k of file names, and it's quite possible to hit that limit if you're searching a CD-ROM or network disk.

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: To keep Find Pro II handy, put it (or an alias to it) in the Apple Menu Items folder. That's not quite as handy as a Menu command, but it's close. If you use a macro program such as QuicKeys or Tempo II, you might even want to assign a keyboard shortcut to run this search utility.

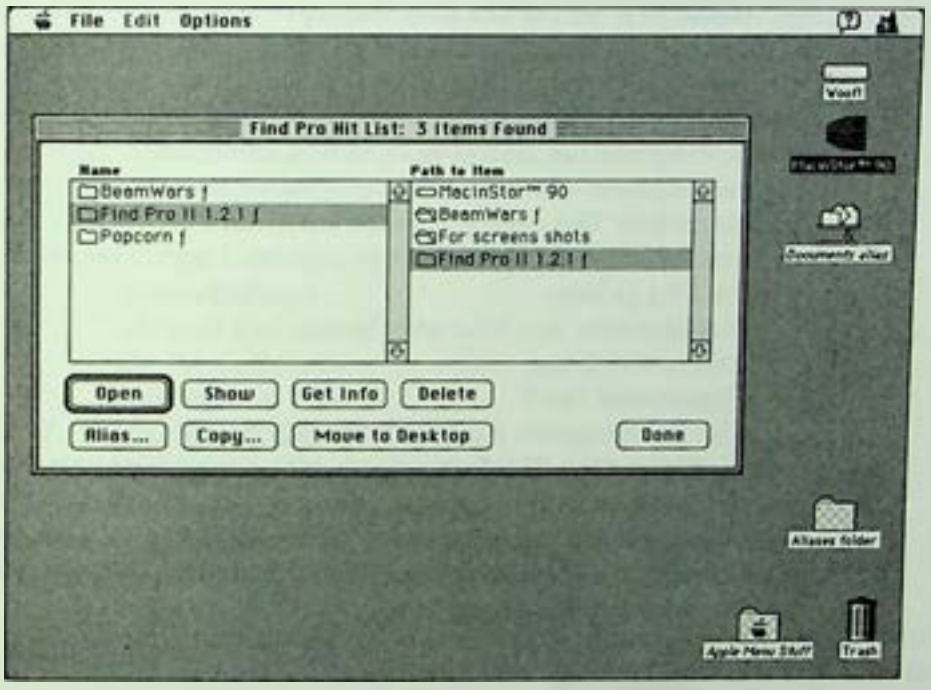


Figure 11.3
Finding files like a pro

When items first appear in the Hit List after a search, the first item is selected, but its exact location doesn't appear in the right pane. To see the path of the first item, select any other item in the list, and then reselect the first item.

Find Pro II
Bill Monk
(No address available)
CIS: 72511,301
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FINDPR.CPT

Finder Sets

Do you sometimes open the same set of folders, documents, or applications when you sit down to work at your Mac? Of course, you can always use the Startup Items folder to run several items automatically at every start-up, but what if you only occasionally want those items to open in unison? Finder Sets, by Larry Harris, is the perfect solution for System 7 users.

Finder Sets creates one icon that represents several programs, documents, and even folders; you add them to the icon through a simple dialog. You can add or remove items from any Finder Sets file at any time. Whenever you double-click the icon, all of the items referenced in it receive an Apple Event: Programs run, files appear, folders reveal their contents, doors open, chickens squawk—the referenced files do what they would normally do when double-clicked. This modestly priced shareware program is a delightful must-have utility. It's so simple and yet so sublime. I highly recommend it. Look for version 1.0.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: None

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: Another System 7 tool that Finder Sets users might want is PowerAlias. This $ shareware utility helps minimize desktop clutter by consolidating up to five aliases in one icon. You specify which program to run by holding down a key when you double-click the icon. PowerAlias is available on the major on-line services. You'll find it as file PALIAS.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

Finder Sets
Larry Harris
23 Hilltop MHP
Chapel Hill, NC 27514
AOL: LHarris
CIS: 76150,1027
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FINSET.CPT

FinderToFront

System 7 has a folder called Startup Items located in the System folder. Any program or file you place in Startup Items automatically runs or opens immediately after your Mac starts and the desktop has appeared. The shortcoming of this System 7 innovation, however, is that the last start-up item to run

remains the active application. Most people need to do some chores in the Finder before they jump willy-nilly into the work stream, and that means always having to switch back to the Finder. That's not hard, of course, but it's a nuisance and pushes some high-strung types to the brink. Happily, there's help for these poor souls.

FinderToFront is a simple application you place in the Startup Items folder. It's named in such a way that it will always run last during the start-up process. When it runs, it does but one thing: It switches you back to the Finder and quits. So if the Finder should always be first in your book, check out FinderToFront. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.
Limitations: None
Registration Fee: None

FinderToFront
Michael Pierce
c/o Pierce Software
719 Hibiscus Place
San Jose, CA 95117
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FINFRO.CPT

Folder Icon Maker

Both files and applications can have custom icons that help you pick them out of the crowd at a glance. Folders can have these special icons, too, if you paste a new icon over the usual folder icon through the Get Info box. But then you can't immediately tell if the folder is indeed a folder. Happily, you can change this sorry state of affairs with Folder Icon Maker (also known as FIM), a simple System 7 drag-and-drop utility that can fill your folders with finesse.

To create a folder with a custom icon, you drag any file or application onto the FIM icon. FIM will run, and then create a folder icon embedded with a small version of the same icon as the file you dragged in. FIM then automatically quits. The new folder is always created in the same folder as the original file. The small icons placed in the folder are anti-aliased, a process that improves their appearance and increases the level of detail. If the original file's icon is black and white, the icon placed on the folder icon is transparent, so that the folder's color shows through. If you don't want to create a new folder, and prefer to place the icon on the parent folder of the program or file that you drag to FIM, hold down the F key as you drag. If you don't like the drag-and-drop approach, just run FIM: It sports a full set of menus that let you customize folders.

There's balloon help if you need it. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7 and a hard disk. A color or gray-scale monitor is recommended.

Limitations: Doesn't work on floppies.

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: What do you do if you want to get rid of a custom folder icon or want to change it? If you simply want to return to the old plain manila folder, select the folder and press Command-I. When the Get Info window appears, select the icon in the upper-left and choose Clear from the Edit menu. Close the Get Info window, and the folder is back to normal. To change the folder's custom icon to something else, the procedure is a little more complicated, because FIM will not modify a folder that already has a custom icon. You must first copy the icon you want to use to the Clipboard, by dragging it onto FIM with the C key held down. Then select the folder you want to change, bring up the Get Info window as just described, select the icon, and choose Paste from the Edit menu. Close the Get Info window, and the folder will appear with the new custom icon.

Folder Icon Maker
Gregory Robbins
109 Crocker Avenue
Oakland, CA 94610
Internet: grobbins@nails.gsfc.nasa.gov
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FOLMAK.CPT

Helium

Balloon help was a much heralded addition to the Macintosh operating system in System 7. Certainly it can be a help to beginners, but it's essentially useless (except in rare circumstances) to anyone who's Mac-savvy. But there's one thing about it that everyone agrees on: It's a royal pain to have to mouse up to the Help menu and turn balloon help on, and then mouse right back up to turn it off once you've seen the help, for just one item in a program.

There's no better way to inflate and deflate those help balloons than with Helium, a System 7 control panel extension. Helium makes three changes to the way balloon help works. It lets you access the help through a hot key (keyboard shortcut) that you can define for yourself. It can change the font and point size used in the help balloons. Finally, it lets you hide the balloon help menu icon so your menu bar won't be so cluttered. It's all very straightforward. Look for version 2.1.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.
Limitations: None
Registration Fee: $
Tips & Techniques: The help key of the extended keyboard may seem the logical choice for Helium's hot key, but don't use it. Other applications such as Microsoft Word use the help key to access their own built-in help systems. Using this key for Helium will rob you of that help.

Defining the hot key for Helium requires some dexterity and may perplex some people. To do it, press the key-combination you want to use as the hot key, and at the same time click the Set Hot Keys button.

The author requests a very modest fee for this program (until you register, you'll see occasional reminders about paying). In addition, he encourages users to become involved in animal rights issues by contacting PETA, P.O. Box 42516, Washington, D.C., 20015, (301) 770-7444.

If you find you're using Helium just to hide the balloon help menu, you might want to consider NoBalloonMenu. That simple extension is discussed later in this chapter and, unlike Helium, is free. It's available in the ZiffNet/-Mac Download and Support Forum as file NOBALL.SIT.

Helium
Robert L. Mathews
P.O. Box 21271
Oakland, CA 94620-1271
AOL: L Products
CIS: 72551,372
GEnie: R.MATHEWS4
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: HELIUM.SIT

HideAlways

A ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive

System 7's Application menu (accessed through the icon at the right of the menu bar) lets you hide open applications so that only the windows of the current application are actually visible. That can cut down on screen clutter and possible confusion. Unfortunately, you must manually choose a menu command (Hide Others) to activate this invisibility. If you then switch to another application, the Mac forgets you wanted to hide the background programs, and a bunch of highly visible windows start to fill up your screen again. HideAlways is a System extension that keeps those pesky windows hidden. While the extension is active (just choose Hide Others to make it so), only the windows of the active application will ever be visible, no matter how many times

you switch. And if you want HideAlways to become "HideNever," just select the Show All command on the Application menu.

HideAlways was commissioned by *MacUser* and is one of the many ZiffNet/Mac Exclusives mentioned at the beginning of this chapter. The program was discussed in the April 1992 issue of *MacUser*.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: None

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: See also ProSwitch, discussed separately in this chapter, for another approach to application hiding.

HideAlways
Mike Throckmorton
2120 Ardenne Drive
Ann Arbor, MI 48105
CIS: 72220,1611
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: HIDEAL.CPT

INITLoader

Many people feel restricted by System 7's insistence that extensions be stored in specific locations in the System folder. Perhaps there's a streak of libertarianism in the Mac community: A similar chafing under the yoke led to the appearance of commercial programs such as Suitcase II and MasterJuggler, which let you store DAs and fonts outside the System folder. INITLoader is a System 7 extension that brings some freedom to extensions, too, by letting you load them from folders other than the System folder. The program can even load extensions across a network, or extensions pointed to by aliases. You set up INITLoader by providing the path or paths to the folders or volumes where you want the program to search for extensions. The interface is simple and fairly foolproof—a good thing, since there is no documentation. Look for version 1.0a7 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: None

Registration Fee: None

INITLoader
Ian Hendry
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: INITLO.SIT

JustClick

Switching between applications under System 6's MultiFinder is a snap: You just click the application icon at the right of the menu bar to cycle through the open applications. System 7, for all its improvements over earlier System software, changed this feature for the worse: To switch applications, you must go to the icon and pull down the application menu. Bad idea. If you want to return to the good ol' days, check out JustClick.

JustClick is a System 7 extension that substitutes the System 6 way for the System 7 way of transferring among open applications. Drop it into your System folder, restart the Mac, and hit that switch. You'll never go back (forward?) to the System 7 way of doing this task. JustClick is a freebie, courtesy of Tactic Software, makers of Magic Typist and other Mac products. Look for version 1.02 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: None

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: See also ProSwitch in this chapter. ProSwitch gives you JustClick's trick along with a few more. You'll find it on all the on-line services and through user groups. It's available as file PROSWI.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

Another possibility is Eric de la Musse's WindowWizard (file WINWIZ.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum), also described in this chapter.

JustClick
Luis Bardi
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: JUSTCL.SIT

MacUser's Alias Assassin

A ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive

MacUser's Alias Assassin kills aliases dead. At least, that is one of this clever utility's roles. With the advent of System 7 and aliases, alias management has become a necessity. Aliases stop working if you move the original files to a new location or rename them, and this is often the case when you update commercial programs that include a version number in their names.

Operating Alias Assassin is simple. You start it and choose the mounted volumes (hard or floppy disks you can see on your desktop as icons) that you want to scan for aliases. Alias Assassin goes into lightning-fast ninja mode and displays all aliases in a list, faster than a kung fu master can slice through a brick. If you have the appropriate settings chosen, Alias Assassin will automatically reconnect aliases that have become disconnected from their original

files (if they still exist). From within Alias Assassin, you can also manually relink aliases to their files and delete aliases that no longer point to a file. The program is fast and foolproof.

Alias Assassin was commissioned by *MacUser* and is one of the many ZiffNet/Mac Exclusives mentioned at the beginning of this chapter. The program was discussed in the September 1991 issue of *MacUser*. Make sure you obtain version 1.31 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: None

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Alias Assassin is an invaluable tool to have around after you restore from a backup, when unattached and detached aliases can often be a problem. Alias Assassin takes care of deleting and reattaching these aliases automatically and quickly.

If you can't locate a copy of Alias Assassin, there are a couple of other alias utilities worth looking at. AliasZoo ($$), by Cliff McCollum, also deletes orphaned aliases and reattaches or repairs aliases that can't find the files to which they point. This program cannot automatically repair detached aliases as Alias Assassin can, however. You have to reestablish the severed connection through a standard open dialog box. AliasZoo is available as file ALIASZ.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

Alias Director ($), by Laurence Harris, is chiefly an alias creation tool, but it also deletes aliases. If you want to delete a file from your disk and make sure all aliases are deleted as well, hold down the Command key as you drag the original file to the Alias Director icon. This forces the program to place the files in the trash. You must then actually empty the trash to delete the file and its alias. Alias Director is available as file ADIREC.CPT in the ZiffNet/-Mac Download and Support Forum.

TrashAlias, by Maurice Volaski, is a simple System extension that makes sure aliases are always deleted whenever you delete the original file. It's available in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum as file TRASHA.CPT.

Both Alias Director and TrashAlias are discussed elsewhere in this chapter. All of these files require System 7.

MacUser's Alias Assassin
Bill Monk
(No address available)
CIS: 72267,2124
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ALIASA.SIT

MenuChoice

MenuChoice adds hierarchical menus to the System 7 Apple menu. Hierarchical? As in Roman collars, bishops, and cardinals? No, we're not talking High Church here, but rather ease of use—as well as doing some "Why didn't Apple do it this way in the first place?" kvetching.

MenuChoice is a control panel extension that makes the folders in your Apple Menu Items folder show up as submenus under the Apple menu, (that is, cascading off to the right) as shown in Figure 11.4. This means you can access anything in those folders—applications, files, and aliases—directly from your Apple menu. MenuChoice provides a great way to organize the Apple menu. You might, for example, place aliases to your favorite programs in a folder called Applications, and create other special folders for games, frequently used documents, and so on.

MenuChoice automatically mounts unmounted volumes, such as hard disk partitions, if you try to access one of their files or applications. The extension maintains a list (in the Recent submenu of the Apple menu) of the ten most recently accessed subfolders (a function that's similar to the commercial product, Super Boomerang). You can configure MenuChoice to segregate all subfolders at the bottom of the Apple menu, fenced off from the menu's other usual inhabitants by a line.

MenuChoice deserves its popularity. You'll like it. Look for version 1.1 or later; earlier versions had some problems dealing with AppleShare volumes.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: None

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Behierarchic is another popular Apple menu enhancer that lets you have subfolders cascading off the Apple menu. People either loved it or hated it when it first appeared. Bug reports plagued the first release (I used it without any problems, however). Version 1.5 silenced a lot of the complaints, so make sure you obtain 1.5 or a later version. Behierarchic is widely available through on-line services and other means. You'll find it as file BEHIER.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

MenuChoice
Kerry Clendinning
P.O. Box 26061
Austin, TX 78755
CIS: 76424,2214
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MENUCH.SEA

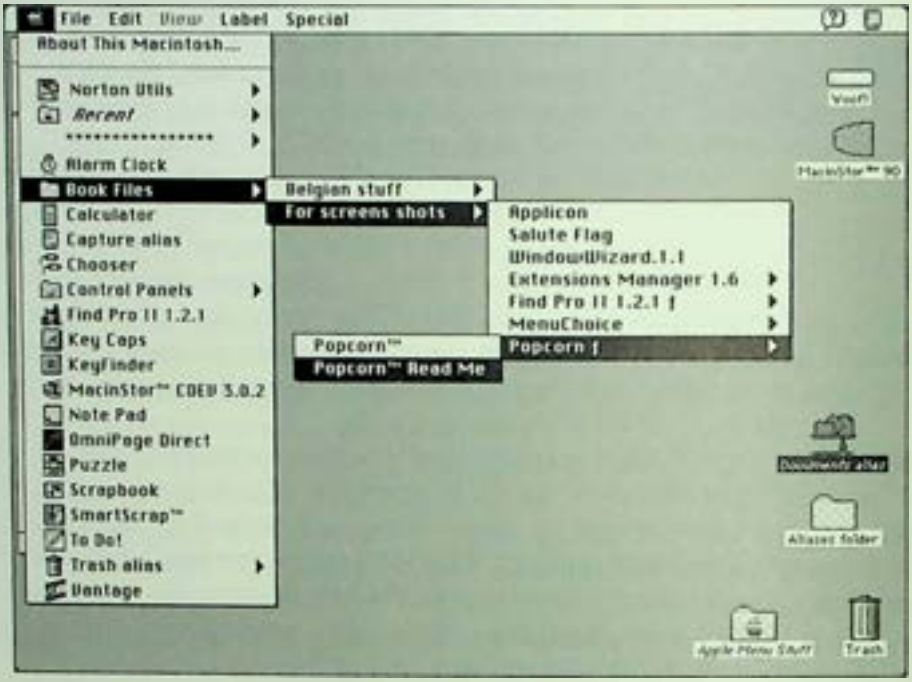


Figure 11.4
MenuChoice enhances the Apple menu with submenus

MODE32

System 7 introduced 32-bit addressing. What this means for most people is that the Mac's former 8Mb RAM limit is no longer a brick wall. The problem is, you need a Mac that's 32-bit clean (a IIci, IIsi, IIfx, LC, Quadra, or PowerBook), which leaves owners of a Mac II, IIx, IIcx, or SE/30 out of luck. Apple offered no way to upgrade the hardware in these models to 32-bit compatibility and garnered a lot of grief over that lack. But along came a company called Connectix, with whom Apple struck a deal that made nearly everyone happy. Now you can have your Mac à la mode—MODE32, that is.

MODE32 is a control panel extension that started out as a $100 commercial program from Connectix, a company that specializes in Mac memory-related software. Thanks to a special arrangement between Apple and Connectix, MODE32 is now available as freeware. To use it, you drag it to the System folder, and click OK when you see the alert that control panel should be stored in a special folder. Next, open the System folder, locate and open the Control Panel folder, and double-click the MODE32 icon. Click the Enabled button, close MODE32 and the open folders, and restart your Mac. To turn on 32-bit addressing, open the Control Panel folder again, and double-click the Memory extension. Click the On button for 32-bit mode, and restart your Mac again.

So what does this little miracle mean in practical terms? Two things: one good and one bad. Your Mac now supports more than 8Mb RAM. In fact, you can use up to 128Mb (if you can afford it!), and up to one gigabyte of virtual memory. That means all those CAD, image-processing, and DTP applications that are so high powered and RAM hungry suddenly seem like real tools you can actually use, without continually bumping into memory roadblocks. The dark side is that 32-bit mode requires 32-bit programs and extensions. With 32-bit addressing enabled, if you try running programs that aren't 32-bit clean, your Mac will end up singing "La Bomba" big time. Software companies have been scrambling to bring all their software up to 32-bit compatibility, so this problem should become less and less of an issue. Apple's and Connectix's gift of MODE32 to the Mac community was the right thing to do. Make sure you obtain version 1.2 or later.

Requirements: Mac II, IIx, IIcx, or SE/30, and System 7.

Limitations: You must restart your Mac every time you change the 32-bit setting. Not compatible with 128, 512, Plus, SE, Classic, or Mac Portable.

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Before you install MODE32, run Apple's System 7 Compatibility Checker (it comes as System software with System 7) to see which of your programs and system extensions are not 32-bit clean. Remove dirty extensions (INITs, control panels, and so on) before you start using MODE32. You might want to gather dirty applications into one folder, with a name that reminds you not to use these programs with 32-bit addressing turned on—for example, "Not 32-bit Folder."

If you accidentally leave a dirty extension in your System folder and find you can no longer start your Mac because the extension causes a crash at start-up, hold down the Esc key as you start. This turns MODE32 off and prevents 32-bit addressing from becoming active. Your Mac should start normally, and you can pluck out the offending extension.

MODE32 requires System 7.0 or later. If you want to use 32-bit addressing with System 6.0, you might want to look for a commercial product called OPTIMA. Like MODE32, it's also by Connectix, but it's not free.

MODE32
Connectix, Inc.
2655 Campus Dr.
San Mateo, CA 94403
(415) 571-5100
(800) 950-5880
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MODE32.SEA

NoBalloonMenu

The name says it all: NoBalloonMenu is a System 7 extension that banishes the Balloon Help menu icon from your menu bar, making room for more important objects, such as Ben Haller's Eyeballs, for instance. (See the Chapter 4 entry on Critters.) That's all NoBalloonMenu does, and that's all it will ever do. There are no complex dialog or control panel interfaces to struggle with, no preferences to define, no convoluted instructions for use. Just slip it into the Extensions folder and restart your Mac. It's the easiest way to burst that balloon.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: None

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: If you think you might occasionally want access to balloon help or the balloon help menu, try the shareware control panel extension called Helium, described earlier in this chapter. Helium can hide the menu icon, while leaving you with a way to use balloon help. Helium is available as file HELIUM.SIT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

NoBalloonMenu
Malcolm Davidson
(No address available)
Internet: mrd@mpe67.dmpe.csiro.au
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: NOBALL.SIT

Nom de Plume

A ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive

There's a new dance rage catching the attention of System 7 Mac users: the Alias Two-Step. At least that's what Bill Monk, the creator of Nom de Plume, calls it. And rage is probably the right noun, because what you usually have to go through when you create and use an alias can really be annoying. Most people do something like this: Select an application; choose the Make Alias command from the File menu; select the new alias; drag it to the Apple Menu Items folder; open the Apple Menu Items folder to remove the alias suffix that gets tacked onto every alias; and so on. That looks like more than two steps to me....

Nom de Plume turns the whole procedure into one simple shuffle. It works like this: You select several files and drag them onto the Nom de Plume icon. The program prompts you for a destination folder, you select it, and aliases to all the selected files appear at that location. And Nom de Plume lets you change the default alias suffix. You can also run Nom de Plume and create aliases one at a time for files you select in a standard Open

dialog. The drag-and-drop technique is a lot easier, but creating the aliases within Nom de Plume lets you specify the default folder where they should be saved. A pop-up menu lets you select certain common locations, such as the Apple Menu Items folder or the desktop, but you can also specify a Custom Folder ("My Aliases," for example) that is remembered between start-ups. Look for version 1.2.2 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: Some quirkiness with Nom de Plume's Custom Folder feature and Super Boomerang's Rebound feature, but nothing catastrophic.

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Most people don't realize this, but you don't have to make aliases one at a time. You can Shift-select several files at once and choose the Make Alias command from the File menu. You'll then have aliases for all the selected files.

If you hate the alias suffix no matter how short it is, just leave the Alias Suffix box empty in Nom de Plume's Preferences dialog. Make sure you save your aliases to a folder different from the one the original file is in, and you'll have a folder full of aliases sans suffix.

Nom de Plume
Bill Monk
(No address available)
CIS: 72267,2124
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: PLUME.SIT

Popcorn

QuickTime, the magic that makes movies happen on the Mac, is Apple software. This is a nifty System extension that lets you play special movie files on your Mac. Multimedia mavens will love it, although it probably won't be of much practical use to most people for some time. I must admit I prefer to watch movies on the silver screen and not on a computer monitor. But if you're feeling extravagant or have found there is, in fact, some reason to exploit QuickTime in your work or play, you couldn't find a better friend to take to the QuickTime movies than Popcorn.

Popcorn is an application that views and edits QuickTime movies. You can view a movie forward or backward, at normal speed, or one frame at a time. You can work on several movies at once, copying and pasting frames among them. It's a simple editing environment (see Figure 11.5) that may be more Roger Corman than Martin Scorsese, but it's free, so don't complain.

Figure 11.5
At the movies with Popcorn

Popcorn is compatible with Wild Magic (see the *Tips & Techniques* section), and supports balloon help and System 7 drag-and-drop. Developed by Aladdin Systems (makers of StuffIt Deluxe), Popcorn is distributed by the company as freeware on the on-line services. Look for version 1.0.1 or later.

Requirements: System 6.0.7 or higher, and Apple QuickTime extension.

Limitations: None

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: That you need System 7 to take advantage of QuickTime is a popular misconception; you can use it with System 6.0.7, as well. You can download the basic QuickTime package from various on-line services (except ZiffNet/Mac), but the most cost-effective way to obtain QuickTime is through an Apple dealer. Downloading the program from the on-line services is expensive, because the QuickTime files are so large.

Although QuickTime movies can be placed in documents just as regular graphics can, the receiving application must be QuickTime-ready. Most applications don't fit that particular bill, but you can work around the problem with a control panel extension that's often distributed with QuickTime: Wild Magic. This extension essentially makes older applications compatible with QuickTime. With Wild Magic installed, you can copy and paste movies into the document of any application that normally accepts PICT graphics. But

Wild Magic, unlike QuickTime, does require System 7 (with the QuickTime extension installed).

In addition to Popcorn, check out EasyPlay by Michael O'Connor (author of CompuServe Navigator). EasyPlay shows QuickTime movies, and also catalogs large collections of them—up to 4,000 per catalog file. Each movie entry in a catalog consists of a title, a description, and a movie poster (a still frame from the movie in question). Double-click the poster, and the movie plays. EasyPlay requires QuickTime and System 7. It can be fully scripted through Apple Events and comes with Userland Frontier install scripts. EasyPlay is available as file EZPLAY.SEA in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

Popcorn
Leonard Rosenthol
Aladdin Systems
165 Westridge Dr.
Watsonville, CA 95076
(408) 761-6200
AOL: Aladdin
CIS: 75300,1666
GEnie: AladdinSys
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: POPCOR.CPT

Print2Pict

When you choose Print from the File menu, you usually send the print job to a printer attached to your Mac. It's only logical, right? But, as you may already know, you don't have to print a file to the paper in your printer. Many database programs, for example, let you "print" reports to a text file on disk. The System 7 Print dialog box lets you direct the print job to a PostScript file just by clicking the PostScript File checkbox. System 7 users have yet another option in the form of Print2Pict, a clever printer driver accessed through Chooser that redirects print jobs into a variety of other, mostly graphic, formats.

You install Print2Pict in the Extensions folder within the System folder. To activate it, you simply use the Chooser (it's located in the Apple menu). Then when you choose the Print command, the Print2Pict dialog pops up instead of the usual Print dialog. The driver supports saving print jobs in PICT, MacPaint, Clipboard (as a graphic), PICS (a format used in PICS animation), text-only, and Postcard formats. (This last format lets you save your job as a stand-alone application. People to whom you send the postcard can double-click and view the file, without having either Print2Pict or the application from which you were printing.)

Print2Pict supports color and high-resolution images, balloon help, custom "paper" sizes, a preview window, and scaling. It also features support for extensions as a means to add other formats to its repertoire. Experienced programmers may want to add other text or graphic formats to the six already in the program. The Print2Pict package comes with programming examples and documentation for this feature. Look for version 3.4 or later for all the features mentioned here.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: None

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: You may be wondering why you would ever want to save a word processed page, for example, as a PICT graphic. One reason might be to save pages as graphics for use as thumbnail images in a catalog or a manual. Page-layout applications such as PageMaker have this capability built in, but word processors don't. Print2Pict brings this feature to them.

With its Postcard format, Print2Pict becomes roughly the equivalent of programs such as SuperGlue or the shareware program Belgian Postcards (see its entry in Chapter 5). These applications let you send files to other people, without concern about whether they have the word processor or page-layout program required to use the files. Print2Pict even does those programs one better, because you don't have to send along any special viewer utility. Print2Pict's postcards are stand-alone applications other people can view by simply double-clicking them.

Print2Pict
Baudouin Raoult
17 Home Farm Close
RG2 7TD Reading, Berkshire
England
Internet: mab@ecmwf.co.uk
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: P2PICT.CPT

ProSwitch

ProSwitch sounds to me as if it should have something to do with golf, but it doesn't. Rather, it's a control panel extension that makes switching between open applications easier than usual under System 7.

With ProSwitch installed, you'll find you can cycle through open applications by clicking the application menu icon in the menu bar—just as you used to do in System 6. Hold the Option key down as you click, and ProSwitch will hide all applications except the one you switch to. If that's not enough for you, then double-click the ProSwitch icon in the Control Panel folder. Six

fully configurable keyboard shortcuts for application switching stand ready to be customized. By default, Control-Left Arrow switches to the previous application, and Control-Right Arrow goes to the next program. And if you hold down the Option key with these keystrokes, all background applications will be hidden as you switch. Look for version 1.2 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: None

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: See also the entry on JustClick in this chapter. JustClick doesn't offer as many features as ProSwitch, but that very simplicity may appeal to some people. JustClick is available through the usual on-line services. You'll find it as file JUSTCL.SIT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

Another possibility is Eric de la Musse's WindowWizard (file WINWIZ.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum), described later in this chapter.

ProSwitch
Markus Fest
Georgenstr. 64
8000 Munich 40
Germany
Internet: markus.fest@mathematik.uni-muenchen.dbp.de
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: PROSWI.CPT

System 7 Pack

System 7 Pack sounds like a collection of utilities, and did start out that way many versions ago. But author Adam Stein has now packed them all into one utility. This program is essentially a Finder customizer. When you double-click it, the Finder quits and System 7 Pack lets you make your changes to the way the Finder operates. It lets you alter some command names, or add Command-key shortcuts to commands in the Finder's menus. For example, you could add Command-M to Make Alias. You also can change the default suffix that's added to aliases; accelerate Finder copies; and add application/document links, so that, for example, you could double-click a MacWrite document and open it in Microsoft Word instead of in MacWrite.

Stein's shareware products aren't known for their slick interfaces—actually, they're often sort of frumpy. Aesthetics aside, however, System 7 Pack is extremely popular, and worth the cost just for its ability to add Command-key shortcuts to the System 7 Finder menus. Before you use it, pay close attention

to the advice in *Tips & Techniques* below. Look for version 3.0 or later for all the features mentioned here.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: Unregistered copies of System 7 Pack let you use only the first 11 letters of the alphabet for Command-key shortcuts.

Registration Fee: $$$

Tips & Techniques: This program works by changing the Finder, an action that will definitely send antivirus programs into a tizzy. *So be sure to turn all antivirus utilities off before you use System 7 Pack*. If you don't, the result could be a corrupted Finder and a Mac that won't start. You might also want to save a copy of your Finder to a floppy, just in case you need to restore it.

System 7 Pack
Adam Stein
c/o Insanely Great Software
126 Calvert Ave. E.
Edison, NJ 08820
AOL: AdamStein
CIS: 71140,2051
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: 7PACK.CPT

Texx

One of the glories of System 7 is a feature called Apple Events. These are essentially a form of electronic mail—but instead of messages flying between people or computers, all the schmoozing is taking place between open applications and the Finder. The process of generating this conversation is called *scripting*. AppleScript and Userland Frontier are two commercial Apple Events scripting programs, but there's also a shareware equivalent: Texx, by Jose Aguirre.

Texx is actually a partial Mac implementation of Rexx, a scripting tool used on IBM's VM/CMS mainframe operating system. Texx's scripting language resembles Pascal and HyperTalk. It will cause little difficulty even for nonprogrammers, although familiarity with at least HyperTalk would be a boon.

The goal of scripting is to create Texx *execs*. You create execs in a simple standard window, where you type in Texx commands and then save the script as a file. Here's a simple example of a script you might find useful.

```
/* This will empty the trash */
ADDRESS 'Finder';
EMPTY TRASH;
```

You could save this as EmptyTrash.exec, and place the file at a convenient location on the desktop. Double-click it to empty the trash—it could save you a trip to the Finder's Special menu. You can also place execs on the Texx Exec menu and run them from there by choosing them.

You may also want to create two automatic execs, Profile.exec and Shutdown.exec, that run everytime you run or quit Texx. It's a way to set up your computing environment. For example, in Profile.exec you might include scripting commands that open certain applications or documents whenever you start Texx.

Texx supports all Finder events as defined in the Apple Event Registry (Version 1.0), the four required Apple Events, and the Do Script event.

Texx does not have the attractive interface or ease of use you'd enjoy with either AppleScript or Userland Frontier. But it's quite amazing that a shareware author has tackled such a considerable undertaking with such success. You should definitely give it a try before you buy.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7; 4Mb or more of RAM.
Limitations: None
System 7: Required
Registration Fee: $$
Tips & Techniques: Place Texx in the Startup Items folder if you want the program (and the Profile.exec file) to run automatically at start-up.

Texx
Jose Aguirre
3704 Edgar Park
El Paso, TX 79904
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: TEXX.SEA

TrashAlias

There's probably no more popular feature in System 7 than the ability to create aliases. That popularity is directly reflected in the number of programs described in this chapter that help you handle aliases. But beware—orphaned aliases can clutter up your hard disk and clog the Finder's arteries. TrashAlias is a System extension that prevents that congestion by automatically deleting the aliases of any files you trash. You simply drop TrashAlias in your System folder and forget about it, and it does all the work.

TrashAlias was discussed in the January 1992 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.
Limitations: None
Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: For other trashy tidbits, see also Basura and Trash Chute in this chapter.

TrashAlias
Maurice Volaski
173 Princeton Ave. Apt. #2
Amherst, NY 14226-5006
Internet: volaski@contra.med.buffalo.edu
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: TRASHA.CPT

Trash Chute

Most people grow tired of having to choose the Empty Trash command to truly trash a file. Just dragging it to the trash should be enough. It's as though you've carried your household trash can curbside, only to discover you now have to cart it off to the landfill yourself. This added step is actually a good idea, though: It can save you from deleting a file by mistake, by giving you the opportunity to reconsider. But if that's not your style, Trash Chute is a drag-and-drop System 7 miniapplication that you won't find too trashy.

You can use Trash Chute in several ways. One is to put Trash Chute in the Startup Items folder, and place an alias to the program on the desktop next to the trash. In this setup, Trash Chute runs in the background and automatically empties the trash every time the Mac starts or restarts. Another way is to drag files to the alias, and it will delete them instantly. You can also just place the original Trash Chute program on the desktop and forget about the Startup Items folder. The trash won't be emptied at start-up, but you can still drag files to the icon and send them off to electronic oblivion. However you use the program, be sure to obtain version 2.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: Watch out—if you drag an alias to Trash Chute, the original file is deleted, not the alias!

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: I don't recommend keeping Trash Chute in the Start-up Items folder. Automatically trashing files at start-up may sound like a good idea (that's the way it worked under System 6, after all), but consider this: The Mac and some programs sometimes place temporary files in the trash if there has been a crash. With those files you may be able to recover documents you were working on when the Mac crashed. But if Trash Chute automatically empties the trash at every restart, you can kiss those files good-bye.

Obliterate, a drag-and-drop utility by Rob Gibson, immediately deletes all files and folders dragged onto it. There's even an optional "shredding" facility

to make files totally unrecoverable—a feature that's sure to delight security fanatics (not to mention paranoiacs). It's available as file OBLITE.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum. See the entry for Obliterate in Chapter 14.

TrashMan, by Dan Walkowski, also automatically empties the trash, but only removes files that have aged beyond a certain date. However, I don't trust applications that take over control of such a vital action. The very idea gives *me* the heebie-jeebies, but if you're made of sterner stuff, you can give TrashMan a try. It's available in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support forum as file TRAMAN.CPT.

See also the entry for Basura in this chapter.

Trash Chute
Melissa Rogers
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: TRASH7.SIT

WindowWizard

Switching among open applications became more difficult under System 7: we've already discussed that in a couple of other entries in this chapter (Just-Click and ProSwitch). You can no longer click the application icon in the menu bar to cycle through open applications, as you can with MultiFinder and System 6. What could Apple have been thinking of? We'll probably never know, but instead of fretting about the unfathomable, we can be off to see the Wizard—with Eric de la Musse's WindowWizard, a slick application-switching extension from France. And what a wonderful Wizard it is.

WindowWizard adds a pop-up menu that you access by clicking the middle of the title bar in any window, as shown in Figure 11.6. The pop-up menu lists all open windows and applications. The windows of the current application appear at the top of the menu, and programs in the background are listed below the first group. Submenus branching off the program names let you choose exactly what window of the application you want to access. Both groups can be sorted alphabetically. The bottom of the pop-up menu lets you change preferences or see the About box.

The options you can control include hiding applications as you switch (this helps prevent screen clutter and confusion) and the method of activating the pop-up menu. You can configure the extension so that you must hold down a modifier key (Command, Option, Shift, or Control) to display the menu. You can also change the hot spot that you click; it can be the entire bar or even the whole screen.

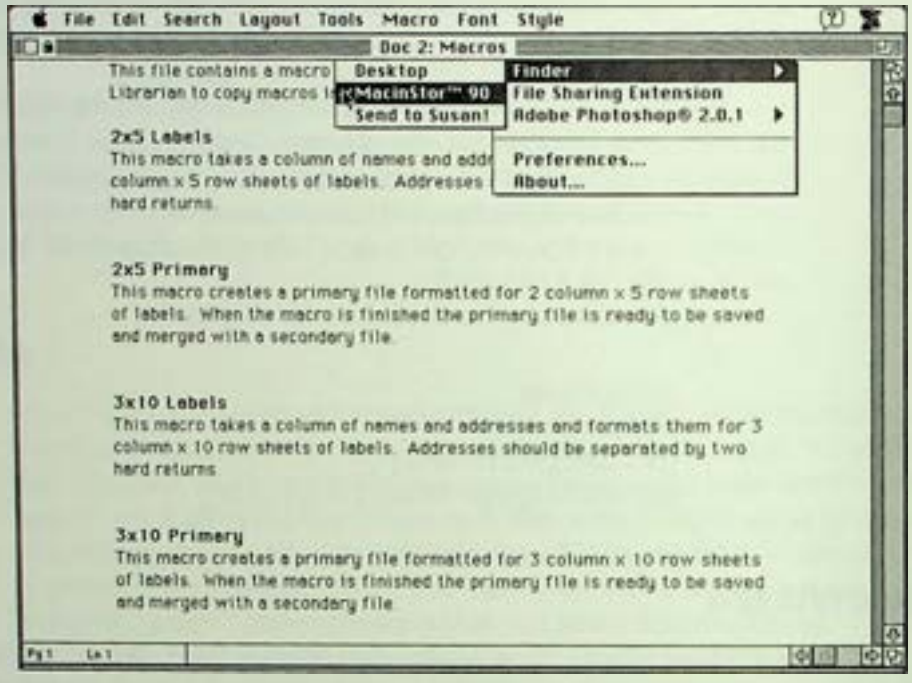


Figure 11.6
Switching windows and applications with WindowWizard

WindowWizard is indeed wonderful, and you should try it out. It accelerates application switching and offers a lot more power than System 7's standard pull-down menu. So pop up, don't pull down. Look for version 1.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: After 30 days, unregistered copies will display only four windows in the pop-up menu. The documentation is a little confusing in places because of improper or stilted English.

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: For other alternatives, see JustClick and ProSwitch earlier in this chapter. WindowWizard is especially nice, though, because it lets you navigate to specific open windows within an application, and not just whatever window happens to be on top, as is the case with these other two extensions.

WindowWizard
Eric de la Musse
8, rue de l'Église
75015 Paris
France
CIS: 100022,611
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: WINWIZ.CPT

ZMakeAlias

A ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive

To create aliases in System 7, you must be in the Finder. Even the other alias utilities discussed in this chapter, such as AKA and Nom de Plume, force you to do the dirty deed at the Finder level or within the utility itself. ZMakeAlias, on the other hand, lets you create an alias for a document from within that document's application. ZMakeAlias is a System extension that adds a Make Alias button to the Macintosh's standard Save and Save As dialog boxes. You select the file you want to alias, and then click the button. The ZMakeAlias dialog appears, prompting you for an alias name (the selected file's name is automatically entered) and location. You can either choose a location or use the Skip to Folders pop-up menu in the dialog. This menu lets you save the alias instantly to the System folder, the Apple Menu Items folder, or a third folder you can add to the menu.

ZMakeAlias was commissioned by *MacUser* and is one of the many ZiffNet/Mac Exclusives mentioned at the beginning of this chapter. The program was discussed in the December 1991 issue of *MacUser*. The name, by the way, puns on ZMac, the common nickname for ZiffNet/Mac. Make sure you obtain version 1.31 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: None

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: See also Alias Director, AKA, and Nom de Plume in this chapter.

ZMakeAlias
Mike Throckmorton
2120 Ardenne Drive
Ann Arbor, MI 48105
CIS: 72220,1611
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ZMAKEA.SIT

CHAPTER

12

System Enhancements

Alias
AltCDEF
AltWDEF
Apollo
AutoMenus
Carpetbag
Colorize
CursorAnimator
DesktopFolder
DiskSwitch
Easy KEYS
Escapade
Façade
Front&Center
GooPanel
IconWrap
init cdev 3.0
Kolor
Layout
MaxAppleZoom
MenuKey
MFMenu+
MICN
MountEm
Oasis
Out to Launch!
PopChar
RamDisk+
Scroll2
SoftwareFPU
SoundMaster
SuperClock
Switch-A-Roo
TearOFFS
UnScrolly
WindowShade

IF YOU HAVEN'T UPGRADED TO SYSTEM 7, YOU MAY HAVE EXPERIENCED A touch of system envy as you read Chapter 11. Or perhaps you've been drooling over the new System 7-only software, both commercial and shareware, currently popping up like wildflowers. But there's no reason to feel deprived or left behind. In the case of System extensions, there's plenty of general-use software that works on System 7 and on earlier versions of the Mac operating system. Some of these files bring System 7 features to Macs running under System 6 or earlier (see Appendix C). What's more, some of the programs in this chapter don't work at all on System 7 Macs. So if you feel the need to bask in the warm, self-satisfied glow of exclusivity, you might even smugly call these programs "System 6-only." Turnabout is fair play.

This chapter includes a wide range of small programs that let you change the way your Mac desktop works or looks. Most of the software comes in the form of System extensions (see the introduction to Chapter 11 for information on this category of program). You'll find programs that let your System 6 Mac create aliases, or that improve the sluggish Control Panel DA. One extension brings Windows-like sticky menus (menus that stay pulled down when you click them); and another adds new controls to windows and scroll bars. There's a Finder replacement tucked in here, as well as alternatives to the Apple programs Key Caps and Alarm Clock. You'll spot shareware substitutes for commercial font/DA programs such as Suitcase, and for application launchers such as OnCue or HandOff. There's even a program that helps you manage System extensions and avoid the conflicts and crashes those types of programs sometimes bring to the Mac.

So if something about your Mac just isn't quite right, there's probably a program in this chapter that will help bring the Mac up to your specs in appearance, behavior, or both.

Alias

One of System 7's most useful features is its ability to create aliases to other files. But guess what—you can bring this same capability to your System 6 Mac with a helping hand from Alias, a clever utility by Richard Harvey.

To create an alias, you double-click the Alias icon. The program prompts you through a standard file dialog to choose an application in any folder on your disk. Double-click the application name, and Alias asks for the location of Alias Shell. Navigate through the dialog to find this file and double-click it. Alias then creates the alias and asks you where you want to place it. The spot you choose can be anywhere you please: another folder, the root level of a hard disk, or the desktop—it's entirely up to you. (Just remember that the whole point of an alias is convenience, so place it where it is more convenient to reach than the original application.) When you double-click the new alias

icon, Alias reaches back into the original folder and starts your program; you don't have to go hunting through folders.

Alias isn't quite as simple as choosing a Make Alias menu command, but it's not particularly difficult, either. It only creates aliases of applications (whereas the System 7 feature can alias anything you can point to), but that's what most people use aliases for, anyway. In short, System 6 users will love Alias, and they reap the added benefit of avoiding the cardinal sin of Envy. Now *that's* software! Look for version 1.0.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac using System 6.0x.

Limitations: Only creates aliases of applications (no documents). System 6 aliases created with this program are 3 to 4 times larger than System 7 aliases, and they tend to weigh in at 6 to 8k, as opposed to 2k.

System 7: Alias is compatible, but unnecessary because System 7 has a superior alias feature built in.

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: For other software that can mimic System 7 features on System 6 Macs, see Appendix C.

Alias
Richard Harvey
1710 Sam Bass Rd. #101
Denton, TX 76205
CIS: 75410,3650
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ALIAS.SIT

AltCDEF

In this age of carpal tunnel syndrome, anything you can do to minimize awkward mouse and keyboard movements is probably a plus. Take the standard scroll bars that frame most windows on the Mac: They're a handy way to navigate around a page or through a document, but the movement arrows are pretty far apart, even on a compact Mac's 9-inch screen. It's annoying to have to mouse around just to reverse directions. With Alexander Colwell's AltCDEF control panel extension, you don't have to. AltCDEF changes the standard scroll bar arrows so that they are bidirectional. Instead of a single arrow pointing up or down, left or right, the arrow boxes contain two arrows, as shown in Figure 12.1. You can move in either direction from the same arrow box, by clicking the appropriate arrow. If you hold the Option key as you click an arrow, the arrow's direction is reversed.

In addition to giving you better arrow control, AltCDEF modifies the way the gray area of the scroll bar functions. Normally, if you click in the gray area between the two arrows, the window scrolls by one window's worth. With AltCDEF, you can hold down Shift and scroll one line at a time. A variety of modifier keys lets you perform other similar tricks with the scroll bar. There's also a "ghosting" option that lets you see where the scroll box was before you moved it; this visual clue lets you jump back to your previous location.

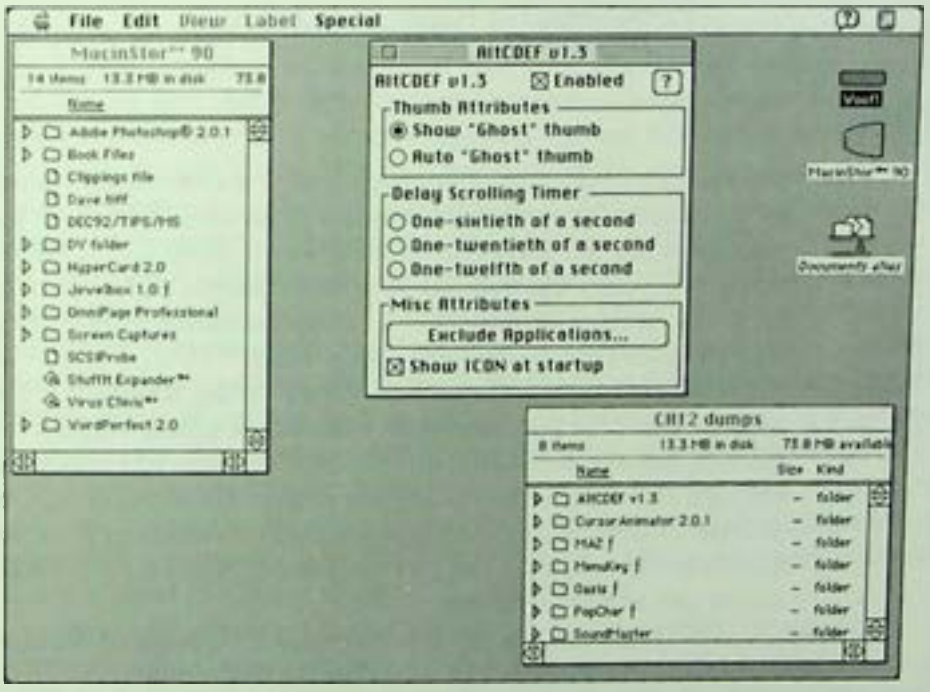


Figure 12.1
Power scrolling with AltCDEF

The program supports an Exclude Applications option that lets you turn AltCDEF off for particular programs (see the *Limitations* section below). You can also press Option as you open any window to disable AltCDEF for that specific window.

AltCDEF was discussed in the October 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.3 or later, especially if you are using System 7.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0.3 or later.

Limitations: Won't work with some applications (for example, Excel and MacWrite).

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: If AltCDEF doesn't work with your favorite applications, check out Scroll2, a similar window enhancer discussed later in this chapter.

AltCDEF
Alexander Colwell
520 Avenue B #4
Redondo Beach, CA 90277
CIS: 73227,1267
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ALTCDE.SIT

AltWDEF

The Minimize button in Windows is a nifty way to cut down on desktop clutter. It reduces any application window to an icon. If you are juggling several open windows, this feature is an ideal way to keep things from becoming confusing. Alexander Colwell, the Mac community's own wizard of windows (see the previous entry on AltCDEF), brings the minimizing feature to the Mac with his AltWDEF control panel extension.

AltWDEF adds a Shrink button next to the standard zoom box of every window. Click the button to shrink the active window down to an icon the size of a postage stamp, and double-click the icon to restore the window to full size. This extension also lets you change the alignment of the title in the title bar (to left-, center-, or right-justified), so whether your window politics lean to the left, right, or the conventional center, you will find this extension a useful way to let you be you.

AltWDEF was discussed in the April 1991 issue of *MacUser.*

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0.3 or later.

Limitations: Won't work with some applications (for example, Excel and MicroPhone II). It can corrupt HyperCard stacks that use Reports.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Two versions of AltWDEF (1.4.4 and 1.5.3) are usually bundled together, because there are minor incompatibilities with some software that one version or the other avoids. Try 1.5.3 first. If it doesn't work properly with your favorite applications, give 1.4.4 a try.

If minimizing windows appeals to you, also check out WindowShade, discussed separately in this chapter, for yet another approach. This extension "rolls up" the main part of any window, leaving only the title bar. If you are using System 7, WindowWizard (see Chapter 11) is a menu-based approach to window management that you might prefer.

AltWDEF
Alexander Colwell
520 Avenue B #4
Redondo Beach, CA 90277
CIS: 73227,1267
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ALTWDE.SIT

Apollo

As you collect programs, especially on a hard drive, you will quickly begin to notice how much of a drag it is to click your way through folders to start a particular program. Under System 7 you can, of course, place aliases within easy reach, but your desktop many soon become Alias Alley, with alias icons littering the landscape. There's a way around this mess, whether you're locked into System 6 or 7. Blast off with Apollo, a shareware application launcher similar to commercial products such as OnCue or HandOff.

Apollo is an extension you place in your System folder (or the Extensions folder under System 7). Once installed, Apollo provides you with a pop-up menu of applications and documents. Choose any item, and it's as if you had double-clicked the file's icon in the Finder. Applications start and documents open. If you use System 7, there's an optional companion application called Eagle that lets you open folders and control panels, too. You can attach documents to specific applications as submenus. You can even assign a default document to an application, so that every time you start the application with Apollo, it automatically opens that document. That can be a handy way to force a word processor to use a favorite template.

You add applications and documents to the Apollo pop-up menu through a Configure command with which you navigate around your hard disk and select the files you want. If you have tons of programs, the Apollo menu can become crowded and unwieldy, so you can create group menu items and organize files under these groups. The files appear as submenus branching off from the group name. To access the pop-up menu, you have several options: pressing a special keystroke when you click the mouse button, moving the pointer to a certain area of the screen, clicking on an icon in the menu bar, and so on.

Advanced options let you control the screen color (black and white, 16 colors, or 256 colors) and the speaker volume for a specific application. For example, if you keep your monitor ordinarily set to 16 colors, but always want it set to 256 colors when you start Adobe Photoshop, Apollo makes the switch a snap—you don't have to call up the Monitors control panel every

time. There's also an Exclude Application feature so you can turn Apollo off in applications where it does not work properly.

Version 0.8b2 (the one available as this book is written) is a freeware test version, but seems quite stable. The author intends to charge a shareware fee when he launches the polished release version of the program.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 4.1 or later. This extension probably doesn't make any sense unless you have a hard disk.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: If you are not running System 7, you do not need to install the Eagle application included with Apollo. Even with System 7, Eagle isn't absolutely necessary. All it does is let you open control panel extensions and folders from Apollo's launch menu. If you don't want that ability, don't bother installing Eagle in the Startup Items folder as suggested in the documentation. If you do install Eagle, be aware that you'll have to quit it whenever you install fonts, because all applications must be closed before you can add fonts to the System. Then you'll have to remember to start Eagle again afterwards.

You can quickly build a group in the Apollo pop-up menu by placing all the files intended for that group into the same folder. Choose Apollo's Configure command to navigate to that folder, so that the files all appear in the Configure dialog's left window. Click the Build Group button, and Apollo builds a group with the name of the folder. All the folder's contents appear as submenus.

For other application launchers, see Easy KEYS, MFMenu+, and Out to Launch! later in this chapter.

Apollo
Jeremy Roussak
Whitecroft, 40 Cross Road, Bushey
Watford WD1 4DQ
England
Internet: jeremyr@dcs.qmw.ac.uk
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: APOLLO.CPT

AutoMenus

A handy feature found in the Windows interface is drop-down ("sticky") menus. These are menus that remain pulled down even when you release the mouse button. Some Mac applications provide a somewhat similar capability. For example, Microsoft Word lets you pull down menus from the keyboard by pressing Command-Tab and then the arrow keys to select a menu. Once selected, the menu stays down until you choose something or press Escape.

AutoMenus brings Windows-like sticky menus to the Mac, no matter what application you're in.

AutoMenus is a control panel extension that you install in your System folder, or in the Control Panels folder under System 7. Once AutoMenus is in place, whenever you move the pointer over a menu name, the menu automatically drops down. You don't even have to click unless you configure the extension to require a mouse click. You have full control over how long the pointer has to remain over the menu name before AutoMenus activates the menu. This lets you set a delay so that you don't accidentally pull down a menu if you casually stray into its "air space." When you move the pointer off a pulled down menu, the menu normally remains visible until you choose a command or dismiss the menu with a mouse click. You can also set the extension to automatically release menus after a set interval.

If you find that AutoMenus doesn't work well with a particular program, you can disable it on the fly by pressing a hot key that you define. This lets you turn the extension off without digging through your control panels.

If ordinary Mac menus make you manic, check out AutoMenus. It's cheaper than analysis and safer than sedatives. Look for version 5.52 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Stops functioning after 25 restarts of your Mac, until you register and obtain a password that unlocks it.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: AutoMenus is a wonderful extension for people who are physically disabled and may have problems using the mouse to select menus. Michael Conrad, the AutoMenus author, recognizes this and doesn't require these users to pay the registration fee. Michael will send you the password free of charge. Thanks, Michael!

By the way, if you are a person who is disabled and finds handling the mouse difficult, also check out Easy Access. This small control panel extension makes mouse use easier, and even lets you move the pointer around the screen entirely from the keyboard. You will find Easy Access on one of the System disks that come with every Mac.

AutoMenus can also be a boon to PowerBook owners, since maneuvering that trackball on a menu can be challenging.

AutoMenus
Michael Conrad
955 Escalon Avenue #505
Sunnyvale, CA 94086
AOL: MichaelC50
CIS: 73457,426

GEnie: M.CONRAD1
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: AUTOME.CPT

Carpetbag

Carpetbag? No, it has nothing to do with Reconstruction. Carpetbag is a low-end clone of Suitcase, the popular commercial extension that lets you load fonts, DAs, and FKEYs from folders other than the System folder (where such files normally reside in one form or another). If you have scads of such files or frequently need to change the fonts, DAs, and so forth that you use, you probably don't want to dig through your System folder each time. Programs such as Carpetbag, Suitcase, and MasterJuggler make that hunt unnecessary. Carpetbag doesn't offer all the bells and whistles of the two commercial programs mentioned, but it does have the distinct advantage of being a lot less expensive.

Carpetbag is a control panel extension that opens all the font, DA, and FKEY files located in any folders you select. You configure the extension in its main window, by simply adding or removing folders in Carpetbag's list with the appropriate buttons. Whenever you make changes to the extension's list, you must restart the Mac for the changes to take effect (this step isn't necessary with Suitcase or MasterJuggler). You can view your Carpetbag configuration in a variety of ways: by the folders where the files are located, or by the relevant files themselves.

Carpetbag is an elegant and extremely popular solution to System folder clutter. Look for version 1.2.3 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6 or higher; MultiFinder or System 7 recommended.

Limitations: You must restart the Mac every time you make changes to Carpetbag. Does not resolve font ID conflicts.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Carpetbag
James W. Walker
3200 Heyward St.
Columbia, SC 29205
CIS: 76367,2271
Internet: walkerj@math.scarolina.edu
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: CARPET.CPT

Colorize

The Apple Human Interface Guidelines are a collection of advice and suggestions to developers and programmers for making programs as user-friendly and as true to the Macintosh interface as possible. But not every user cottons to that consistent look and feel. If you have a color Macintosh and want to commit outrages against the Apple guidelines, or just need to express yourself, Colorize can make you a veritable Ted Turner, as you infuse classic black-and-white Mac applications with all the colors of the rainbow.

When you first start it, the Colorize program prompts you for an application (or, under System 7, you can drag an application onto the Colorize icon). Once you've done that, the main Colorize window lets you select and modify various elements of the application's windows, dialogs, controls (scroll bars, for example), and menu bar. These elements include text, backgrounds, the Close Box, title bars, and more. Once you've selected something to splash some paint on, the standard System color wheel appears. You simply point to a color you like, or you can enter colors in percentages of red, green, and blue—paint by number, if you will.

Once you've changed everything you want to change, click Cancel in the main window and once again in the Open dialog. If you ever rue the hues and yearn for simpler, less colorful days, just select the application again in Colorize's opening dialog and click Remove All. The added colors will fade faster than cheap madras. Look for version 3.01 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with a color monitor.

Limitations: Doesn't make global changes; you create color schemes on an application-by-application basis.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: Instead of selecting one element, using the color picker, and then returning to the main window to select another aspect, you can select the general category heading (window colors, dialog colors, control colors, or menu bar colors) and then just cycle through every aspect (text, Close Box, content, border, and so on) of that category.

For another approach to colorizing your desktop, see also Kolor in this chapter.

Colorize
Neal Trautman
3312 Sherwood Drive
Lawrence, KS 66049
CIS: 75116,432
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: COLORZ.SIT

CursorAnimator

The cursors you saw on the first Macs were static and, of course, strictly black and white. As more powerful Macs appeared and the Mac interface matured, Apple introduced animated cursors: rotating watches, finger-counting hands, and spinning beach balls. But you only see these cursors when you're waiting for the Mac to finish some task. What about the rest of the time? CursorAnimator can enliven the various cursors you'll encounter on the Mac desktop and in applications.

CursorAnimator is a control panel extension that brings animation and color to all the basic system cursors, even the lowly, omnipresent pointer arrow. The control panel's window displays a ten-cell grid, as shown in Figure 12.2. Above the grid are the five system cursors: arrow pointer, watch, text insertion (I-beam), cross hairs, and plus sign. To change any of them, drag a replacement from the scrolling list in the lower part of the window to one of the grid cells directly below the cursor you want to change. The top five cells control the appearance of the cursor with the mouse button up; the lower five cells control the cursor with the mouse button down. Now, whenever you would normally see the usual system-supplied cursor, the new one displays instead. To return to the default system cursor, simply drag its icon from above the grid into the appropriate cell, which will become grayed.

Figure 12.2
Putting some life into your cursor with CursorAnimator

Fifteen new cursors come installed in CursorAnimator, including a beating heart, rainbow arrow, rotating Apple logo, blinking traffic signal, a tail-wagging puppy—you get the picture. The extension also comes with over 50 other cursors you can import into the control panel. You'll even find one or two designed just for lefties. There are also complete instructions on how to create your own cursors in Apple's resource editor, ResEdit, but that sort of tinkering is definitely not a prerequisite to enjoying the benefits of this extension.

CursorAnimator is one of the most popular pieces of Mac shareware ever. What's more, it's basically free. The authors ask only that you send them a postcard of your hometown. CursorAnimator features on-line documentation and supports balloon help under System 7. Owners of black-and-white Macs won't see the colors, but the animated cursors are still entertaining. Look for version 2.0.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0 or later; color monitor recommended.

Limitations: Animated color cursors can cause unexpected behavior or memory problems; custom cursors may not show up in some applications (especially Microsoft programs).

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: Postcard

Tips & Techniques: If your only interest is in enlivening the pointer, try Color Cursor by Matthias Urlichs. It's available as file CCURSO.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum. It requires a color Mac.

A ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive

Those of you having more pragmatic considerations might want to consider some more practical cursor-related extensions. CursorBeacon is a ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive (see the introduction to Chapter 11 for an explanation of Exclusives). It will be of special interest to those with PowerBooks or large monitors. The cursor can sometimes become "lost" on the PowerBook's LCD screen or on a cluttered large monitor. CursorBeacon locates the cursor for you by indicating it with a large, obvious graphic (bull's-eye, blob, and so forth) when you press a certain keystroke. It's available as file CURBEA.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

CursorFix (file CURFIX.CPT in Download and Support), by Dennis Brothers, was developed especially for PowerBook owners to make the slim I-beam or insertion cursor more obvious.

Lefty Cursor (LEFTY.CPT on ZiffNet/Mac), by Mike Stith, simply flips the standard pointer arrow so it feels more natural for left-handed people to use.

Zipple (ZIPPLE.CPT on ZiffNet/Mac) does for the Apple menu what CursorAnimator does for the cursor. Instead of the apple, you can have a revolving globe or other animated icon.

CursorAnimator
Wilhelm Plotz & Alex Falk
Siedlungsstrasse 21
A-4222 St. Georgen a. d. Gusen
Austria
CIS: 100010,501
GEnie: FALK2
Internet: K340950@edvz.uni-linz
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: CURSAN.CPT

DesktopFolder

Mac users often leave files out on the desktop for easy access rather than in a folder. The desktop is a handy spot for documents or applications you use a lot. Unfortunately, under System 6 you can't automatically save files to the desktop. You have to save them to a folder and then move them to the desktop in a separate step. System 7, however, sports a Desktop button, so you can place files on the desktop when you save. In other words, System 7 treats the desktop as if it were just another folder. Pete Gontier's DesktopFolder extension brings this same convenience to System 6 users.

DesktopFolder creates a System 7-like desktop folder that shows up in dialog boxes (it's invisible otherwise). If you save any file to this folder within the standard Save dialog, the file immediately appears on the desktop. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0 through 6.0.7.

Limitations: Must load after the popular PopChar shareware extension (discussed separately in this chapter). To do this, you can rename PopChar to aPopChar, or DesktopFolder to zDesktopFolder, so that PopChar loads first.

System 7: Incompatible, and unnecessary because System 7 has the desktop folder feature built in.

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: The desktop folder created by DesktopFolder is invisible; it appears only within dialog boxes. If you ever decide to remove the extension, you'll soon discover that the invisible folder still haunts your dialogs. To exorcise the folder, you'll need to use a program like Apple's ResEdit or CE Software's Disktop to erase the phantom folder.

Another technique is to make the folder visible. You can then trash it in the normal fashion. There are a number of shareware utilities available that let you make invisible files visible. I recommend Bruce Tomlin's DeskZap DA, available in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum as file DSKZAP.CPT. Scott Fenton's Get More Info is another possibility. It's a System extension that lets you change so-called Finder flags (such as Invisible, Locked, and so on) from within the standard Get Info window. Get More Info is available on ZiffNet/Mac as file GMINFO.CPT. The entry for DeskZap in Chapter 13 discusses both of these utilities.

For other programs that bring some of System 7's features to System 6 Macs, see also Appendix C.

DesktopFolder
Pete Gontier
EC Technology
250 Acalanes Dr. Apt. #2

Sunnyvale, CA 94086-6909
Internet: gurgle@netcom.netcom.com
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: DTFOLD.SIT

DiskSwitch

A ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive

DiskSwitch is a System extension that adds a pop-up menu to the Save/Save As and Open dialog boxes, so you can select and jump to any mounted disk (including file servers) available on the desktop. Normally, in these dialog boxes you have to navigate to the desktop through the folder hierarchy or click the Desktop button. This simple extension saves you a step.

DiskSwitch is a ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive (see the introduction to Chapter 11 for an explanation of Exclusives). It was discussed in the March 1992 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0x or later.
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

DiskSwitch
Mike Throckmorton
2120 Ardenne Dr.
Ann Arbor, MI 48105
CIS: 72220,1611
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: DSKSWT.CPT

Easy KEYS

Easy KEYS, by Kerry Clendinning, is a splendid control panel extension that's basically a subset of a macro program (such as QuicKeys) with just a dash of Suitcase tossed in. It lets you start applications or DAs, open control panel extensions, or run FKEYs. In fact, it's probably the easiest way to use FKEYs, as mentioned in the introduction to Chapter 11—far simpler than installing them with ResEdit.

To use Easy KEYS after you've installed it, open up its control panel and click New. Select the kind of Easy KEY you want to create (application, DA, control panel, or FKEY), choose the appropriate file, and then press the keystroke you want to use to activate the file. You can use any combination of modifier keys (Command, Option, Control, and Shift), plus any key on the keyboard, including the function keys. The file's name and keystroke show up in a scrolling list. Unfortunately, not all the symbols

used to denote the modifier keys are the same ones generally used in most Mac applications, so you may initially have trouble remembering or deciphering the "code."

You'll probably find Easy KEYS combined with an FKEY called Flipper. This FKEY lets you switch to another application even when the current application is displaying a dialog box (normally, you must close the dialog box before you can switch to another program). For example, if you are saving a document in your word processor, but want to create a new folder for it before clicking the Save button in the standard Save dialog, you can activate Flipper (already installed in Easy KEYS, of course). Then switch to the Finder by clicking the application icon on the right of the menu bar (System 6) or by using the Application menu (System 7). Create the folder and then return to the word processor. The Flipper FKEY is a nice fringe benefit that makes Easy KEYS an even better deal.

Easy KEYS has a simple interface that shouldn't cause you any problems. But on-line help is always just a button away if you become confused. Look for version 1.7 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6 or later.

Limitations: The Flipper FKEY that comes with Easy KEYS does not always work properly under System 7.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Easy KEYS won't work or even open unless you manually drag the Easy KEYS Prefs file to your System folder (or, under System 7, place the file in the Preferences folder). Easy KEYS does not automatically create a Preferences file in the System folder the first time you access it, as is often the case with other programs.

If you are mainly interested in FKEYs, explore Adam Stein's FKEY Master (FKMAST.CPT in ZiffNet/Mac). It's another popular FKEY installer that's compatible with both System 6 and System 7. Also, see Carpetbag earlier in this chapter.

For examples of other application launchers, see Apollo, MFMenu+, and Out to Launch! elsewhere in this chapter.

Easy KEYS
Kerry Clendinning
P.O. Box 26061
Austin, TX 78755
CIS: 76424,2214
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: EASYKE.CPT

Escapade

The Mac's graphical interface is a vast improvement in most ways over the command-line interface found on older computers, but the Mac's insistence that you always use the mouse to interact with that interface can be a bit maddening at times. If you're in a dialog box, you frequently have to take your hands away from the keyboard to use the mouse to click a button or check a box. Well, you can escape slavery to that rascally rodent with Christopher Wysocki's Escapade.

Escapade is a control panel extension that helps you keep your hands on the keys. It lets you choose the Cancel button in any dialog by pressing Command-period, Command-Delete, or Escape (hence the name, Escapade). In addition, you can click any push button, radio button, or check box in any dialog from the keyboard. You first select the button or box by cycling through all the ones available. You do this by pressing a keystroke that you define, such as Command-Tab. The currently selected button blinks to indicate that it is selected. You then press the Click keystroke (Command-space, Command-Return, or Command-Enter) to "click" the button. You can also configure Escapade so that you can press Command and the first letter of a button or box, to select it immediately without having to cycle through all the elements in the dialog box. If several buttons start with the same letter, you cycle through just those buttons. Escapade has an Exclude feature that lets you disable the extension or just certain aspects of it when you're working in particular programs.

Escapade was mentioned in the March 1991 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.3.2 or later.

Requirements: Mac Plus or later, with System 4.2 or higher.

Limitations: Doesn't work with Microsoft applications (Word and Excel, for example); I've seen it cause Acius 4th Dimension to quit unexpectedly.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Click the word Escapade in the extension's control panel window to access the on-line help.

If you already have the QuicKeys commercial macro program installed, you probably don't need Escapade. QuicKeys lets you "click" named buttons with its Buttons QuicKeys, and comes packaged with DialogKeys, a separate extension that further enhances dialogs.

Escapade
Christopher Wysocki
(No address available)
AOL: AFC ChrisW
CIS: 72010,1140
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ESCAPA.SIT

Façade

Prior to System 7, those of you wanting to change the default desktop icon of your hard drive generally had to resort to some pretty heady ResEdit tampering, or had to seek out a hard disk formatter that allowed you to select the icon you wanted to use. Greg Marriott of Apple Computer wanted to make the process more flexible, so he developed Façade. Despite its name, this system extension has a welcome beauty that's more than skin deep.

Façade has a number of icon alternatives built in: Calvin, Hobbes, Godzilla, Untitled, and Moof (the cow-dog familiar from the Options window of the Page Setup dialog). Just drop Façade and its companion file, FaçadeIcons, into the System folder and restart the Mac. Then, if you give your hard drive the same name as one of those icons (or any other icon you've installed and named), the drive instantly adopts the named icon. If the five icons provided aren't enough, you can add others to the FaçadeIcons file with ResEdit. If you feel uneasy about using ResEdit, you're stuck with Greg's choices.

Façade was mentioned in the March 1989 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.0.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: You can only use ResEdit to add icons to the collection Façade provides.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Although Façade works well with System 7, look for Visage, as well. This program requires System 7 and is available as file VISAGE.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

Façade
Greg Marriott
3770 Flora Vista #1805
Santa Clara, CA 95051
AOL: JusSomeGuy
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FACADE.SIT

Front&Center

As law students endure The Paper Chase, owners of large screens suffer moving those long, mousey miles to get to an alert or dialog box that typically pops up far from the cursor. Front&Center cuts down on the mileage by forcing some dialogs to show their faces where you want them, not where they've been programmed to appear.

Front&Center is a control panel extension that gives you four ways to center dialogs and alerts: the default setting, within the current screen, within the main screen, or on the cursor. It's the latter setting that most people will find useful, because the next time an alert or dialog appears asking you for input, the cursor will be right on top of things. This is not a spectacular trick, admittedly, but Front&Center helps you avoid a really irritating aspect of having a large monitor.

The extension was mentioned in the March 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 2.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: Can cause erratic dialog behavior on a Quadra.
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $

Front&Center
Pete Helme
(No address available)
CIS: 74316,1622
GEnie: PHELME
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FR0CEN.CPT

GooPanel

Control panels are a necessary part of using a Mac. But under System 6 (as well as earlier System versions), accessing control panels means choosing the Control Panel DA from the Apple menu, and then waiting, waiting, waiting. The DA takes a long time to load, in part because it's building a scrolling list of icons for every control panel extension in the System folder. Then you have to select the icon of the control panel you want to open, and wait some more for it to appear in the DA's window. System 7 did away with the DA in favor of a simple Control Panels folder you can open from the Apple menu, and control panel extensions are simply files you can double-click to open. GooPanel is a utility that brings this System 7 approach to System 6 users.

GooPanel is an application you use instead of the Control Panel DA to access individual control panel extensions. When you start it, you'll see a dialog with two buttons: Go to System Folder and Go to Control Panels Folder (see Figure 12.3). The second button assumes you've gathered all your control panels together into a subfolder within the System folder, to mimic the System 7 arrangement. I don't recommend this, however, because many System 6 control panels won't operate properly if they are not loose in the System folder. Instead, click Go to System Folder, and you'll be presented with a list of installed control panel extensions. Double-click the control panel you

want to open, and it will open in its own window, just as it does in System 7. It's lightning fast, at least when compared with the Control Panel DA.

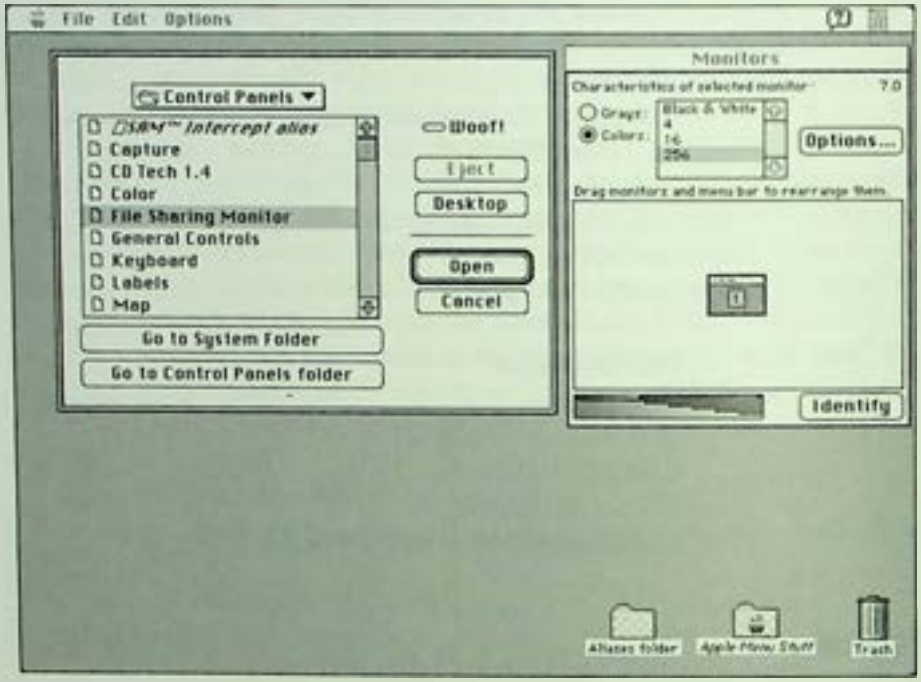


Figure 12.3
GooPanel replaces the System 6 Control Panel DA

You can also install an optional extension called GooPanel INIT that will let you double-click a control panel in the System folder and have it open in GooPanel. This extension is not necessary to use the GooPanel application by itself.

GooPanel was mentioned in the June 1991 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.0a8 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0.5 or later.

Limitations: Incompatible with SoundMaster, SCSI Probe 2.03, UnScrolly, and the Apple Monitors control panel prior to version 4.3.

System 7: Compatible, but System 7 already has GooPanel's functionality built in.

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: If you need to access your control panels frequently, leave GooPanel on the desktop in a convenient spot. That's easier than rooting around in your folder for it.

Check out UnScrolly (in this chapter) for another approach to improving the System 6 Control Panel DA.

For other ways to make System 6 behave more like System 7, see Appendix C.

GooPanel
Steve Bollinger
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: GOOPAN.SEA

IconWrap

Most extensions display a small icon at the bottom of the screen when they load at start-up. If you have a battalion of extensions, the icons march like obedient soldiers right off the right side of the screen where they can no longer be seen. That's not necessarily a problem, but if you can see the icons, you can know exactly what's loading and in what order. The IconWrap extension does exactly what its name implies: If the start-up icons reach the edge of the screen, IconWrap forces them to hup, one, two into a new row. It's not a blockbuster of a program, but it's useful to extension junkies. Look for version 1.2 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

IconWrap
Ken McLeod
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ICONWR.CPT

init cdev 3.0

The introduction to Chapter 11 raised the issue of extension and INIT conflicts, and the best ways to manage a System folder full of extensions. For System 6 users, the most popular extensions manager is John Rotenstein's init cdev 3.0.

The init cdev 3.0 extension resides in the System folder. You access it in one of two ways: by pressing the mouse button or the spacebar at start-up (to control which extensions will load for that session), or through the Control Panel DA (to control which extensions will load the next time you start the Mac). However you open it, init cdev 3.0 displays a simple list of all the extensions in the System folder. If the extension name is highlighted, it's active; if

it's not highlighted, it's disabled. You can turn an extension on and off by simply clicking its name in the list. There are buttons that let you turn all of the extensions on or off at once. You can also disable all extensions at start-up by pressing the zero key (this feature is similar to holding the Shift key down during start-up in System 7). And you can define a minimum set of extensions (perhaps the ones you just absolutely cannot live without), and load only this set at start-up by holding down the Tab key.

The December 1989 issue of *MacUser* discussed init cdev 3.0. It's reliable and simple to use.

Requirements: Any Mac running System 6 or earlier.

Limitations: None

System 7: Incompatible

Registration Fee: Postcard

Tips & Techniques: For a System 7–compatible extensions manager, see Extensions Manager in Chapter 11.

init cdev 3.0
John Rotenstein
P.O. Box 165
Double Bay NSW 2028
Australia
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: INIT30.SIT

Kolor

The Apple Color control panel doesn't let you do a lot. You can change the color of highlighted text (the default is black) and the basic window color scheme, but that's all. Enter Kolor with a *K*, an outstanding freeware offering from Russ Wetmore that considerably enhances the palette you have to work with.

Kolor is a control panel extension that replaces the Apple control panel of almost the same name. Kolor lets you customize your Mac with just about any color scheme you want. You can change nearly every aspect of Mac screen controls (buttons, check boxes, and scroll bars), including borders, backgrounds, text, lines, and title bars. You can also change windows, menus, and the highlighting colors. Simply select what you want to change in Kolor's intuitive control panel window, and choose the color in the standard Apple Color Picker that appears. If the results are unexpectedly hideous, you can always restore the default factory settings by pressing Option as you click the Kolor icon in the scrolling list of the Control Panel.

Kolor is not compatible with System 7, but Mac owners who haven't upgraded will find Kolor indispensable. It was mentioned in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser* and the February 21, 1989, issue of *MacWEEK*.

Version 1.0 is the only authorized version available (see the Tips & Techniques section below).

Requirements: Any Mac, with color monitor and System 6 or earlier.

Limitations: Global changes only; you can't create specific color schemes for specific applications.

System 7: Incompatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: There is a bogus version of Kolor floating around called Kolor 2.0, which is supposed to be compatible with System 7. It's not by Russ Wetmore (despite the fact that his name is plastered all over it), and you should avoid it at all costs. *It's not safe to use.*

For another way of bringing color to your desktop, see also Colorize in this chapter.

Kolor
Russ Wetmore
101 Los Gatos Blvd.
Los Gatos, CA 95032
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: KOLOR.SIT

Layout

Most Mac users love to tinker with their desktop, customizing the color scheme, modifying windows with extensions, and so on. You can also customize the way the Finder displays the desktop, with Michael O'Connor's Layout, a public domain utility for pre–System 7 Macs.

Layout gives you control over various aspects of the desktop: the default window view (by Name, by Date, and so on), icon spacing (including a snap-to-grid option), and the text formatting and column spacing used in the various window views. This utility also lets you stop windows from zooming open (the animation involved in zooming slows down the Mac), disable the trash warning, and more. In most cases, you make the changes in a very graphical way, for example, by dragging icons or column dividers. You can copy customized Finder settings from one Finder to another, as well as revert to the factory defaults.

Layout was discussed in the November 1989 issue of *MacUser* and the February 13, 1990, issue of *MacWEEK*. Version 1.9 is the public domain version of a commercial program, called Layout Plus, that is distributed with Norton Utilities for the Macintosh from Symantec. Michael O'Connor is also the author of CompuServe Navigator, a popular telecommunications program for the Mac.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6 or earlier.
Limitations: None
System 7: Incompatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: If you are using System 7, see System 7 Pack in Chapter 11. It provides some of Layout's capabilities, but in a System 7–compatible way.

Layout
Mike O'Connor
(No address available)
CIS: 76004,1447
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: LAYOUT.SIT

MaxAppleZoom

MaxAppleZoom (MAZ) reprograms Apple's standard Mac II video card so that it displays a 704 × 512 pixel screen instead of the normal 640 × 480 screen on the 13-inch Apple high-resolution color RGB monitor. What does that mean? It means the wasted, thick black border that usually hems in the desktop on that monitor won't be quite so thick. You recoup some screen real estate for your desktop, where every inch—or, in this case, every pixel—counts. This extension also lets you imitate the Apple 15-inch portrait monitor (with a 900-pixel vertical height).

MAZ's screen enlargement is a great trick, but be forewarned that MAZ is extremely finicky about the hardware configuration it demands. If your hardware isn't what MAZ expects, MAZ is totally worthless. (See the *Requirements* section just below.) It doesn't work for internal video or non-Apple video cards. That means most Mac IIci, IIsi, LC, and Quadra owners, among others, are out of luck.

A troubling aspect of MAZ you're likely to hear about is the MaxAppleZoom Affair, an incident that caused an uproar in the Mac shareware community in 1991. MAZ's author, a Belgian programmer named Naoto Horii, placed a hidden expiration date in the extension so that it would stop functioning on that date. He had intended to provide registered users with unrestricted copies of the program, but due to some hardware problems and other crises, he was unable to do so before the deadline arrived. Unfortunately, Horii never documented the expiration date (for which he does deserve criticism), so people were caught off guard. The day came, of course, and the uproar began. Thousands of people found their desktops suddenly shrunken again. The cause of the problem was quickly circulated, and Horii endured a vilification that's unparalleled in the history of Mac

shareware. Sadly, it's clear that many of the people who were shouting the loudest had never paid the shareware fee.

As soon as possible, Horii released an unprotected version (1.43) and apologized for the whole affair. Unfortunately, version 1.43 is conceivably the last update this invaluable shareware extension will see. Horii has indicated that future updates depend entirely on the sort of response he receives—that is, how many shareware payments are mailed in. Considering that Horii bitterly refers to his "less-than-a-handful registered users (I would be quite ashamed to cite their exact number)" in the MAZ documentation, the outlook isn't good.

MaxAppleZoom was discussed in the July 30, 1991, issue of *MacWEEK*. Make sure you obtain version 1.43.

Requirements: Mac II, with 13-inch Apple high-resolution color RGB monitor, standard Apple color video card (models 4.8 and 8.24 only), and 32-bit Color QuickDraw.

Limitations: Some (especially older) programs may not run reliably with MAZ installed. Incompatible with Apple Display Card 8.24GC. If MAZ doesn't support your card or monitor, it simply refuses to load—there's no crash to worry about.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

MaxAppleZoom
Naoto Horii
B.P. 1415
B-1000 Brussels
Belgium
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MAZ143.SEA

MenuKey

Command key shortcuts (such as Command-W for Close) are great time-savers—if you can remember them! When you're not in command of your Command keys, they don't do you much good. MenuKey takes over if memory falters.

The MenuKey control panel extension displays a small window whenever you press the Command key. This window (see Figure 12.4) lists all the Command-key shortcuts for the current application, saving you the trouble of digging through menus or manuals. You then press the Command key you want, but couldn't remember, and the current program performs the appropriate menu command. You can set a delay interval before MenuKey recognizes the Command-keypress (see *Tips & Techniques* below); you can sort the MenuKey command list by either menu text or Command-key letter;

and you can exclude specific applications so that MenuKey doesn't work in them. MenuKey is a simple idea you won't forget once it's installed. Look for version 1.1 or later.

Figure 12.4
With MenuKey, all your Command-key shortcuts are themselves just a keystroke away

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0.5 or later.

Limitations: Incompatible with MicroPhone II; doesn't work well with Microsoft applications (Word and Excel).

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: MenuKey doesn't work well with graphics programs such as FreeHand, Illustrator, or even MacPaint, which use the Command key to modify the way certain paint or draw tools operate. It helps to set the delay interval to several seconds, so that you have time to use the Command key in the graphics program before MenuKey kicks in and takes control. If that extra-long delay proves too irksome (since you'll have to wait it out in other programs as well), just add the graphics applications to the exclude list and keep the delay interval short.

MenuKey
Richard Harvey

1710 Sam Bass Rd. #101
Denton, TX 76205
CIS: 75410,3650
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MENKEY.SIT

MFMenu+

Under System 6's MultiFinder, you can switch to a specific open application by pulling down the Apple menu and selecting the application's name from the list at the bottom. You can also cycle through all applications in turn by repeatedly clicking the MultiFinder application icon at the right side of the menu bar. It would be handy to be able to do both types of application switching from the same location, and MFMenu+ does just that for System 6 Macs.

MFMenu+ is a System extension. It places an icon to the right of the MultiFinder icon in the menu bar. Click this icon to pull down an application-switching menu; you'll find all open applications listed. You can also access MFMenu+ by pressing a keystroke that you define, and the application list will pop up wherever the cursor is located.

In addition to application switching, MFMenu+ lets you run programs or open documents directly from its menu. You can add applications and attach documents to them in the MFMenu+ list, so that you don't have to rummage around in folders to start a program. If that sounds a lot like commercial programs such as OnCue or HandOff, there's a reason for it. MFMenu+ is the predecessor to the application launcher OnCue, although MFMenu+ bears little resemblance to the most recent incarnation of that popular commercial utility. Look for version 1.3 or later. Earlier versions did not have the application launching features.

Requirements: Any Mac, with System 6 and MultiFinder.

Limitations: None

System 7: Incompatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: For other application launchers, see also Apollo, Easy KEYS, and Out to Launch! in this chapter.

MFMenu+
Fred Reed
c/o IMI Software
121 14th Street
Seal Beach, CA 90740
CIS: 76357,2530
GEnie: FDReed
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MFMENU.SIT

MICN

The Mac menu bar is a popular place. A number of extensions (SuperClock and PopChar, for example) add icons or menus to the menu bar. It can get so crowded that the additions start to overlap or cause other types of problems. MICN comes to the rescue—just drop MICN in your System folder and kiss the menu names good-bye.

MICN (Menu Icons) reclaims menu bar space by replacing the most common menu names (File, Edit, Font, Window, and so forth) with small icons, no matter what application you're in. The control panel interface lets you change the icons that represent the menus. You can also add more menu names to MICN's internal list, so even more menus can put on an iconic face. Look for version 1.2 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: Version 1.2 is distributed with an earlier version's documentation that was obviously never updated. It implies that there is no reason to open the control panel. Don't you believe it. The control panel lets you modify the menus that MICN transmogrifies into icons.

MICN
Mark Valence
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MICN.CPT

MountEm

Hard drives always come with some sort of utility that lets you mount and unmount hard drive volumes on the desktop. But if you have several storage devices attached to your Mac, you may have to use several utilities to mount them all (unless they auto-mount)—especially if they all come from different manufacturers. Bill Steinberg's MountEm will do them all with one simple keystroke.

MountEm is an FKEY that mounts most SCSI hard drive volumes, including removable media such as Syquests. (See Chapter 11 for more about FKEYs.) Pressing Command-Shift-5 immediately mounts any unmounted volumes. It's fast and foolproof—a classic piece of Mac freeware that would definitely make it into the Shareware Halls of Valhalla.

WARNING! *Although MountEm lets you unmount 'em as well (by holding down Control or Caps Lock as you press MountEm's keystroke), don't. If*

an application and document are open when you do this, you run the risk of corrupting both.

This FKEY was discussed in the October 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.7 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac; attached SCSI hard drives.

Limitations: Does not mount remote AppleShare volumes or CD-ROM drives.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: If you're not certain how to install FKEYs, check out the introduction to Chapter 11 and the Easy KEYS entry here in this chapter.

For other types of SCSI utilities, see also SCSI Probe and SCSI Info in Chapter 13.

MountEm
Bill Steinberg
(No address available)
CIS: 76703,1027
GEnie: BillS
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MOUNTE.SIT

Oasis

The Mac is famous for its icon-based interface, but not everyone is as keen on icons as the Mac Orthodox Mother Church. If you've had it up to here with icons and want some relief, you can find asylum in Oasis.

Oasis is an application that replaces the Finder, and essentially strips out the icon metaphor in favor of buttons. When you first run Oasis, it replaces the standard desktop with a blank window (the date and time are displayed in the title bar). You create buttons in this window that run specific applications, documents, DAs, FKEYs, menu commands, and so forth, by drawing them out with the pointer (see Figure 12.5). Buttons can be moved, resized, or deleted. It's a very graphical, Mac-like way to perform the task. Once you've drawn a button, you link it to whatever file you want. From then on, you don't have to dig through folders. You do, however, need to keep your hard drive organized and not move files around, because the buttons expect linked files to be in specific locations.

There's also a Utilities menu for common file-related activities such as copying, deleting, moving, and renaming. You no longer perform these functions by dragging or clicking icons, so everything takes place in standard file dialog boxes. If this all sounds like a step backward in computing ease, try to keep an open mind and check it out. (You can quit to the Finder at any time so you can enjoy both approaches to file management.)

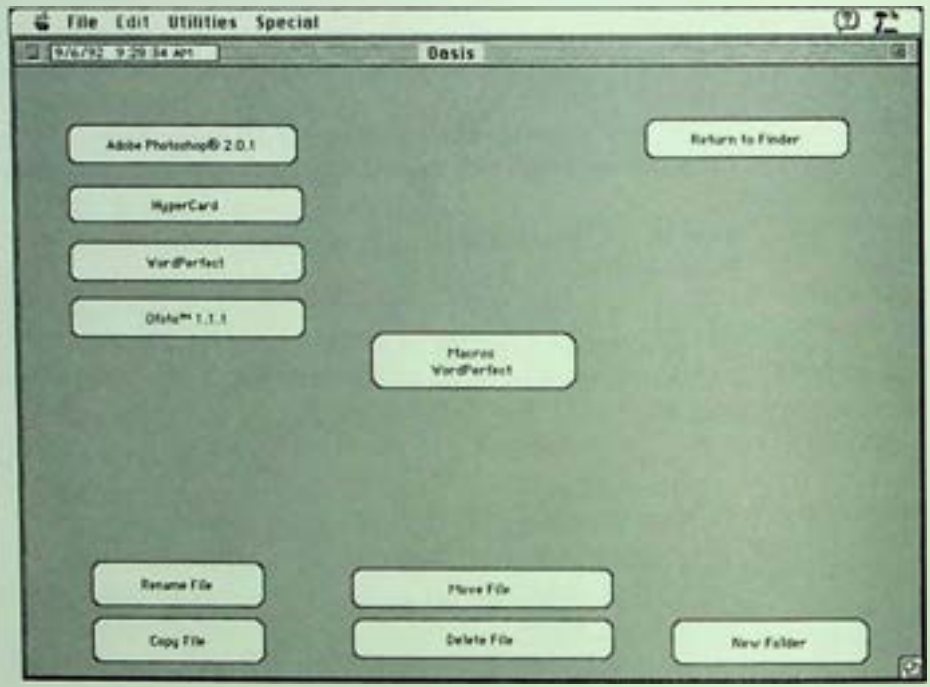


Figure 12.5
Oasis: a Finder replacement

Oasis can be a useful complement or alternative to the Finder and is ideal for people with large hard disks and lots of files. The program appeared in the August 30, 1988, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 2.01 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac running System 6 or earlier; supports color on a Mac II.

Limitations: None

System 7: Incompatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Use the System 6 Set Startup command (under the Special menu if you are running Finder) to make Oasis run automatically at start-up. See the manuals that came with your Mac if you don't know how to do this.

Oasis
Jan Eugenides
P.O. Box 151
Maynard, MA 01754
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: OASIS.SIT

Out to Launch!

Digging through folders just to run an application is a nuisance, so it's not surprising that a number of shareware and commercial application launching alternatives have made their mark. One is Out to Launch! (OTL!) by Mike Throckmorton. In addition to being a delightful pun, this software is a practical way to make working with the Mac even easier. (We'll cover several other application launchers in this chapter; see the *Tips & Techniques* section just below.)

Out to Launch! is an FKEY (see the introduction to Chapter 11 for an explanation of FKEYs) that displays a scrolling, customizable list of applications when you press the FKEY's assigned keystroke. Select an application in the list and click Launch. The application will be up and running in no time—and you don't have to remember what folder the application is hiding in.

Unlike many of the FKEYs mentioned in this book, OTL! comes with its own installer. You don't have to use ResEdit or an FKEY manager. Just double-click the OTL! icon, and the installer program leads you by the hand through the process.

Once the FKEY and some associated files are installed, you press the magic keystroke and begin adding whatever applications you want to the OTL! list. You can attach documents to programs so that they open and even print automatically when you run the application from the FKEY. You can also use OTL! to link documents to applications other than the creating one. For example, if you have a MacWrite document, but not MacWrite, you can configure OTL! to use the word processor you do have installed to open MacWrite files when they're double-clicked.

Out to Launch! was mentioned in the January 1992 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.2.6 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0.4 or later.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Disable antivirus software before you attempt to install Out to Launch!, or you may encounter some problems.

For examples of other application launchers, see Apollo, Easy KEYS, and MFMenu+, also in this chapter.

Out to Launch!
Mike Throckmorton
2120 Ardenne Dr.
Ann Arbor, MI 48105
CIS: 72220,1611
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: OUTLAN.CPT

PopChar

Remembering that Option-Shift-4 is the keystroke for a simple right arrow in the Zapf Dingbats font isn't particularly easy. The Apple Key Caps DA can help you find the right key in such a situation, but the DA is awkward and suffers from several shortcomings. It doesn't display all the characters in a font at the same time, for instance, and it doesn't automatically open to the font you're currently using. Enter the PopChar control panel extension, by Austrian programmer Günther Blaschek.

PopChar shows every character of the current font when you click the assigned corner of the menu bar. (You can specify which corner of the menu bar you want to make the hot spot. The extension normally displays a small *P* enclosed in a box at the hot spot location, but you can turn this feature off.) The characters are all displayed in a simple window with the name of the font in the title bar, as shown in Figure 12.6. Move the pointer over the character you want, and release the mouse button to insert that character in your document at the insertion point. There's also a way to insert several characters at the same time.

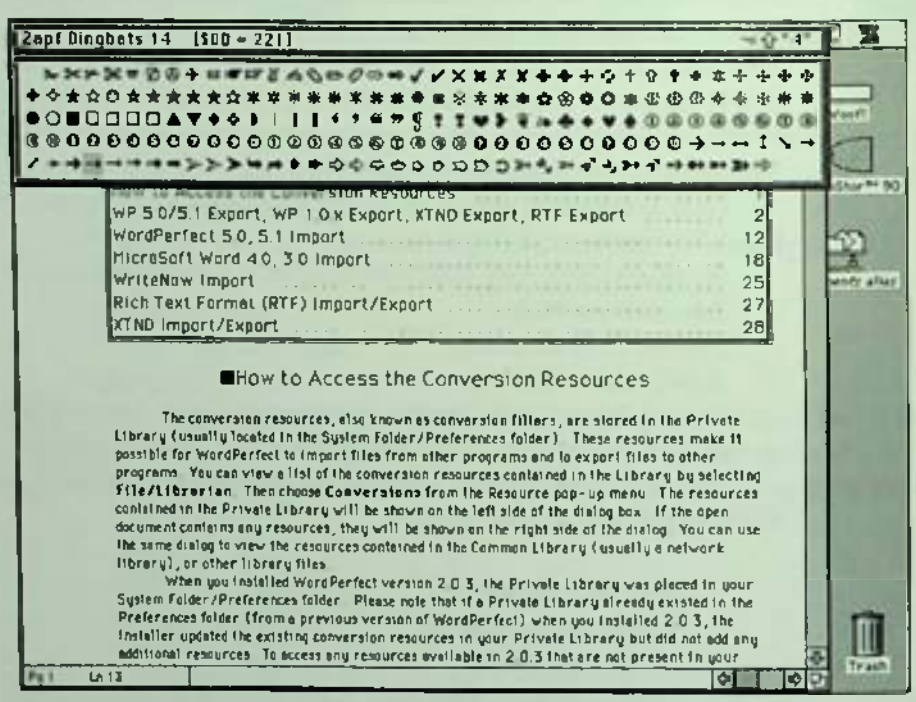


Figure 12.6
PopChar, a handy replacement for the Key Caps DA

PopChar is such a spiffy program you'll wonder why Apple didn't do it this way in the first place. If you do a lot of word processing or DTP work, you need this extension. Look for version 2.5.2 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Many reports of problems between PopChar and Adobe Type Reunion (ATR); there's an option in the control panel's configuration window that supposedly offers greater compatibility with ATR, but problems seem to linger for some users.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Once you point to the character you want, that character's keystroke equivalent is indicated in the title bar, in addition to the font name. You will want to make note of this keystroke, especially if you intend to use the same character over again later, since it's obviously faster to enter the character from the keyboard than to run PopChar each time.

For another way to see all the characters of a font, see FontDisplay in Chapter 6.

PopChar
Günther Blaschek
Petzoldstr. 31
A–4020 Linz, Austria
InterNet: gue@soft.uni-linz.ac.at
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: POPCHA.SIT

RamDisk+

RamDisk+ is a control panel extension that lets you treat part of your Mac's RAM as if it were a hard disk or other storage device. The extension even mounts an icon on the desktop representing the RAMdisk, where you can copy applications. Programs started from this "disk" run extremely fast, because RAM is inherently faster than physical devices such as floppies or even hard disks. If you're restricted to floppies, using a RAMdisk can dramatically speed up your daily work.

To use RamDisk+, place it in the System folder, restart the Mac, and then configure the extension's control panel. RamDisk+ can recognize up to 128Mb of RAM, even if the Mac itself can only use 8Mb of the installed memory.

You can have specific applications and documents automatically copied to the RAMdisk every time you start the Mac. Since documents on the RAMdisk disappear when you shut down the Mac, you must always copy them back to a physical storage device before you turn the Mac off. RamDisk+ has an

option that does this automatically for you (see Limitations section below). The RAMdisk provided in System 7 from within the Memory control panel lacks this automatic copying capability; RamDisk+ is thus an attractive alternative.

RamDisk+ was mentioned in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser* and in the October 31, 1989, issue of *MacWeek*. Look for version 3.03 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6 or 7.

Limitations: The Copy Back RAMdisk option is disabled until you register and pay the shareware fee.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$$

Tips & Techniques: System 7 users should also check out AppDisk in Chapter 11, as an alternative to RamDisk+.

RamDisk+
Roger Bates
10899 NW Valley Vista Rd.
Hillsboro, OR 97124
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: RAMDSK.SIT

Scroll2

Scroll2 is a control panel extension that enhances the standard window scroll bars by adding two arrows at each end. That lets you scroll in either direction from both ends of the scroll bar. You may choose among several arrow types, as well as the pattern used in the normally gray region between them.

Scroll2 was mentioned in the July 19, 1988, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 2.1.11 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Incompatible with Excel.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: See also AltCDEF in this chapter. It also adds directional arrows to scroll bars.

Scroll2
Mayson Lancaster
1492 W. Colorado Blvd.
Pasadena, CA 91105
CIS: 70441,3263
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SCROL2.SIT

SoftwareFPU

Many, but not all Mac models come equipped with a special chip called the 68881 or 68882 Floating Point Unit (FPU). You might also see it called a *floating point coprocessor* or *math coprocessor.* It helps the Mac perform certain mathematical calculations rapidly. Some applications, especially those that process complex mathematical and financial problems or even complicated graphics (for example, PixelPaint Pro and older versions of Excel), require this FPU chip before they will even run. That leaves owners of the Mac LC, LC II, IIsi, and any other future FPU-less models unable to use these programs. You can purchase add-on hardware that rigs your Mac with an FPU, but it costs $100 to $200. Fortunately, there's a reliable shareware software alternative that costs just a fraction of that: SoftwareFPU by John Neil.

Simply drop the SoftwareFPU control panel extension in your System folder and restart your Mac. Programs expecting an FPU will then be able to run, because this extension fools your Mac into thinking it has the magic chip. It's that easy. Look for version 2.21 or later.

Requirements: Mac LC, LC II, or IIsi.

Limitations: Occasionally fails to function properly with System 6.0.7. It doesn't cause a crash, but you'll see an error message informing you there's no FPU installed. SoftwareFPU is slower than the actual processor.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

SoftwareFPU
John Neil
P.O. Box 160699
Cupertino, CA 95016-0699
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SFTFPU.CPT

SoundMaster

As I put it in an earlier chapter, the Mac is born with the gift of gab. I was talking about modems and telecommunications in that earlier mention, but the same statement also has another message: The Mac is a loudmouthed noise machine. It chimes at start-up and beeps at the drop of a disk. It comes equipped with an internal speaker and a capacity for sound that's the envy of the PC crowd. But with Bruce Tomlin's SoundMaster, the Mac can be coaxed to do even more.

The SoundMaster control panel extension lets you assign sounds to a large number of common actions or events. These include restarting the Mac, ejecting a disk, zooming or resizing a window, emptying the trash, and many

more. You select the event from one scrolling list, and then the sound you want to accompany it from another list (see Figure 12.7). You can also set the volume and playback speed for each event's sound. SoundMaster supports sound files in two of the most common formats you're likely to encounter: System 7's sfil format, and the popular snd format (see the *Tips & Techniques* section for sources).

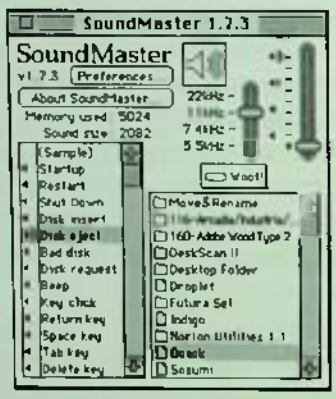


Figure 12.7
SoundMaster puts you in charge of the sounds your Mac makes

SoundMaster was mentioned in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.7.3 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0.3 or later; 6.0.7 or 7.0 is recommended.

Limitations: None (but the sounds do eat up both RAM and disk space).

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: SoundMaster doesn't come with any ready-made sounds, so you'll need to obtain some. If you're using a microphone-equipped Mac, you can record your own sounds through the Sound control panel. Otherwise, you can loot the treasures of the on-line services. It seems a lot of people have nothing better to do than record sound bites from their favorite cartoon characters and TV shows! There are thousands of these files uploaded to the major on-line services.

SoundMaster
Bruce Tomlin
15801 Chase Hill Blvd. #109
San Antonio, TX 78256-1037
AOL: BTomlin

CIS: 72507,2742
GEnie: BTOMLIN
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SDMAST.CPT

SuperClock

Does the Apple-supplied Alarm Clock DA leave you snoozing with disinterest? SuperClock, by Steve Christensen (author of the Columns II game discussed in Chapter 4), is a well-mannered, intelligent alternative that will probably tick your tock.

SuperClock is a control panel extension that places a digital readout of the time on the right end of the menu bar. It offers a large number of options: It can run in 12- or 24-hour mode. It can be a simple clock, stopwatch, or alarm clock. You can configure its display with any font installed in your System. It chimes the hour, if you want, and with the sound of your choice. It can display the seconds or not, as well as A.M. and P.M. indicators. Just click on the clock to cycle among the time, date, and timer (stopwatch) features. If you have a Mac Portable, SuperClock displays the portable's battery level.

This extension was mentioned in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser* and in the April 11, 1989, issue of *MacWEEK*. It's by far the most popular noncommercial clock utility for the Mac, and its acclaim is well deserved. Look for version 3.91 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: You can only select point sizes for which you have the bitmap or screen fonts installed in your System.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Although SuperClock is free, it has been so popular that some users have actually nagged Steve Christensen about repaying him in some way for his work. If you feel that way, Steve suggests you make a contribution to Stanford Children's Hospital, 520 Sand Hill Road, Palo Alto, CA 94304.

SuperClock
Steve Christensen
6901 Chiala Lane
San Jose, CA 95129
CIS: 76174,1712
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SUPERC.SIT

Switch-A-Roo

Switch-A-Roo sounds like a con game or a bit of legerdemain, and, in a way, it is. You can quickly switch between any two screen "depth" settings (black-and-white, 16 colors/grays, 256 colors/grays, or millions of colors/grays) by pressing a simple keystroke. You don't have to open the Monitors control panel (a time-consuming chore) each time you want to switch between, for example, black-and-white and 256 colors.

If you're wondering why you would ever want to change the screen depth in this way, the answer is simple. Some programs won't even start until you have your screen set to a certain depth. If that's not the depth you usually have set for your screen, then you have to change it.

Switch-A-Roo is an FKEY. (If you're not certain what that means, read the introduction to Chapter 11.) Once you have it installed, you configure it by pressing Control-Command-Shift-9 to access the configuration window. Here, select the two screen depths that you want Switch-A-Roo to toggle between. Then whenever you press Command-Shift-9, Switch-A-Roo will change from one to the other of your two settings. What happens when you don't want either of those two settings, but rather a third? Just redisplay the configuration window (Control-Command-Shift-9), select the depth you want in the Switch Now list, and click the Switch Now button.

Switch-A-Roo is by CompuServe's MAUG sysop Bill Steinberg, and a longtime favorite among Mac users. It was mentioned in the February 27, 1990, issue of *MacWEEK* and in the February 1988 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.6 or later.

Requirements: Mac II with color monitor.
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: Switch-A-Roo isn't the only fish in the sea when it comes to screen depth utilities. DepthGauge (DGAUGE.CPT), by Thomas Johnson, is a System extension that lets you switch screen depths. It also displays the current setting as a number in the menu bar. PixelFlipper (PXFLIP.SIT), by Chris Sanchez, is another screen-depth-switcher extension worth considering, as is Mike Whittingham's Screen Flipper (SCRFLI.SEA). All these files can be found in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum under the file names supplied in parentheses. They're all $ shareware.

Switch-A-Roo
Bill Steinberg
(No address available)
CIS: 76703,1027
GEnie: BillS
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SWTCHR.SIT

TearOFFS

Remember how MacPaint 2.0's tear-off Tools menu excited you the first time you realized you could drag it off the menu bar and position it anywhere on the desktop? Tear-off menus are a great idea and now show up frequently in graphics programs. The TearOFFS control panel extension (TearOFFS = Tear-Off Menus) brings that versatility to every program on the desktop. Once it's installed, TearOFFS saves you from those long trips to the menu bar. Simply pull down a menu or even a submenu, and drag its outline to any convenient spot on the desktop. Release the mouse button and the menu remains where you placed it. You can choose a command from it at any time.

TearOFFS is one of the more temperamental extensions mentioned in this chapter (see the Limitations section just below), but if it works for you, you'll love it. Look for version 1.0b4 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0 or higher.

Limitations: Incompatible with Kiwi Power Windows; some problems reported with After Dark, WYSIWYG Menus, MORE 3.1, and others.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

TearOFFS
Rod Magnuson & Steve Kiene
c/o Bad Boys Software
P.O. Box 57399
Jacksonville, FL 32217-7399
AOL: RodMag
CIS: 71052,1562
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: TMINIT.CPT

UnScrolly

The System 6 Control Panel DA forces you to choose the control panel you want from a scrolling list of icons. It sounds very Mac-like and user friendly, but there's a price to pay: The Control Panel DA takes forever to open and an eternity to scroll through the list of icons. Shareware authors have been quick to rise to the challenge. Frédéric Miserey's UnScrolly is one of the more popular ways to make the best of a bad situation.

UnScrolly is itself a control panel extension that changes the sluggish, icon-rich Control Panel DA into a lean, mean listing machine. It modifies the DA so that control panels are listed as names—20 at a time. Once you've placed it in the System folder and restarted the Mac, choose the Control Panel DA from the Apple menu. You'll be delighted with the increase in speed.

UnScrolly was discussed in the October 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac, with System 4.2 through 6.0.x.

Limitations: None

System 7: Incompatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: John Rotenstein's CDEV Shrinker (CDEVSH.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum) is a utility that actually modifies the System 6 Control Panel DA, so that it displays all control panels as names in a list rather than as icons. You might prefer this approach to UnScrolly, which adds yet another extension to your already overburdened System folder. CDEV Shrinker's author requests only a postcard as payment.

See also GooPanel in this chapter for another solution to the System 6 Control Panel DA's slow-as-sap performance.

UnScrolly
Frédéric Miserey
(No address available)
Internet: kortex@applelink.apple.com
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: UNSCRO.SIT

WindowShade

If you use your Mac under MultiFinder or System 7, it's handy being able to have several applications open at the same time. But the clutter can get in the way of efficiency as you hunt and peck for the right window. Though you can, of course, avoid some of the on-screen confusion by selectively hiding windows in System 7, it's easy to lose track of the windows and forget to close those memory-hog applications. WindowShade, by Rob Johnston, cuts through the clutter by letting you hide windows yet keep their title bars visible.

WindowShade is a control panel extension you place in your System folder (or Control Panels folder under System 7). Once installed, it lets you "roll up" any application window by clicking its title bar (see Figure 12.8 for an example). You can roll up as many windows at a time as you want. You can also configure the extension so that you have to click the bar once, twice, or three times, or with modifier keys pressed (Command, Option, or Shift). There's even an option that adds some nifty sound effects every time you roll up a window.

WindowShade is a novel approach to windows management on the Mac that will appeal to many people. The program was discussed in the October 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0 or later.

Limitations: None

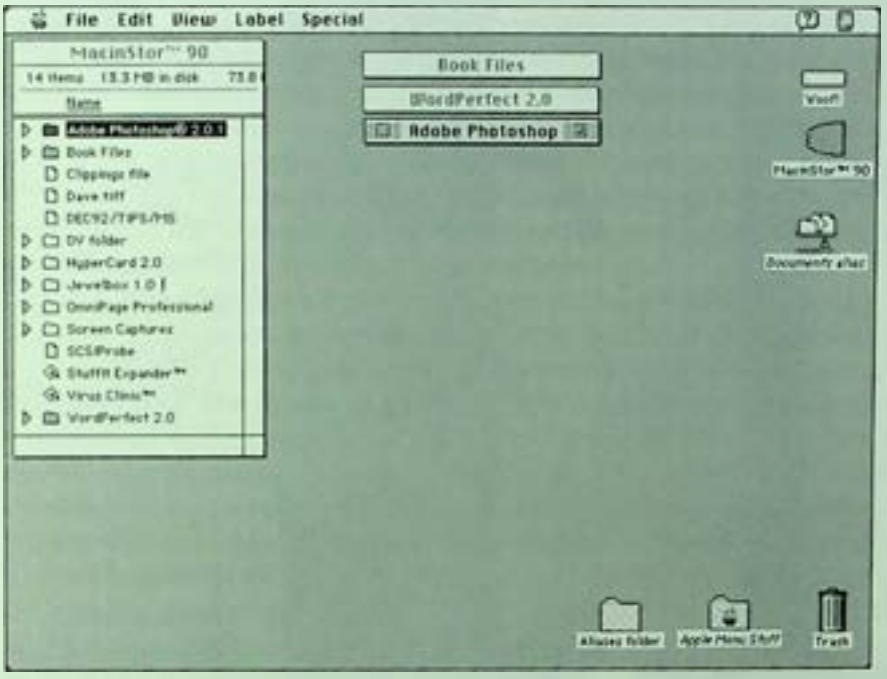


Figure 12.8
WindowShade shrinks windows to the title bar

System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: See also AltWDEF in this chapter for a similar approach to manipulating windows on the desktop.

WindowShade
Robert Johnston
1720 N.W. River Trail
Stuart, FL 34994-9449
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: WISHAD.SIT

CHAPTER

13

General Utilities

Bat Filer
BundAid
CheapColor 2
Color Bits
Darkside
DeBNDLer
Desktop Textures
DeskZap DA
DisKeeper
DMM LaserWriter Stuff
Fast Formatter
FileMover
FileTyper
Floppy Fixer
Folderdash
Get More Info
HeapTool
iContraption
MacEnvy
MemINIT
MergeScrap DA
Message DA
MountImage
MultiSpool
PowerBook Tools
SCSI Probe
SetClock
Speedometer
System Errors DA
System Picker
TattleTale
TEXT<->ttro
Tidy It Up!

WHAT'S A GENERAL UTILITY? AFTER YOU FINISH READING THIS chapter, you might be tempted to say a utility is simply a program that I couldn't shoehorn into any other chapter. There was a popular joke making the rounds when I was in graduate school, that whenever an archaeologist or scholar encountered an artifact whose purpose couldn't be divined with certainty, the scholar automatically tagged it a "votive figure." You can think of utilities as the votive figures of this book. On the other hand, here's a less equivocal stab at defining a utility: Think of this chapter as a real-world toolbox, and each utility as a tool that is simple, useful, and with one main purpose.

The programs you'll find in this chapter vary a great deal in that one main purpose. Some let you probe into the hidden mysteries of your Mac's hardware or System software configuration. Some let you examine the information hidden in your files that tells the Mac what icon each file should have, whether it should be visible on the desktop, what application the file should open when double-clicked, and so on. There's a print spooler for ImageWriters; a utility that keeps your System folder neat and orderly; and programs that automate the movement of files from one location to another. PowerBook owners will find several handy utilities that can improve on Apple's portable handiwork. One timely piece of shareware sets your Mac's inner time and date by calling up an atomic clock and asking for the correct time. There's even an electronic version of the popular, omnipresent Post-it note.

So take a walk on the utilitarian side with your Mac. There's at least one tool waiting in this chapter just for you.

Bat Filer

With its Batman icon and name, you might think Bat Filer author Fernando Salazar was trying to cash in on the Batman craze of recent years. Maybe he was, but the program name actually derives from *batch*, not the Caped Crusader. Bat Filer performs operations such as copying, locking, renaming, deleting, and so on, on several files at once (that is, in "batch" mode).

Once you start Bat Filer, you have to build a batch list of the files you want to process (see Figure 13.1 for an example). You can add files to this list from several folders and volumes, and even add files by file Type or Creator. For example, you might select only text files created by Microsoft Word. You can sort the batch list by several criteria, including date and name.

Once you have a batch list you can live with, you process all the files in the list or just selected ones in a variety of ways. You can herd them all into a single folder, lock them, or change their file Type or Creator. You could change all those Microsoft Word text files, for example, into TeachText files—with the flick of a dialog switch. If you find that you often process the same

set of files, you can save any batch list to disk and restore the same set of files to the list later.

So whenever you need to process several files, don't do it one file at a time. Wham! Splat! Bam! Pow! Bat Filer to the rescue. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $$$

Tips & Techniques: The default RAM allocation for Bat Filer is 290k, but that simply is not enough if you are using System 7 or MultiFinder, or have large hard disks. I'd recommend upping the allocation to at least 500k. A full megabyte would be even better.

The Save File Set and Load File Set special modules must be in the same folder as Bat Filer in order for them to show up in the Special menu. They're distributed with Bat Filer in a separate folder, so make sure you move them to the Bat Filer folder before you start the program. These modules let you save and load batch lists so you don't have to rebuild the same list each time.

See also FileMover in this chapter for a way to automate file transfers.

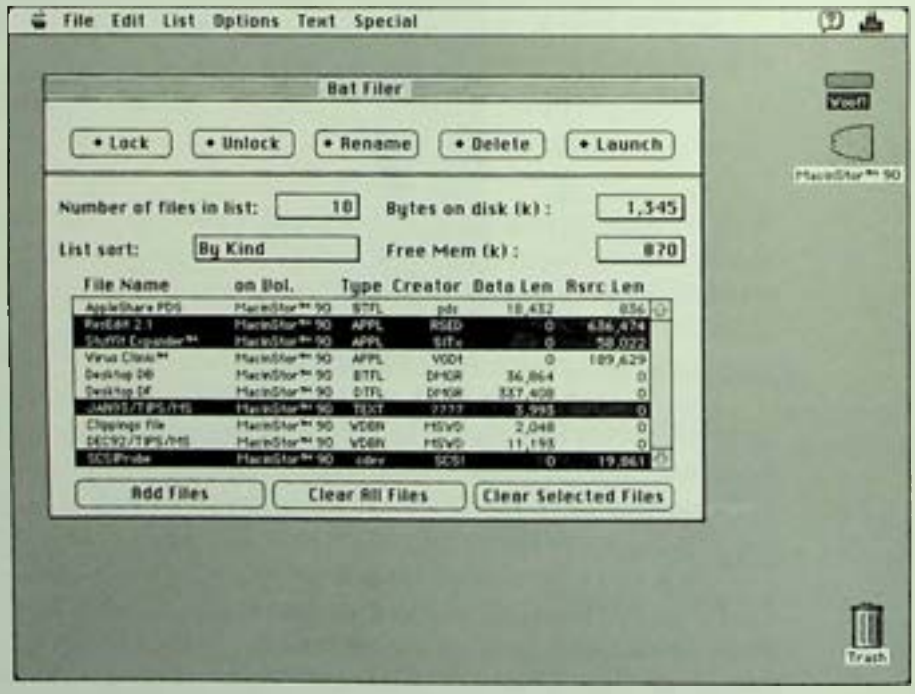


Figure 13.1
Bat Filer performs batch operations on several files at once

Bat Filer
Fernando Salazar
305 Whittier Street NW #202
Washington, D.C. 20012
CIS: 71550,676
GEnie: F.SALAZAR
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: BATFIL.SEA

BundAid

Ouch! You double-click a document icon and nothing happens, except you see an alert telling you the application that created the file doesn't exist. But it does! You can see it right there on the desktop! Is the file corrupted? Have you been bitten by a virus? You may be able to make it all feel better with BundAid. This utility is not from Johnson & Johnson and it's not flesh-colored, but it's good for what probably ails you in this common scenario.

You've already encountered several programs in this book that change Finder file flags (see DeskZap, for instance, in this chapter). One of those flags is called the *bundle bit*. It contains information that essentially tells the Finder that certain documents belong to certain applications. The bundle bit should be set on for applications and control panels, and off for other files. Unfortunately, there have been cases of companies distributing commercial products with the bundle bit set for the wrong file or not set at all. If the flag is incorrectly set, documents won't open when double-clicked. Jim Hamilton's BundAid utility scans any floppy or hard disk visible on the desktop and ensures that the bundle bit is properly set.

BundAid was mentioned in the October 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.2 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: If you become stymied by the bundle bit problem and don't have BundAid handy, there are a couple of other techniques you can try. Rebuild the desktop. Restart the Mac and press the Option and Command keys until you see an alert asking you whether you want to rebuild the desktop. Click OK. If that doesn't help, start the application first, and then use the Open command to open the document.

BundAid
Jim Hamilton
2904 Jubilee Trail
Austin, TX 78748

AOL: JimH16
CIS: 71640,235
GEnie: J.HAMILTON10
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: BUNDAI.SIT

CheapColor 2

The Apple ImageWriter, equipped with a four-color ribbon, can print color graphics, provided the colors are limited to the eight original QuickDraw colors (black, red, green, blue, cyan, magenta, yellow, and white). That normally puts 24-bit PICT2 or PixelPaint images out of the picture. But there is a clever work-around in the form of CheapColor 2 by Jeff Skaistis.

CheapColor 2 is a graphics utility that modifies full-color PICT2 or PixelPaint graphics so that they contain only the eight original QuickDraw colors. The process is called *dithering*, and it's basically a form of photographic fakery. But the fakery in this case is fabulous. You just open the graphic in CheapColor 2 and choose the desired dithering scheme. You can dither just a selection or the entire graphic, and you can control brightness, contrast, and enlargement (from 100 to 400 percent). You can save whatever settings you make to a file, for later use with other graphics. When you click the Dither button, CheapColor 2 dithers away and displays the result in a new window. Save the graphic to disk under a new name and print it on your ImageWriter.

CheapColor 2 was mentioned in the October 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with a 68020 or 68030 processor, Color QuickDraw, and System 6.0.2 or greater.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: If you want to print the graphic at its original size in the ImageWriter's Best mode, dither it at 200 percent and increase the brightness.

If you are using four-color heat transfer ribbons in order to make heat transfers for clothing, use CheapColor's Flip option to reverse the image.

CheapColor 2
Jeff Skaistis
2537 E. Skelly Dr.
Tulsa, OK 74105
CIS: 72007,2175
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: CHEAP.SIT

Color Bits

The System 6 desktop is usually a pretty drab place. Desktop icons, in particular, drag out a dreary black-and-white existence. Color Bits, by Ben Haller, is an icon editor that lets you enliven your desktop by creating or editing color (or black-and-white) icons. You'll need yet another program (see the *Tips & Techniques* section later) to move those icons onto the System 6 desktop, but Color Bits is a handy utility that lets you actually make the icons look the way you want.

If you've ever had experience with ResEdit, you should feel right at home in Color Bits. As soon as you start the program, it prompts you for a file to open. Choose the application whose icons you want to enhance, and Color Bits displays a window of *resources* (the building blocks of any file or program) you can edit. These include cicn, ICN#, ICON, crsr, CURS, ppat, and PAT resource types. Choose a resource to work on, double-click it, and Color Bits displays it in fatbits mode (like the pixel-level view in MacPaint) in a special editing window. You'll also see a color palette and a full set of tools (pencil, eraser, marquee, paint can, line, rectangle, and oval). If you're editing or creating a cursor resource, you'll also have a hot-spot tool that lets you set the cursor's active pixel. You can open multiple windows and copy or move icon resources between applications or files.

Color Bits is generally recognized as one of the best icon editors around. It was discussed in the October 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac; color monitor recommended.

Limitations: Can't display 8-bit resources having more than 16 colors, some unusual ppat resources, or the new icl# or ics# resources found in System 7.

System 7: Incompatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: The eraser tool doesn't just erase one pixel at a time, but rather the entire contents of the icon window. It's equivalent to doing a Select All and pressing Delete. To delete pixel by pixel, use the pencil tool.

Since Color Bits is simply an icon resource editor, it can't bring colorized icons to your System 6 desktop. You'll need a system extension (INIT in System 6 parlance) to trick the Finder into accepting and displaying multicolor desktop icons. Your best choices are ColorFinder (COLFIN.SIT), Icon Colorizer (ICNCLR.SIT), or Sun Desk (SDESK.SEA). Look for these ZiffNet/-Mac file names in the Download and Support Forum.

System 7 users can use ResEdit 2.1.1 or later for working with color icons. Another alternative is the iContraption editor and icon manager discussed in this chapter.

Color Bits
Ben Haller
32 Deer Haven Drive
Ithaca, NY 14850
Internet: deadman@garnet.berkeley.edu
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: CLRBIT.SIT

Darkside

I admit it: Screensavers aren't my favorite type of software. Because they usually consume so much precious memory, it just seems a lot more sensible to use a monitor's built-in dimmer dial to darken the screen. (Thus, I pigeon-holed the shareware screensaver Moire in Chapter 4, "Games and Trivial Pursuits.") But if I *were* to use a software screensaver, I'd probably pick Tom Dowdy's Darkside. It's an exceptional product for System 7 that even this stodgy soul would be willing to call a general utility rather than a trivial pursuit.

Unlike most commercial and shareware screensavers, Darkside is an application, not a System extension. For this reason, you never need to worry about startup incompatibilities or conflicts. Darkside requires only 64k of RAM (most screensavers hog at least twice that amount). Best of all, Darkside is free!

To use the program, double-click it and let it run in the background. The Darkside Settings command lets you choose from among 40 "faders" that dim your screen and display some sort of entertaining image: a revolving earth, fireworks, moiré patterns, and many more—some of which are indescribably odd and delightful. You can set the program to dim the screen whenever the Mac has been inactive for a specified period of time. There's also support for Fade Now or Fade Never corners.

Darkside is one of the best freebies available for the Mac. Because of its low memory requirements, it's an ideal screensaver for the PowerBooks. Look for version 3.2 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac and System 7.0 or later. A color monitor is recommended, but not essential.

Limitations: None

System 7: Required

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Using Darkside for the first time can be a bit confusing because, when you first start it, there are no screensaver faders listed in the scrolling selection box. You must tell Darkside where the faders are. Choose the Open Fader command and select a fader (all the modules are in the same folder as Darkside). After you do that, the program lists all the

available faders in the selection box when you use the Darkside Settings command.

Place Darkside in the Startup Items folder if you want it to start every time you start your Mac.

Darkside
Tom Dowdy
1610 Kamsack Drive
Sunnyvale, CA 94087
Internet: dowdy@apple.com
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: DARKSI.CPT

DeBNDLer

Collecting fonts is an obsession for many Mac users. If you can afford to collect PostScript fonts (lucky you!), you may have noticed that the more printer fonts you add to your System folder, the longer it takes that folder to open when you double-click it. You can speed up the slowdown with DeBNDLer, by Stephan Somogyi, the network administrator of MacUser Labs.

What's the cause of the sluggishness? Normally, an application lends its icon to its associated documents. A special Finder flag called the bundle bit (see BundAid in this chapter) tells the Finder to find that icon in the application. Printer fonts, however, don't have an application to consult for this information, so the major type manufacturers (such as Adobe) include the icon in the font. If you have lots of printer fonts, you also have lots of icons. Unfortunately, it takes the Finder time to display each of these icons and that's where the logjam occurs. DeBNDLer does away with the problem by scanning your System and stripping out all the icons. In effect, it turns all your printer fonts into DeBNDLer documents. The fonts still function normally for printing, but will display the icon stored only in the DeBNDLer application. You'll be delighted at how much it can accelerate those trips to the System folder, or wherever you store your printer fonts.

DeBNDLer was discussed in the May 1991 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.1; earlier versions only work with Type 1 fonts from Adobe.

Requirements: Any Mac, with PostScript Type 1 or Type 3 fonts.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: If you use a font utility such as Suitcase II to store your fonts in a folder other than the System folder, DeBNDLer still works its magic.

You can also speed up the font folder opening process by setting the Finder's By View for the folder to Name.

DeBNDLer
Stephan Somogyi
c/o MacUser
950 Tower Lane, 18th Floor
Foster City, CA 94404
CIS: 72511,40
Internet: MacUserLabs@cup.portal.com
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: DEBNDL.SIT

Desktop Textures

One of the most popular and fun commercial utilities to appear for the Mac in the 1990s is Wallpaper (from a company with the cheery moniker, Thought I Could). There are also some shareware alternatives, the best of which is Desktop Textures by Geoff Adams and Stephen Krauth. These programs replace the standard desktop pattern with patterns you never thought possible (and aren't, using the General Controls control panel). Desktop Textures lacks many of Wallpaper's more sophisticated features (such as a pattern-editing environment), but it provides an easy way to change your desktop from a boring white or gray to just about any color, texture, or pattern you can imagine. Plus, it has one advantage over Wallpaper: It's an application, not a control panel extension, so you should never encounter incompatibilities.

Using Desktop Textures is a snap. Start the program and open a Textures file. Two Textures files come bundled with the utility; they include 55 attractive desktop patterns. Controls let you cycle through and preview the patterns. When you find one you like, click the Install button, and the pattern replaces the standard drab desktop.

Desktop Textures does not provide a pattern-editing feature, but you can create new Textures files and then install patterns (fashioned in any graphics program) into those files. Once you've accomplished that, you can install the custom pattern with Desktop Textures.

Desktop Textures is a splendid piece of shareware I highly recommend. The authors' laissez-faire approach to pricing (pay what you want) is extremely generous and makes the program affordable for everyone. Look for version 2.0 or later.

Requirements: Any color-capable Mac and System 6.0.5 or later.
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $ to $$$$ (your choice, and payable to either author)

Tips & Techniques: Installing a texture with Desktop Textures essentially disables the Desktop Pattern feature of the General Controls control panel extension. To regain use of this feature (in case you want to go back to a standard desktop), you must start Desktop Textures and install the Control Panel-Compatible texture.

Another shareware utility for installing desktop patterns is the cleverly named Before Dark (a pun on the popular After Dark commercial screensaver). It works almost exactly as Desktop Textures does, but includes only 30 desktop patterns and provides no easy way to add new textures. It's available on ZiffNet/Mac as file BEDARK.CPT in the Download and Support Forum.

Desktop Textures
Geoff Adams
21408 Ridgecroft Dr.
Brookeville, MD 20833
Internet: gadams@bessel.umd.edu

Stephen Krauth
1757 Cape Horn Rd.
Hampstead, MD 21074
Internet: phred@wam.umd.edu
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: DESKTX.SEA

DeskZap DA

If you select a file on the desktop and then press Command-I, you see the Get Info window. Among other things, you'll notice a small check box called Locked in the lower part of the window. Click that, and the file is locked and can't be changed or normally deleted. This Locked feature is an example of a Finder flag (sometimes referred to by techies as a *bit*), but several other flags are not accessible through the Get Info window. Bruce Tomlin's DeskZap is a DA that lets you set all sorts of Finder flags for a file or folder. It also does enough other desktop and file/folder management tasks that you'll want to have it around as a general-purpose utility.

DeskZap opens with a standard file dialog that lists all files and folders on the current volume. As you select files, various buttons become active. These buttons let you perform file/disk management chores such as copying, renaming, moving, or deleting (as shown in Figure 13.2). The Set File button lets you change the Finder flags mentioned earlier. In addition to the Locked flag, you can toggle flags that make files or folders invisible, copy-protected, unable to be renamed, and so forth. You can also change the file Type and Creator codes that, among other things, tell the Finder what application to run when you double-click a document.

Figure 13.2
DeskZap lets you delete, copy, and move files, as well as do other desktop chores

The DeskZap DA also features some text file capabilities that will be familiar to you from programs such as Add/Strip in Chapter 6. There are filtering options that let you strip control characters, line feeds, and trailing spaces, and replace dumb quotes with smart ones (and vice versa). The text file filters also let you change capitalization (to all uppercase, all lowercase, or mixed case) and create custom filters.

DeskZap is a nifty utility that makes it a snap to handle the various desktop chores mentioned. You can, of course, use ResEdit to change Finder flags, but DeskZap is easier to use for this purpose and less intimidating for most people. Look for version 2.0b12 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac, with System 6 or later.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: When you run DeskZap, you might find in the DeskZap window some names you can't ordinarily see on the desktop. Don't go hog-wild and delete them: Some of them might be needed for other programs to operate normally. You may, of course, occasionally need to delete files that are invisible. For example, if you upgrade to System 7, the old System

6 desktop file remains, taking up space, although you can't see it. But unless you already know what the invisible file is or does, don't be tempted to delete it with DeskZap.

In addition to seeing the invisible, DeskZap lets you make normal files invisible. You can use this feature as a kind of security tool for protecting sensitive files or folders. It's not the safest way to protect your files (anyone with DeskZap or a similar program can undo it), but it'll do in a pinch. (See Chapter 14 for some bona fide shareware security solutions.)

CAUTION! *Be careful about making folders or applications invisible under System 7. You can run into problems—documents won't open when double-clicked if their application is invisible, for example.*

See also Scott Fenton's Get More Info extension and Daniel Azuma's FileTyper, both discussed in this chapter. These programs let you change Finder flags in some unique ways that you might prefer to DeskZap's method.

DeskZap DA
Bruce Tomlin
15801 Chase Hill Blvd. #109
San Antonio, TX 78256-1037
AOL: BTomlin
CIS: 72507,2742
GEnie: BTOMLIN
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: DSKZAP.CPT

DisKeeper

DisKeeper is a garbage collector. It scans volumes for duplicate files, empty folders, invisible folders, folders containing only one file, orphaned files (documents whose creating applications are no longer available), and so on. It can move all such files into a special DisKeeper Trash folder, so that you can decide at a glance what files and folders you really want to exile to the trash. It can also generate a text file in tab-delimited format with a listing of the located files, or provide a catalog of all your applications, extensions, and so forth, along with their version numbers. DisKeeper can also change the Finder flags, Type, and Creator code of any file.

This dandy utility will help keep your hard disk in tip-top shape. As J. Geagan, DisKeeper's author, quipped, "It's not the size of the disk that counts, it's how you use it." DisKeeper lets you use it well. The utility was discussed in the June 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.6 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Some key features (Delete files, for example) are disabled until you pay the registration fee.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Network administrators can use DisKeeper to keep users' software current, or to create an inventory of legitimate software on the server.

DisKeeper
J. Geagan
7H Laurel Hill Rd.
Greenbelt, MD 20770
CIS: 713311,301
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: DISKEE.SEA

DMM LaserWriter Stuff

Printing from the Mac usually seems like one of your easiest tasks. Open a document and choose Print, right? Yet some complications do come into play if you output to a PostScript laser printer. Don Markuson's casually named DMM LaserWriter Stuff is a collection of Apple Installer scripts, documentation, and utilities that you can use to enhance PostScript printing in a variety of ways.

The main part of the DMM package consists of scripts for use with the Apple Installer application that comes on the System disks you received with your Mac. The scripts let you customize and improve the standard System 7 LaserWriter driver (version 7.0). The process actually modifies the driver, so keep a backup of the original file. How you change the driver depends on which of the scripts you use—you don't have to use them all.

One script makes the 7.0 driver work without a hitch even if you have earlier versions of that driver on the same network. (In the past, if several Macs on a network had different versions of the driver installed, you frequently encountered an alert telling you the printer had to be reset before you could print.) Another script lets you print up to 16 thumbnails (miniatures) of the pages of any document. Other scripts let you control whether PostScript or TrueType font descriptions are included with PostScript files printed to disk. There's a script that keeps the Apple PostScript dictionary from being included with every print job. Yet another creates a driver that will use an asynchronous protocol rather than AppleTalk when printing through either the modem or the printer serial port. (If you don't know what that means, you don't need it.)

The DMM package also includes some files that let you embed PostScript in other documents, such as word processor files, in order to create special graphics (watermarks, for instance). A special version of DMM LaserWriter Stuff is available for users of earlier LaserWriter drivers, including 5.2, 6.0.1, and 6.0.2. This version offers scripts designed just for thumbnail printing, for having different versions of the driver on a network, or for serial port printing.

WARNING! *The DMM LaserWriter material is heady stuff that requires prudence. I cannot overemphasize that you need to read the documentation carefully and repeatedly before you try to modify your LaserWriter driver. And always keep a backup of the original driver in case something goes wrong.*

DMM LaserWriter Stuff was discussed at length in an interesting article by Ric Ford in the April 6, 1992, issue of *MacWEEK*. There is also a related article on laser printing in the March 23, 1992, issue.

Requirements: Apple Installer 3.2 application, and the original LaserWriter 7.0 driver (located on the Printing disk distributed with System 7.0 or 7.0.1).

Limitations: None

System 7: Required

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: System 6 users should use the special version of DMM LaserWriter Stuff mentioned in the foregoing product description. On ZiffNet/Mac you can find it as file LW56ST.CPT in the Download and Support Forum. Markuson also distributes a supplement to the original package, which adds support for the 7.1.1 driver. You can find it as file LWS711.SEA in the same forum.

Another approach to gaining the upper hand over the System 7 printer drivers is offered by Trimmer. This control panel extension lets you prevent specific fonts or the Mac PostScript dictionary from being included in PostScript files you print to disk. On ZiffNet/Mac, it's available as file TRIMMR.CPT in the Download and Support Forum. This is a far simpler approach than what the DMM package adopts, but Trimmer only affects files "printed" to disk. The DMM-modified LaserWriter drivers also affect files output on a printer.

DMM LaserWriter Stuff
Donald Markuson
c/o Prime Computer
500 Old Connecticut Path
Framingham, MA 01701
Internet: dmm@tiger1.prime.com
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: LWSTUF.SEA

Fast Formatter

Formatting floppy disks is one of the least pleasant ways to spend time glued to your Mac. You have to acknowledge alert dialogs, choose a format, type in a name, and so on. If you're formatting a box of new floppies, the task can be daunting and will take some time—pull up a chair and bring a good book! You can automate the process somewhat with a program that replaces the Finder's floppy formatting function—Fast Formatter is a good choice.

Fast Formatter can shave several seconds off the time required to format a floppy. It can handle 400k, 800k, or the high-density 1.4Mb disks used with Macs equipped with a SuperDrive. Just start Fast Formatter, select your options, and insert floppies one after another. The program lets you enter a default name for all the disks to be formatted, so you don't have to type a name in with each floppy.

Fast Formatter probably won't save you a lot of time unless you have to format floppies often, and several at a time. If that's precisely your situation, Fast Formatter can set you flying. It was discussed in the October 1989 issue of *MacUser* and in the May 2, 1989, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 3.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with a hard disk.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Another alternative you might encounter is Michael Conrad's Quick Format, which essentially works just like Fast Formatter. Quick Format has a slicker interface, but it's not free. It also has some features disabled (the ones that make for the fastest formatting, of course) until you pay the $$ registration fee. On ZiffNet/Mac, it's available as file QFORMA-.CPT in the Download and Support Forum.

Fast Formatter
Stuart Davison
c/o Beyond, Inc.
P.O. Box 31990
Tucson, AZ 85751
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FASTFO.SIT

FileMover

Remember the last time you tried to move a bunch of files from one folder to another? First you have to carefully select them, one by one, perhaps from among a crowd of other pesky files that always seem to get in the way. If you

aren't careful, it's all too easy to lose your hard-won selection and then have to start from scratch. This scenario is an example of where the Mac's graphical interface actually gets in the way of efficient work. DOS users have the benefit of wildcard copies and deletes. Mac users, happily, have John Sarapata's FileMover, a power user's utility that combines the best of the Mac and DOS approaches to file management.

FileMover provides a scripting language that automates file transfers. But rather than selecting files with the mouse, you do it with script commands. The main FileMover window looks just like a spreadsheet (see Figure 13.3), neatly divided into columns and rows. Each row represents a line of your script. The three columns represent, in turn, a script command, a modifier, and an argument. For example, a typical row or script line might read

```
Select, Wildcard, *.txt
```

with each word in a separate cell.

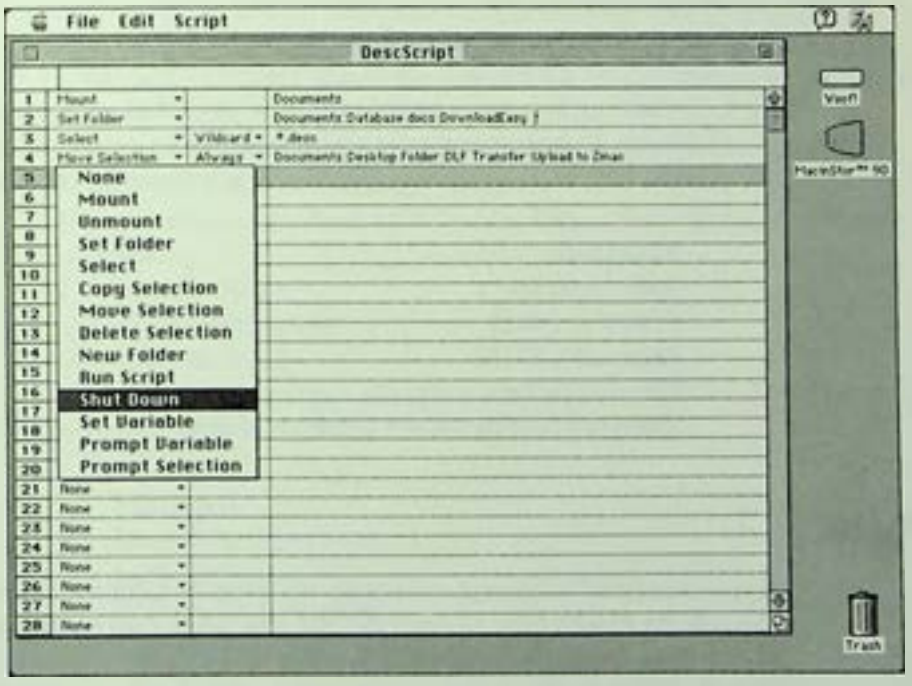


Figure 13.3
Creating an interactive backup script in FileMover

The scripting language supports both wildcards and variables. A script can even prompt you for data that will be passed on to a variable in the script. If you want to craft the scripts yourself, FileMover offers some help in the form of pull-down menus that contain the scripting language's commands and

modifiers. You can enter a command in the first column by highlighting it in the menu instead of typing it. If the command takes any modifiers, a second pull-down menu appears in the second cell. Although the scripting language is quite straightforward (it's a lot easier than what you would find in Userland Frontier, for example), the program will also generate scripts for you based on information you enter through simple point-and-click dialogs.

You can run scripts from within FileMover, or you can create desktop scripts that automatically run when you double-click them on the desktop. Desktop scripts require that a copy of FileMover be on a mounted volume. Scripts can run in the background and can even shut down your Mac when they have run their course.

FileMover is one of the most polished power tools available for the Mac. You'll wonder how you got along without it. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: The program eventually expires and will no longer run until you register.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: System 7 users should also check out Folderdash (in this chapter) for a System 7-savvy alternative to FileMover. It's not as powerful as FileMover, but many people will probably find it more intuitive to use.

Bat Filer, discussed earlier in this chapter, also manages file transfers, but the process isn't as automatic as FileMover's wonderful scripts.

FileMover
John Sarapata
9248 SW 146 Pl.
Miami, FL 33186
CIS: 76226,3164
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FILEMO.SEA

FileTyper

If you ever need to change a document's Type or Creator (four-letter codes that tell the Finder how to open the file and what icon to display) or any file's Finder flags, Daniel Azuma's FileTyper is widely seen as the utility of choice. (See DeskZap in this chapter for details on Finder flags.) FileTyper operates under either System 6.0x or System 7, so virtually every Mac user can take advantage of this program.

Under System 7, drag a file or files onto the FileTyper icon. Almost instantly, the program displays a dialog for the file (or for the first file if you dragged a group). The dialog includes check boxes for the various Finder

flags, and text entry fields displaying the file's Type and Creator codes. Make any changes you want and click Change. If you are making the same change to several files (for example, changing all TeachText files to Word documents), click Change All. If you change your mind about the changes, click Revert instead. FileTyper supports balloon help if you get stuck, but you'll have to drag a special FileTyper help extension to your Extensions folder.

System 6 users have to start FileTyper by double-clicking it and then opening a file. You won't be able to do global changes to a group of files under System 6. Other than that limitation, the program and its dialog function the same as on System 7.

If you find yourself regularly making the same changes to files, you can create custom so-called autotypers, using a companion utility called MakeAutoTyper that's included with FileTyper. You can, for example, create an autotyper that locks or unlocks any file or files dropped on its icon. This approach lets you avoid having to select the same settings again and again. Autotypers work with System 7 only, so if you haven't yet made it past the pearly gates of Seventh Heaven, you'll have to do some grunt work. FileTyper is distributed with four ready-made autotypers: TEXTtoMSWD (changes TeachText files to Microsoft Word); GroupLock (locks all files dropped on it); GroupUnlock (unlocks all files); and Vanish! (hides all files and folders dropped on it).

FileTyper is a splendid piece of shareware and highly recommended. Make sure you obtain version 3.2 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0x or later; System 7 strongly recommended.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: See also DeskZap and Get More Info in this chapter. Most System 6 users will find DeskZap the best choice.

FileTyper
Daniel Azuma
1449 Belleville Way
Sunnyvale, CA 94087
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FILTYP.CPT

Floppy Fixer

Floppy Fixer is a misnomer. This utility by Frank Beatrous doesn't actually fix floppies; rather, it recovers files from damaged floppies that you can no longer get the Mac to recognize as formatted disks. Sometimes, even commercial

products such as Norton Disk Doctor can't repair damaged floppies. Floppy Fixer lets you make a last-ditch attempt to recover the files on the floppy before you consign it to the landfill.

You start Floppy Fixer, choose the Open Volume command, and then insert the damaged floppy (write-protected). Floppy Fixer attempts to read the disk's directory and structure and, if successful, displays all the files in a File List window. Each file is tagged with a label: intact or bad. If the file is intact, just select it and click the Recover button. The program prompts you for a location to save the file. Recovery of intact files usually takes only a few moments. If the file is bad, you can select it and press the Repair button, and then try to recover it. Repairing a file can take several minutes, and recovering a repaired file can take even longer. So be prepared to adopt the demeanor of Job. Also, note that all of Floppy Fixer's repair work occurs in memory. The "repairs" do not affect the actual physical disk. Nevertheless, this program may give you a wonderful surprise after every other attempt to save some files has failed.

Floppy Fixer was mentioned in the February 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with at least two disk drives (two floppies or one floppy and a hard drive).

Limitations: Incompatible with Quadra; won't process files in the background.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: The author requests that the shareware fee be sent not to him, but to his favorite charity: Lupus Foundation of America, Inc., 1717 Massachusetts Avenue N.W., Suite 203, Washington, D.C. 20036.

Floppy Fixer
Frank Beatrous
309 Barnes Street
Pittsburgh, PA 15221
Internet: beatrous@pittvms.bitnet
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FLOPFX.SIT

Folderdash

A ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive

Moving files and folders around on the Mac by dragging is easy enough, but it's even easier under System 7 with a clever utility called Folderdash by Rob Gibson. You simply drag files and folders onto the Folderdash icon, and the program routes them to predefined folders on the basis of scripts that you construct by clicking buttons and entering text strings.

This approach to file management is a real time-saver if you find yourself often dragging the same files or types of files to the same folder(s). Just leave Folderdash on the desktop in a handy location, and drag the files to its icon rather than hunting for the desired folder. You can even drag in a collection of files that are destined for different folders. If you've scripted properly, Folderdash is smart enough to move all of the dragged files to their assigned locations, by matching each file with a script and then executing that script on the file.

Scripting probably sounds a bit intimidating, but Folderdash makes the process almost painless. With a simple dialog, you select the type of file you want the script to process. You can be quite specific: for example, a text file created by 4th Dimension. Or you can constrain matches to particular dates, file sizes, or Finder labels. You can tell Folderdash to move the original file, an alias, or a copy, or delete old versions of moved items if they exist in the destination folder. If you're moving a folder, the move can automatically include all subfolders and files, or you can indicate that you want the files within the folder to be moved to a separate location. The final step of creating the script is selecting a destination folder, which can be a folder on any volume that can be mounted on your Mac's desktop. That includes both hard disks and floppies. For floppies, if the volume specified by the script isn't mounted, Folderdash prompts you to insert it.

Folderdash is a ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive (see the beginning of Chapter 11 for information about Exclusives). Look for version 1.0.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: None

System 7: Required

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Don't try to select a volume as a destination. Always select a folder on that volume instead. If you try to use just the volume as a destination, Folderdash freezes and you'll have to restart your Mac to regain control of the mouse.

System 6 users should look at FileMover, described earlier in this chapter. It's not as handy as Folderdash because you can't use the drag-and-drop technique, but FileMover is more sophisticated and powerful than Folderdash in several other respects, so even System 7 users will want to take a gander. As with Folderdash, FileMover uses scripts to automate file management and movement.

Folderdash
Robert Gibson
RR#1 Carrying Place
Ontario, Canada, K0K 1L0
CIS: 71261,2236 or 72511,345
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FOLDAS.CPT

Get More Info

The Get More Info extension enhances the standard Get Info dialog box, adding controls for changing Finder flags as well as Type and Creator codes for any file (see Figure 13.4). Drop the extension into your System folder and restart the Mac. Select a file, press Option-Command-I (instead of the usual Command-I keystroke), and a Get More Info window opens for the selected file. It resembles the standard Get Info window, but supplies Type/Creator codes and check boxes for Finder flags in addition to the Locked flag you usually see. Make your choices and click the Close Box in the upper-left corner of the window; your changes take effect immediately. (You can still use the standard Get Info window by pressing Command-I.) Look for version 1.2 or later.

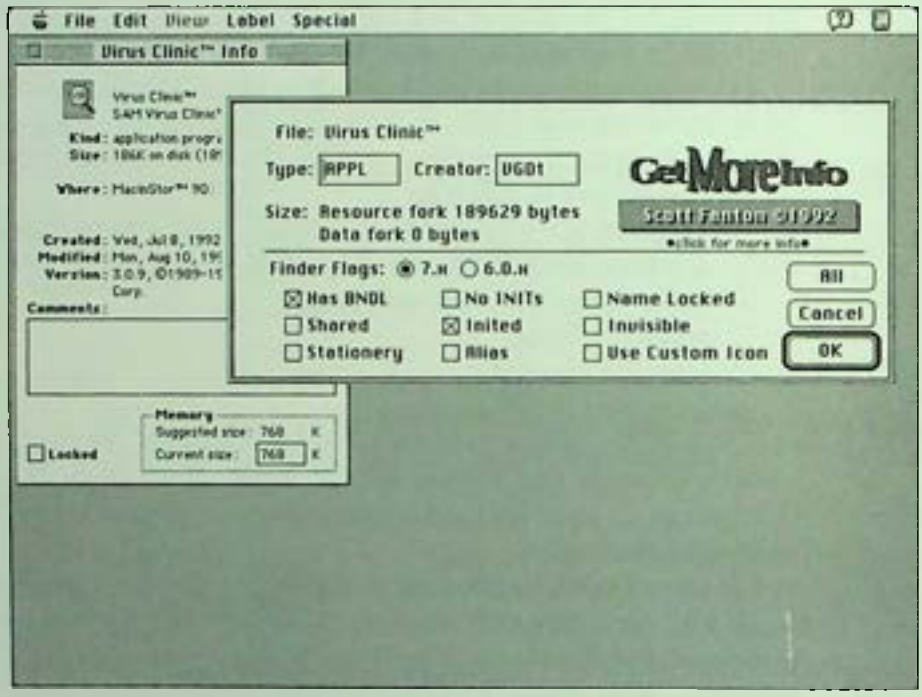


Figure 13.4
The Get More Info alternative to the standard Get Info window (in the background)

Requirements: Any Mac, with System 6.0.7 or later.
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: If you use System 7, consider Rob Gibson's GetInfo drag-and-drop application. You can see and modify the name, Type, Creator, and Finder flags of items just by dragging them onto Get Info's icon. This

program is available on ZiffNet/Mac as file GETINF.SIT in the Download and Support Forum. And Gibson's SetInfo (SETINF.SIT) program is a variant of sorts; you drop items onto SetInfo to automatically set their Finder information without actually seeing them displayed. SetInfo works with selected items or with the contents of selected folders.

File Fanatic, by Roby Sherman, is another System 7 utility that allows you to modify your files' Type and Creator attributes, quickly and easily, without using ResEdit. You simply drag the files onto the File Fanatic icon. It's available as file FILEFA.CPT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.

Kwang Lee's BunchTyper (BUNTYP.CPT) handles only the task of changing the Type and Creator codes (no Finder flags), but this one is System 7–savvy, including balloon help, drag-and-drop functionality, and so forth. BunchTyper requires System 7.

If you're a die-hard HyperCard user, you might prefer FileType Changer (FILETY.CPT), a stack by Kevin Norris. MIDI enthusiasts will find this stack particularly useful because it includes a large number of predefined Type/Creator change definitions involving various MIDI formats and programs.

If you don't want to add yet another extension to your System folder, consider the DeskZap DA by Bruce Tomlin, discussed earlier in this chapter. See also FileTyper in this chapter.

Get More Info
Scott Fenton
P.O. Box 711
Williston, VT 05495
AOL: ScottF2
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: GMINFO.CPT

HeapTool

If you suddenly start experiencing crashes on your Mac, particularly if you load a lot of extensions at start-up, one of the first things that people will probably tell you to do is to increase your System heap. That doesn't mean boosting your Mac's RAM with SIMMs! It does mean, however, that you need to use a special utility designed for the purpose. One of the most popular is Kerry Clendinning's HeapTool.

The System heap is a block of memory that is set aside at start-up for System resources that can be made available to all applications, such as device drivers and the like. In a way, the heap is the heart and soul of your Mac. Well-programmed extensions ask for extra heap space at start-up. Poorly written ones can make sudden demands on the heap after start-up; these cause the

crashes. HeapTool is itself a control panel extension that lets you increase the heap to avoid the problem.

Increasing the System heap should probably be considered a last resort. You might be better off trimming your use of extensions, especially superfluous ones or those of unknown reliability. Moreover, the System 7 heap resizes itself dynamically, so heap-fixers should never be needed on a System 7 Mac. And in general, if you're not having problems, don't "fix" it.

HeapTool was mentioned in the December 18, 1990, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 1.4 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: None

System 7: System heap-fixers are probably not necessary for System 7 Macs, although some Mac gurus will debate that.

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: If you have already used a System heap utility that actually modifies the hard disk's boot blocks (such as Bootman), you should use that same utility to reset the System heap to the default, *before* you use HeapTool. Bill Steinberg's Bootman is an alternative to HeapTool that also lets you increase the heap and changes the maximum number of files you can have open. Bootman actually makes physical changes to your start-up disk; HeapTool doesn't, so some consider HeapTool less likely to cause problems. On ZiffNet/Mac, Bootman is available as file BOOTMN.SIT in the Download and Support Forum.

HeapTool
Kerry Clendinning
P.O. Box 26061
Austin, TX 78755
CIS: 76424,2214
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: HEAPTO.SIT

iContraption

You might call iContraption a sort of U-Haul for the System 7 Mac. In fact, its creators describe iContraption as the "Icon Family Moving Machine." If you like to edit or move icons around in System 7, iContraption is an ideal tool.

Under System 7, applications generally have several icon resources that provide the icons associated with that program and its documents. These resources include ICN#, icl4, icl8, ics#, ics4, and ics8. The resources are commonly referred to as an icon family. The iContraption utility provides an intuitive, elegant environment for working with these resources efficiently.

The utility has three main windows: Icon Picker, Icon Family Portrait, and FatBits Editing (Figure 13.5). The Icon Picker window lets you view and copy icon families or even create new families. Each icon family is represented by a single icon, so you don't need to worry about selecting the individual icon resources that make up the family. Moving the icon families around among files is as simple as dragging a file from one folder to another. The Icon Family Portrait window lets you view or create individual icon resources within a family. You access this window by double-clicking a family icon in the Icon Picker window. The FatBits Editing window opens when you double-click an icon resource in the Portrait window, and lets you edit the icon at the pixel level. You can also open an empty FatBits window and create a new icon from scratch, but since the editing tools are fairly limited, you might still want to use ResEdit for major icon projects.

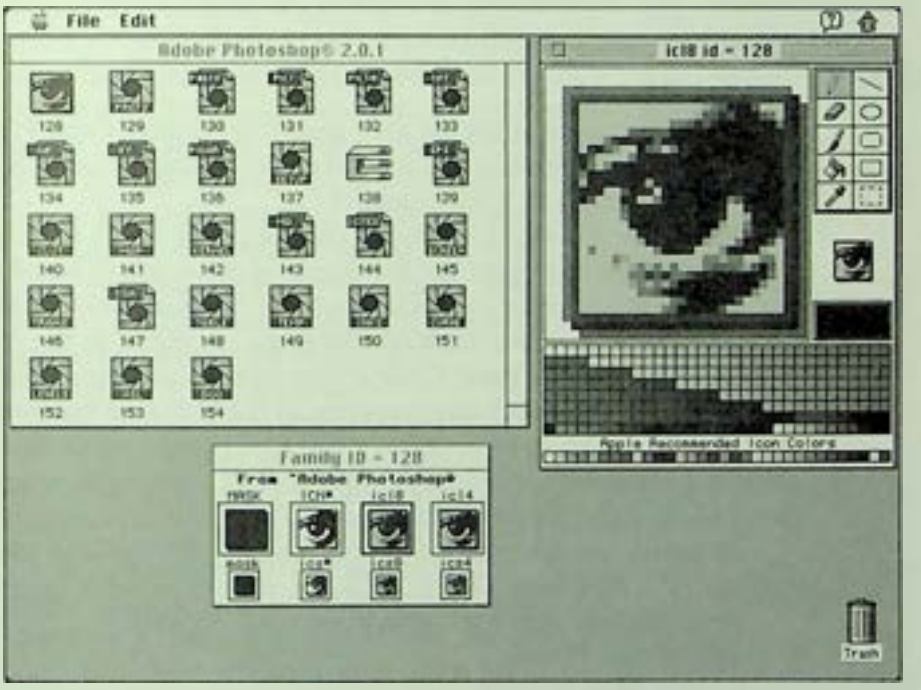


Figure 13.5
Making icons with iContraption

The iContraption utility is an easy way to incorporate the many replacement icons available for applications that you already have. (Large collections of such icons are available through the on-line services and even from smaller local BBSs. Ask for these collections, and you'll be pointed in the right direction.) This utility is far easier to use than ResEdit. Look for version 1.0.2 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac that supports color.
Limitations: None
System 7: Required
Registration Fee: $$
Tips & Techniques: System 6 users on the prowl for an icon editor should look at Color Bits by Ben Haller. It's discussed in this chapter.

iContraption
Tom Poston
c/o imMedia
1910 Graybark Avenue
Charlotte, NC 28205
AOL: TPoston
CIS: 71551,2020
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ICONTR.CPT

MacEnvy

The MacEnvy name arises not only from a syndrome some PC users might suffer, but also from what this control panel extension actually does: It reports on your Mac's ENVIronment.

When you access the MacEnvy control panel, you'll see a palette with five buttons that represent the five pages of information MacEnvy can display about your Mac: Hardware, Software, SCSI Devices, Monitors and NuBus Slot Devices, and Parameter RAM Settings—in short, as the documentation puts it: "What's in the Box." Click a page button, and you'll see relevant information about your Mac's configuration in the text area below the page palette. The pages can all be saved to a text file. There's no on-line help, but there is a reference guide in MacWrite format that might help you make sense of all the technical gobbledygook.

MacEnvy was discussed in the November 1989 issue of *MacUser* and in the March 7, 1989, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 2.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac, with System 4.2 or later.
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: System 7 users don't even have to install MacEnvy in their Control Panels folder. Just leave it in any folder, and double-click it when you need the information MacEnvy provides. You can still access all its pages and reporting capabilities without having it load at start-up.

If you want more information on the game of Life included in MacEnvy, take a look at the articles that started it all: *Scientific American,* "Computer Recreations," May 1985 and February 1987.

For other approaches to System snooping, see Speedometer and TattleTale in this chapter. TattleTale provides additional information about start-up extensions that will be useful if you ever need to send your Mac's configuration to a company's technical support department. MacEnvy's report lacks this sometimes vital information.

MacEnvy
Ken McLeod
(No address available)
Internet: thecloud@dhw68k.cts.com
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MACENV.SIT

MemINIT

MemINIT is a control panel extension that displays, in a simple pie or bar chart, a comparison of free versus used memory for the active application. The bar chart appears in the menu bar, and the pie chart replaces the Apple menu's Apple icon. You can choose which chart you want, control the colors that depict used and free memory, the number of tick marks in the bar chart, and how often the chart is updated. MemINIT can save a trip to the Finder and the Apple menu's About This Macintosh command. Look for version 2.0.3 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac, with System 5.0 or later.

Limitations: Bar chart indicator does not display properly on the Apple 16-inch RGB monitor. MemINIT may not function if you are using a non-Apple or accelerated video card.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: If you like colorful views of the way your Mac uses its RAM, also check out Joe Holt's Swatch. On ZiffNet/Mac it's available as file SWATCH.SIT in the Download and Support Forum. Swatch is mostly a tool for programmers, but can be fascinating to look at. It displays a bar for each active application, as well as for the System and Finder. Various colors indicate how RAM is being used. You can zoom in on any bar to get a closer look. Use Swatch's horizontal scroll bar to see the entire bar, or resize the Swatch window so more of each bar's length is visible. Make sure you obtain version 1.2.2 or later.

MemINIT
Seth LaForge
450 Redmond Road
Eureka, CA 95501
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MEMINI.CPT

MergeScrap DA

If you use more than one Mac at home, or perhaps through a server at work, you may have had occasion to combine the contents of two or more Scrapbook files. You can do it with a clumsy copy-and-paste process, or you can turn to the MergeScrap DA—a simple, single-purpose utility that merges Scrapbook files. Written by Marcio Luis Teixeira when he was 14 years old, MergeScrap DA asks you to select the source and destination Scrapbook files and then merges them. It's fast, inexpensive, and foolproof. Look for version 1.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $

MergeScrap DA
Marcio Luis Teixeira
1601 W. Swallow, #B-9
Fort Collins, CO 80526
AOL: MarcioT
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MSCRAP.CPT

Message DA

Next time you contribute to the office paper glut by sticking yet another Post-it note on your Mac's monitor to let co-workers know you're out to lunch, try this alternative: an infinitely renewable source of on-screen notes known as the Message DA.

Install and open Message, enter the text you want displayed in the on-screen message, and click the Do It button. A black band the width of your monitor appears and your message races across it—like the dynamic display of stock figures (the news jet) at the New York Stock Exchange, or a running movie marquee. You can also save your message within the DA, so that you can reuse it by simply double-clicking it in a scrolling list below the message-entry area. Look for version 3.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: Jochen Meyer's Tell-Me is a System 7 application that offers Post-it-style notes. You can even add sound annotations if your Mac has a mike. Tell-Me uses very little memory, so you can leave it running

all the time (or even place an alias to it in the Startup Items folder) and create notes at any time. It's clever and inexpensive ($). Unfortunately, it is incompatible with the Quadra. On ZiffNet/Mac, Tell-Me is available as file TELLME.CPT in the Download and Support Forum.

Message DA
Steve Christensen
6901 Chiala Lane
San Jose, CA 95129
CIS: 76174,1712
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MESSAG.BIN

MountImage

Apple sometimes distributes its software as DiskCopy image files. A DiskCopy image is a sort of "snapshot" of a floppy that lets you reconstruct the floppy and its exact file or folder organization. Turning these images into usable software is a bit of a chore. You have to open the image with the DiskCopy utility, insert a floppy disk, and wait for DiskCopy to place the image contents (the software) on the floppy; and then you still have to install the software from the floppy. It's an annoying process and almost always confuses novice Mac users. A more sensible approach to dealing with the rogue DiskCopy image files you might encounter is available in MountImage, by Steve Christensen.

MountImage (also known as Mount DiskCopy Images) is a control panel extension you drop in the System folder. When you open it, you'll see several icons. Click one, and a standard Open dialog lets you navigate among your mounted floppies or hard disks. Select the DiskCopy Image you want to work with, click the Open button, and the image file opens on the desktop as if it were a floppy or folder. Just select the files you want to copy out of the image file and drag them to your hard disk or another volume. Then close MountImage and drag the opened image file to the trash. (You'll probably receive an error alert, but just ignore it.) The DiskCopy image will disappear from the desktop just as if you had ejected a floppy by dragging its icon to the trash.

Look for version 1.1b3 or later.
Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

MountImage
Steve Christensen
6901 Chiala Lane
San Jose, CA 95129

CIS: 76174,1712
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MOUNTI.CPT

MultiSpool

Print spooling is the process of saving a print job to a special spool file on your disk, and then printing in the background while you use you Mac to do other things. Mac System software includes a print spooler for PostScript printing. But what about all you ImageWriter users out there? In the shareware arena, the only offering I've ever seen is MultiSpool by Giuseppe Carnevale. There's no documentation on this extension, but thousands of users swear by it. Just drop it in your System folder and print away.

Requirements: System 6.0.2 or later, with 2Mb RAM and MultiFinder.
Limitations: None
System 7: Incompatible
Registration Fee: None

MultiSpool
Giuseppe Carnevale
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MSPOOL.CPT

PowerBook Tools

Purchasing a PowerBook is expensive enough; but owning and enhancing one doesn't have to take a major bite out of your pocketbook, as long as people keep putting out noncommercial doodads to soften the PowerBook's rough edges. A good example is CompuServe MAUG sysop Bill Steinberg's small collection of add-ons called PowerBook (or PB) Tools.

The package consists of two pieces of software: a System extension called SafeSleep, and an FKEY called SpinD. PowerBooks have a Sleep function that automatically puts the LCD screen (the most voracious consumer of battery power) to sleep whenever the mouse and keyboard have been inactive for specific periods. Unfortunately, anyone can tap a key, awaken your sleeping laptop, and get at your files. SafeSleep adds a layer of security to the Sleep function by forcing the keytapper to enter a password. It's not tamperproof by any means, but SafeSleep can prevent the accidental tourist to your PowerBook from wandering in, well, accidentally.

The second component, the SpinD FKEY, stops the internal hard disk from spinning (and using power). Although PowerBooks already let you set an interval after which the disk powers down if it's not being accessed, this

FKEY lets you stop the spinning whenever you want. After the LCD screen, the hard drive drains the most power from the battery, so minimizing hard disk spin can conserve power.

Be forewarned that Steinberg's PowerBook Tools (especially SafeSleep) are gems in the rough at the moment. SafeSleep, for example, is not easily customizable (unless you're ResEdit-savvy). But both parts of the package can help you get the most juice out of that battery. Look for version 1.2 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac PowerBook

Limitations: SafeSleep requires you to use ResEdit to change the password, as shown in Figure 13.6. (This requirement may be changed by the time you read this.)

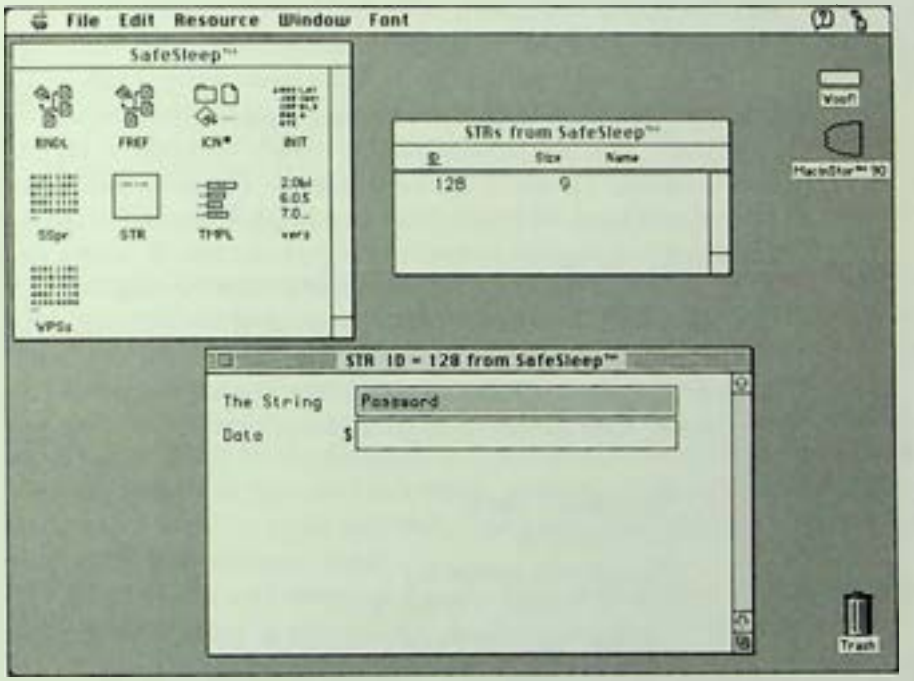


Figure 13.6
Changing the password in SafeSleep with ResEdit

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: The PowerBook line of Macintoshes has become one of the best-selling computers of all time, and new shareware for the PowerBook is appearing constantly. Following are a few items you might find especially useful or diverting. You can find them all on ZiffNet/Mac, in the Download and Support Forum, by the file names given in parentheses.

PowerSleep (PSLEEP.CPT) by Urs Calibran is similar to SafeSleep, but offers no password protection.

PBKeys (PBKEYS.CPT) and ExtendIt! (EXTEND.CPT) both enhance the PowerBook keyboard. David Kreindler's PBKeys lets you mimic a numerical keypad by remapping a preordained group of keys to be these characters: / * 7 8 9 - 4 5 6 + 1 2 3 = 0 and the decimal point. ExtendIt!, by Andreas Atkins, restores the extended keyboard's Home, End, Page Up, and Page Down keys in the form of FKEYs.

Ricardo Batista's Zync application (ZYNC.CPT), despite a painfully plain interface, does a decent job of synchronizing files used on both a PowerBook and a desktop Mac. For example, if you keep the same database file on both Macs, Zync ensures that both computers have the most recent version of the file.

A ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive

CellMate (CELMAT.CPT), by Fred Hollander, is a ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive that places a battery icon in the menu bar to keep you informed of how much power is left in the PowerBook's battery. (See the beginning of Chapter 11 for information on Exclusives.) The icon also lets you put the PowerBook to sleep with a simple click, no matter what application you're in.

Finally, prurient interest will inevitably lead you to try out PowerOrgasm (PORGAS.CPT), one of the most popular PowerBook "toys" available. It's a System extension by Frank Price and Mark Weaver. Install it, and then unplug and replug the PowerBook's power cord. If you've ever seen the infamous deli scene between Meg Ryan and Billy Crystal in the movie *When Harry Met Sally*, you know what to expect. Boys will be boys.

If you want something more G-rated, try David Thompson's Sound-Asleep extension (SOUNDA.CPT). You'll hear a yawn from your PowerBook every time it's about to go to sleep.

PowerBook Tools
Bill Steinberg
(No address available)
CIS: 76703,1027 GEnie: BillS
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: PBTOOL.CPT

SCSI Probe

The art of connecting SCSI devices to your Mac—whether they take the form of hard disks, DAT drives, flopticals, removable cartridges, or scanners—is sometimes, with great justification, called SCSI Voodoo. Start-up problems frequently arise from incompatibilities among devices (CD-ROM drives and scanners don't always take kindly to one another or to other SCSI devices), IDs (each device must have a unique ID number), and even cables purchased

from different manufacturers. If all this sounds like a nightmare you've had or want to avoid, you'll want Robert Polic's SCSI Probe at your side.

SCSI Probe is a control panel extension that opens to display various key bits of information about every SCSI device connected to your Mac. (The string of such devices is known as the *SCSI chain*.) The information is organized, spreadsheet fashion, in five columns as illustrated in Figure 13.7: ID, Type, Vendor, Product, and Version. To see more of any cell, you can resize the columns by dragging the column divider.

Figure 13.7
Keeping tabs on your SCSI chain with SCSI Probe

Buttons let you mount SCSI volumes or update the SCSI bus. There are also options for closing a cartridge device's driver after the cartridge (SyQuest-based or Bernoulli) has been ejected. This is useful if you use cartridges initialized by different formatting software. If you don't close the previous device's driver before inserting the new cartridge, you risk data corruption. Another of SCSI Probe's options lets you install a mounting extension, which lets you mount SCSI volumes without actually accessing the SCSI Probe control panel. You just press user-definable keys, and SCSI Probe attempts to mount all available volumes.

SCSI Probe was mentioned in the May 1989 issue of *MacUser* and the June 6, 1989, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 3.4 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with an SCSI hard disk.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: If you are adding a device to your SCSI chain and can't remember the SCSI IDs of the devices you already have (I never can, and the Post-its with the numbers always fall off or get snatched by the cats), SCSI Probe is a quick way to see what IDs are open for use. The extension doesn't even have to be installed, at least under System 7. Just double-click it on the desktop to see a quick display of your SCSI chain.

Bob Easterday's SCSI Info control panel extension provides the same sort of information as SCSI Probe. It also mounts disks. Some people report incompatibilities between it and the Mac IIfx. On ZiffNet/Mac, it's available as file SCSIFO.CPT in the Download and Support Forum.

SCSI Probe
Robert Polic
(No address available)
AOL: POLIC
CIS: 76662,1777
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SCSIPR.SIT

SetClock

If you're a stickler for being on time, or perhaps a network administrator, you need some method to make sure your Mac or all the Macs on your network display the correct or at least the same time. Calling POPCORN on the telephone is the old-fashioned way to do it, but why not let your Mac do the work more scientifically? That's precisely what Jim Leitch's SetClock utility does.

SetClock uses the modem connected to your Mac to call the same atomic clock used by the U.S. Bureau of Standards. SetClock synchronizes your Mac's date and time setting with that of the atomic clock. You can choose from three numbers to call—Toronto, Ontario; Washington, D.C.; or Boulder, Colorado. Before you actually make the call, enter time zone information so that SetClock can enter the correct local time into your Mac, and enter any required special modem initialization strings. Once you have all the settings set, click the Dial button. In less than a minute you can be certain your Mac is running on time. Just remember that, for most people, this is a long-distance call.

SetClock was mentioned in the April 11, 1989, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 3.3 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with a modem.
Limitations: Doesn't automatically redial if the line is busy.
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: The documentation is in the program. You access it through the File menu. You'll probably save yourself some frustration by carefully reading through it (it only takes a few minutes) before you click the Dial button.

SetClock
Jim Leitch
61 Shaughnessy Blvd.
Willowdale, Ontario, Canada M2J 1H9

CIS: 70416,1532
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SETCLK.SIT

Speedometer

If you think you don't know quite enough about your Mac's innards, you can find out a lot more with Scott Berfield's Speedometer utility. This sophisticated system analyzer puts your Mac through a series of tests in order to gauge its performance. The tests range from standard benchmarking, such as the Sieve of Eratosthenes, to examinations of your Mac's use of color, speed, and FPU (floating point unit) processor. The program displays the results of its battery of tests on the screen, or you can print hard copy. You can also compare your Mac's performance with other common models (but see *Limitations*, below). Speedometer also fills you in on your basic hardware and System configuration, including details on your CPU model, RAM, and the versions of your System, Finder, LaserWriter driver, MultiFinder, AppleTalk, and so on. It's an easy way to see what's under that beige or platinum hood.

Speedometer was examined in the October 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 3.06 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: You can't actually compare your Mac's performance until you pay the registration fee. You then receive a file with statistics on other Mac models.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$$

Tips & Techniques: If you're interested in a more detailed look at your Mac, see also MacEnvy and TattleTale in this chapter.

Speedometer
Scott Berfield
c/o Parity Productions
26043 Gushue St.
Hayward, CA 94544
CIS: 72627,564
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SPEEDO.CPT

System Errors DA

When a Mac crashes, the problem that caused the crash (if it was System related) is usually presented in an often cryptic error alert. The System Errors DA lists all of these errors and provides a terse phrase describing the error.

Learning that error 28, which caused your Mac or application to crash, means "dsStknHeap (stack has moved into application heap)" probably won't be all that helpful to a nonprogrammer. On the other hand, it is oddly reassuring for most of us if we know something, *anything*, about such events. We at least get the illusion that we're still somewhat in control of the situation. On the practical side, you can refer the information provided by the System Errors DA to someone wiser than you in the ways of the Mac operating system. And some of the errors are fairly obvious. For example, "-34 dskFulErr (disk full error)" gives you a pretty good clue that you need to delete some files.

The System Errors DA was discussed in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 3.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

System Errors DA
Bill Steinberg
(No address available)
CIS: 76703,1027
GEnie: BillS
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SYSERR.SIT

System Picker

Although the practice of keeping multiple System folders on a hard disk is not recommended, sometimes it becomes necessary. For instance, if you are just switching to System 7, you may find that some of your favorite programs haven't yet been updated to be compatible, and you might need to use System 6 to run those older programs. Or you might need "customized" System folders with various sets of extensions or fonts for specific tasks (word processing, programming, or DTP, for example). Kevin Aitken's System Picker utility is an extremely simple application that lets you switch between different System folders without any hassle.

You simply start the program. It scans your hard disk(s) for System folders, and lets you select the one you want to use, through a pop-up menu. Choose it and click the Restart button. Repeat the process when you need to switch to another System folder. Unlike some of the other system-switching utilities available, System Picker works with partitioned hard drives.

There's built-in help if you get stuck. Look for version 1.0b11 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with a hard disk.

Limitations: Probably should not be used on hard disks where you have fiddled with the boot blocks, using utilities such as Bootman. See HeapTool in this chapter (the *Tips & Techniques* section) for information about Bootman.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Although System Picker is probably the most reliable way to deal with multiple System folders, there are alternatives. Blesser (BLESS.SIT) has been very popular with some users. Its name comes from Apple's habit of calling the start-up System folder "blessed." SwitchBoot (SWBOOT.CPT) is a System extension that also lets you choose the System folder you want to use at start-up. It does not support System switching on partitioned disks. Both Blesser and SwitchBoot are available on numerous services. (The file names given in parentheses are for the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum.)

I strongly recommend that you avoid having multiple System folders. Rather than adding System folders with custom configurations, look into shareware programs such as Carpetbag, Extensions Manager, or init cdev 3.0 (all discussed in Chapters 11 and 12). Commercial solutions include Suitcase II (Fifth Generation), Now Utilities (Now Software), and INIT Manager (Baseline).

System Picker
Kevin Aitken
20990 Valley Green Dr. #635
Cupertino, CA 95014
AOL: HartAitken
CIS: 71150,2222
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SYSPIC.SIT

TattleTale

Gathering even basic information about the Mac proves difficult for many people. What CPU version do you have? What extensions are installed? What fonts? And when it comes to more esoteric features such as FPUs, MMUs, and monitor and video card configurations, most people don't even know where to begin. Your best bet is to begin with TattleTale, a remarkable utility by John Mancino that can snoop out even the darkest secrets hidden in the circuitry and software of your Mac.

Using TattleTale doesn't require a degree in computer science (although some of the information it provides might). Start the program, and it scans your hardware and software to find the data for its reports. Once the program has scoped out your Mac, you view the report you want by choosing it from a menu. The menu is neatly divided into three main sections: System Hardware

(CPU, volumes, monitors, ADB devices, and such); System Software (fonts, extensions, control panels, drivers, and System-related); and Other (open applications). Any of this information can be viewed on screen as shown in Figure 13.8, printed, saved to a text file, or even exported in a tab-delimited format suitable for importing into a database.

Figure 13.8
TattleTale gives you the lowdown on your Mac

The information lets you get to know your computer better, and that's always a good idea. If you don't know what the report is telling you or if you are bewildered by some of the technical jargon, be sure to try TattleTale's excellent on-line, context-sensitive help (accessed through the Definitions button). The help feature provides definitions of many of the terms you'll find in the reports.

TattleTale was discussed in the September 10, 1991, issue of *MacWEEK*. This utility comes in two different forms: as a DA for System 6 users, and as an application for the System 7 crowd. Look for version 1.3.1 or later. Both versions of the program are updated and enhanced frequently.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: System 6 users should obtain the DA version of TattleTale (ZiffNet/Mac file name TATTLE.SEA). System 7 users should look for the application version.

TattleTale reports are useful for sending to technical support staff when they need to know your Mac's configuration in order to diagnose a problem you might be having with their software.

TattleTale
John Mancino
1910 Joslyn Place
Boulder, CO 80304
AOL: JGCMan
CIS: 70337,2143
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: TATAPP.SEA

TEXT<->ttro

Both commercial and shareware products frequently come with ReadMe files in the TeachText format, and sometimes the document is in a special read-only version. The file icons of these types of TeachText documents look like the front page of a newspaper. Creating these special TeachText files used to involve mucking around with ResEdit, but Larry Harris's TEXT<->ttro makes that messiness unnecessary, at least for System 7 users.

TEXT<->ttro converts the read-only type of TeachText document into the regular format, and vice versa. Just drag the file to the TEXT<->ttro icon, and this drag-and-drop application does the rest. Since it's useful at times to be able to edit read-only TeachText files, this utility is invaluable for both types. The program is slick and easy to use. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.
Limitations: None
System 7: Required
Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: After you use TEXT<->ttro on a document, it may still retain its old icon until you close and reopen the file's folder.

If you don't use System 7, you can do exactly what TEXT<->ttro does, by using a Finder flag changer such as the DeskZap DA discussed in this chapter. Just start DeskZap and select the TeachText file. Change the file Type to either TEXT for a TeachText document you can edit, or to ttro (Type names are case-sensitive!) for a read-only document with the snazzy newspaper icon. You may have to close and reopen the folder containing the file for the icon to put on its new face.

For another approach to dealing with TeachText documents, see also Belgian Postcards in Chapter 5.

TEXT<->ttro
Larry Harris
23 Hilltop MHP
Chapel Hill, NC 27514
AOL: LHarris
CIS: 76150,1027
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: TEXTRO.CPT

Tidy It Up!

Tidy It Up! is definitely a *sui generis* kind of utility you're not likely to see duplicated for the Mac or any other computer. It's sort of like having dear old Mom and Dad inside your Mac. But this electronic parent doesn't clean up the mess in your room; rather, Tidy It Up! brings order to the chaos lurking in your System folder.

Before System 7's sane approach to the System folder was born (with subfolders for organizing control panels, extensions, and preference files, each in their own nook), the System folder inevitably became cluttered with fonts, control panels, System files, Chooser devices, and more—all jumbled up in a bewildering kind of primordial System soup. A Belgian programmer named Guy Fiems decided to bring order to the chaos, and he let Tidy It Up! loose on the Mac world.

Tidy It Up! organizes the System folder by arranging all its contents into categories: fonts, extensions, System files, control panels, and so forth. To see the organization, you need to view the System folder by Icon or by Small Icon. The individual icons are grouped by category, and the program alphabetizes the files within each category. Each category is set apart from the others and labeled with an empty folder to the left of the group. Each folder has an appropriate name (Fonts, for example). The files in each category are even colorized (if you have a color monitor) so that you can spot them quickly. You can increase or decrease the space between the icons, and control the number of columns in which the icons are arranged.

You can manually do everything Tidy It Up! does for you, of course, but the utility (like a long-suffering parent) is much more convenient. Tidy It Up! was discussed in the June 1990 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac that can run System 6 or earlier.
Limitations: None
System 7: Incompatible
Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: Since most people frequently add or remove System folder files, you'll want to run Tidy It Up! at least once a month to keep your System folder tidy.

Tidy It Up!
Guy Fiems
Av. Leopold III, 77
B1970 Wezembeek
Belgium
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: TIDYUP.SIT

CHAPTER

14

Security and Antiviral Tools

DES

Disinfectant

GateKeeper

Launch INIT

MacPassword

MacUser Security Set

Obliterate

Protect It

VirusDetective and VirusBlockade II

Zorba

AS FRIENDLY AS THE MAC IS—FROM ITS CHEERFUL OPENING SCREEN TO its intuitive interface—there are Mac users out there who are not so friendly. Some are those loathsome people who create computer viruses maliciously or as college pranks. Others want to steal or destroy data on your hard disk or floppies. This chapter offers several programs to help you guard against both forms of computerized violence.

What is the real likelihood of your Mac succumbing to one of the Mac computer viruses (what antiviral crusader Jeff Shulman cleverly coined as "hexually transmitted diseases")? It's probably not as great as the shrill media accounts would lead you to believe. If you exchange data only with the major on-line services such as America Online, CompuServe, GEnie, and ZiffNet/Mac, where all files are thoroughly virus-checked, or if you use only commercial software, your chances of contracting a computer virus are slim. But if you share floppy disks (the main route of virus transmission) with friends or strangers, or access local BBSs (which may or may not consistently check files for viruses), your chances increase.

In my own experience, I've found most virus scares to be simple problems caused by ignorance. (For instance, someone couldn't get a program to work properly and assumed the obstacle must be a virus, though the real obstacle was that the software wasn't being used correctly because the manual hadn't been read.) But better safe than sorry: It doesn't hurt to be concerned and install some sort of antiviral protection. Infected files do pop up from unexpected sources. I once received an infected floppy in a commercial, shrink-wrapped package. Though it was a minor product from a rinky-dink company, such unthinkable and unlikely incidents do occasionally happen.

Antiviral utilities generally take one of two approaches to virus control: They detect specific, known viruses; or they sit in your System folder and watch for suspicious activities indicating that a virus might be attempting to infect a file. Because the latter type of antiviral program is more invasive, it tends to be more incompatible with other programs or extensions you might be using. On the up side, resident-type antiviral programs do offer the promise of catching new viruses that escape the single-purpose kind of utility. You'll find both types in this chapter: Disinfectant and VirusDetective fall into the first category; GateKeeper into the second. Which type you need depends on your work habits and the degree of exposure to viruses you think you might have. A simple scan once a month with Disinfectant or VirusDetective may be all you need.

As if viruses weren't enough, there's another danger to which some Macs are exposed: file snooping or file theft. To protect your files from such fates, there are a number of commercial and shareware programs that help you put those bytes behind bars for their own good. Most security programs let you control access to either a hard disk or to certain files on that disk. Be careful, though—you can conceivably lock yourself out of files or disks, so make sure you have a complete backup in a safe location before you install any security

software. This way you will be able to restore your files in the unlikely case you have to reformat your hard disk.

Also realize that a knowledgeable and dedicated data desperado can almost always find a way to defeat any commercial or shareware security program. What most security utilities provide is merely an annoyance factor that encourages snoopers to snoop elsewhere. And most data loss is due not to deliberate theft, but rather to carelessness on the part of the computer operator. For most personal computer users, the best security of all is a program of regular daily or weekly backups. And you do back up, of course, don't you?

Finally, before you install any antiviral or security software, keep in mind that some antiviral and most security programs (like Pip's sister in *Great Expectations*) are "given to government." They like to be in charge and almost inevitably take some control away from you, consequently making your Mac a less friendly place to work or play. It's a "feature" most people eager to protect their Macs never take into consideration. Consider it, and then decide.

For the most part, I've selected programs in this chapter that have the least potential for causing problems for you, and the most potential for giving you some peace of mind. You'll find details on three excellent virus detectors; two of them are even free. There's an extension that tracks who is using what programs, when they're using them, and for how long. A substitute for the Mac's trash feature completely destroys files so that even file recovery utilities can't resurrect them. You'll find encryption programs that scramble files, and stern hard disk or file lockers that let you shield sensitive material from prying eyes. There's even a utility that lets you copy-protect your applications so people can't make illegal copies of them.

DES

John Powers's DES utility is so named because it implements the National Bureau of Standards Data Encryption Standard algorithm (DES), a method of scrambling files in hard-to-crack code.

To use DES to encrypt a file, double-click the utility's icon, and a dialog lets you select the file you want to hide from prying eyes. When you click Open, the program asks you for a password (the dialog calls it an encryption key). The password can be up to eight characters and is case-sensitive: *PassWord* is not the same as *password*. Click OK, and DES encrypts the file, giving it a distinctive icon and file name extension (.DES) so you can distinguish encrypted files from normal files at a glance. To decrypt a file, just double-click it. DES starts and asks for the password. Options let you delete or even "shred" the original file. (The shredding option ensures that others can't recover the deleted file with a disk editor or undelete utility.)

The first version of DES (2.3) I saw several years ago was one of the slowest implementations of DES encryption available at the time. Powers has since improved the program, making it a lot more useful. DES affords a bare-bones interface, so steer clear if you prefer glamour and glitz. Look for version 3.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $$
Tips & Techniques: If you send a DES-encrypted file to a friend, make sure you also send a copy of the DES utility. The file cannot be decrypted without the software.

The key to effective use of all programs with password schemes is devising passwords other people can't easily guess. Don't use the names of your pets or children. Choose passwords that are random and not connected to you. You can always adopt the St. Francis approach: Open a book and drop your finger on a word. This technique places the selection of the password outside your control, in a sense, and makes it more difficult for others to divine the magic key to your files.

Both Compact Pro and StuffIt Deluxe, two popular compression utilities, can create password-protected, compressed archives. That protection may be all you need.

The MacUser Security Set includes a utility called the Scrambler that offers DES encryption.

DES
John P. Powers
2406 Richwood Drive
Garland, TX 75044
CIS: 75776,3247
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: DES.CPT

Disinfectant

After all the media-hyped computer virus scares of recent years, most Mac owners are at least curious about antiviral utilities; and many of you may want some protection lickety-split. Disinfectant isn't the most powerful antiviral program for the Mac, but it is generously provided to the Mac community free of charge by John Norstad (recognized among Mac users as all but a living saint). This program is all most people ever need to provide satisfactory antiviral protection with a minimum of fuss.

Disinfectant provides two tools for combating computer viruses: an application and a System extension. You can tell the Disinfectant program to scan or disinfect specific files, folders, floppies (or other removable media such as CD-ROM disks), hard disks, the System file only, the System folder, or desktop files (System 6 only). You can set up a Mac as a dedicated virus-scanning station and configure the Disinfectant application to scan all inserted floppies. The interface is a simple, clean window as shown in Figure 14.1. Preferences let you control how Disinfectant notifies you about detected viruses (beeps, menu bar flashes, and so forth). Once the program detects a virus, it lets you remove the infection and repair the infected file if possible.

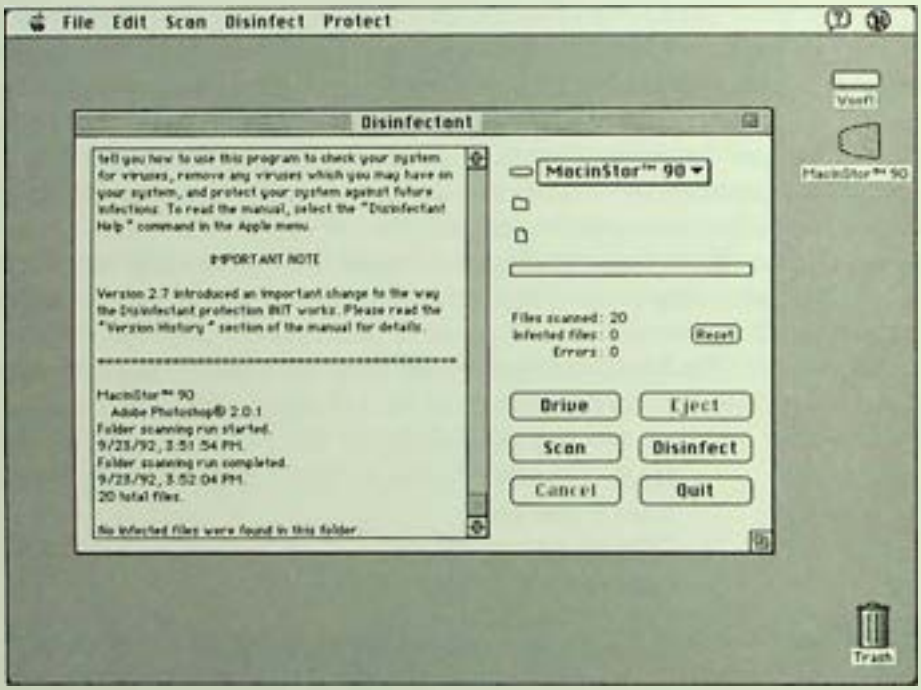


Figure 14.1
Maintaining a sterile Mac environment with Disinfectant

You install the Disinfectant Protection INIT (on hard disks only) from the Protect menu. Disinfectant installs the extension for you and even places it in the proper folder, whether you're using System 6 or 7. After you restart the Mac, the extension watches and waits unobtrusively in the background until it detects a known virus. When this happens, the program beeps ten times, names the virus, and urges you to remove it using the Disinfectant application. It blocks the virus from replicating itself and spreading from the infected application to other files on your disk.

Neither the application nor the extension provides protection against unknown viruses; they only detect viruses they have been programmed to recognize. These include (in version 2.9) Scores, nVIR, INIT 29, ANTI, MacMag, WDEF, ZUC, MDEF, Frankie, CDEF, MBDF, INIT 1984, CODE 252, and T4. John Norstad updates Disinfectant as new viruses appear, usually within a day or two after the virus is discovered.

The superb built-in documentation (Disinfectant Help under the Apple menu) provides a reasonable, unalarming overview of Mac viruses. If you read nothing else about maintaining a virus-free Mac environment, read these help files. The on-line help can be saved to a file in a variety of word processing or text formats.

Disinfectant is kept up-to-date and it's free. It's all most people ever need in terms of virus protection. Disinfectant was first discussed in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser*, and the February 13, 1990, issue of *MacWEEK*. It received a *MacUser* shareware award in 1992 (see the October 1992 issue). Look for version 2.9 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0 or later. The Protection INIT requires a hard disk.

Limitations: Doesn't detect Trojan horses (programs designed to destroy data, but disguised as benign applications such as games). Both Disinfectant and the Protection INIT only detect viruses they've been programmed to detect.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: To scan a particular file or folder without going to the Scan menu, press Option as you click the Scan button.

If you do not have access to on-line services, you can obtain a copy of Disinfectant by sending a self-addressed stamped envelope and an 800k floppy disk to Disinfectant author John Norstad at the address given at the end of this entry. If you live in any other part of the world outside the United States and Western Europe, include an international reply coupon rather than U.S. stamps, and enclose a cardboard disk mailer. People in Western Europe can obtain the latest version of Disinfectant by sending a self-addressed disk mailer and an 800k floppy disk to this address:

macclub benelux
Disinfectant Update
Wirtzfeld Valley 140
B-4761 Bullingen Belgium

Assuming you have a hard disk, you will normally run Disinfectant from that volume, scanning new files that you download from on-line services and BBSs or obtain through floppies (this is the most likely way you'll encounter

a virus, by the way). If Disinfectant itself becomes infected and damaged, however, you may need to run it from a floppy. The process for creating a Virus Tools floppy for either System 6 or 7 is fully described in the on-line Disinfectant documentation. *Note:* The vitally important thing to remember is to always keep that Virus Tools floppy locked, by sliding the write-protect tab so that a hole appears. If you lock the floppy in this manner, it can never be infected by a virus.

Open the About Disinfectant window (from the Apple menu) and wait a few seconds for a Monty Pythonesque treat.

If your situation calls for a more versatile antiviral product, consider Jeff Shulman's VirusDetective, discussed later in this chapter. It's not free, but it provides more control than Disinfectant (automatic scanning of floppies, for example)—and it's almost always the first out the gate with an update as new viruses appear. Look at Chris Johnson's GateKeeper, too, discussed next. Numerous other virus-specific programs are available that detect and destroy just one virus (such as nVIR), but I recommend you avoid these programs and settle on a more comprehensive product that detects a variety of computer viruses. All of the programs discussed in this chapter are highly recommended.

Disinfectant
John Norstad
Academic Computing and Network Services
Northwestern University
2129 Sheridan Road
Evanston, IL 60208
CIS: 76666,573
Internet: j-norstad@nwu.edu
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: DISINF.SIT

GateKeeper

Unlike Disinfectant and VirusDetective, two other antiviral utilities discussed in this chapter, Chris Johnson's GateKeeper adopts a more general approach to virus detection. The other two utilities watch for specific viruses; they don't detect viruses they haven't been programmed to recognize. GateKeeper, on the other hand, constantly monitors all the Mac's operations, watching for suspicious activities of any sort that suggest a virus is attempting to infect a file. It's a more comprehensive approach to virus control that has both advantages and disadvantages, as you'll see.

GateKeeper is actually a suite of related files: GateKeeper, GateKeeper Aid, and GateKeeper Controls. They're all extensions, which you install by dragging them to an unopened System folder. Under System 7, you'll be

informed that they belong in special locations. Just click OK and let the Mac place the files where they belong. GateKeeper itself watches for viruslike activities. GateKeeper Aid searches for specific viruses (just as Disinfectant and VirusDetective do). GateKeeper Controls is a control panel extension that lets you configure how GateKeeper works. GateKeeper Extras are also distributed with these other files; the Extras include utilities that are primarily of use to network administrators.

The GateKeeper strategy means that you have a good chance of preventing even unknown viruses from attacking your Mac—something Disinfectant and VirusDetective can't do. Unfortunately, however, some programs carry out activities (such as creating temporary files) that can provoke GateKeeper into action by seeming to be something a virus might do. So that GateKeeper won't have a hissy fit every time you use these programs, you can add them to an exclusion list. Generally speaking, though, be aware that you face a greater likelihood of encountering incompatibilities between GateKeeper and other programs or extensions than if you opted for Disinfectant or VirusDetective. GateKeeper offers greater protection, but at the price of some possible inconvenience.

GateKeeper was discussed in the December 1989 issue of *MacUser* and the April 18, 1989, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 1.2.6 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 4.1 or later; System 6.0.2 or later recommended.

Limitations: Since GateKeeper continuously monitors your Mac for suspicious activity, it tends to be more open to incompatibilities with some programs.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Installer programs can frequently send GateKeeper into a convulsion, so it's recommended you turn GateKeeper off before you use an installer; otherwise, the installation may not be successful.

GateKeeper
Chris Johnson
3311 Red River #305
Austin, TX 78705
Internet: chrisj@emx.cc.utexas.edu
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: GATEKP.CPT

Launch INIT

Security-related programs generally prevent unauthorized use of a Mac or limit access in some way to programs and files. But maybe all you really want to do is see who is using what program and when. Theodore Wu's Launch INIT is the perfect snooper for doing just that.

Launch INIT is a System extension that tracks program use. Every time someone starts or quits a program, the extension writes an entry to a text log. You can configure the log to include the program name, start time and date, end time and date, user name, and the length of the work session. The extension can prompt for a user name whenever the Mac is started. You can also control how often Launch INIT creates a new log file (daily, weekly, monthly, and so on).

This extension's main failing is that it doesn't work properly under System 7. It was mentioned in the April 1991 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 2.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac and System 6.0x or earlier.

Limitations: None

System 7: Incompatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: In addition to using Launch INIT for security and user tracking, you can use it for billing purposes, since it reports on session lengths. Another program that handles that task even better is Time Logger DA, discussed in Chapter 10.

Launch INIT
Theodore Wu
85 Easton Ave. Apt. 4E
New Brunswick, NJ 08901
CIS: 72230,743
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: LAUNCH.SIT

MacPassword

The simplest type of security program usually just lets you lock a hard disk so that you have to enter a password before you can access the volume. It's an all-or-nothing proposition. If you need security that's a bit more subtle than that, Art Schumer's MacPassword is the very best shareware option available on the Mac.

MacPassword is a control panel extension that gets stored somewhere in your System folder (just where depends on whether you're using System 6 or 7). When you open MacPassword, it lets you configure several aspects of its operation through a clean, attractive interface, shown in Figure 14.2. This extension offers volume protection, but it also lets other users access the volume as guests, with limited privileges. Whenever you start or restart the Mac, a dialog prompts for a password. Enter it correctly, and you have complete, unimpeded access to your desktop and files. You won't even know MacPassword is installed. A user who doesn't know the password can click

the Guest button to get limited use of the Mac. For example, you might configure guests' limited access to prohibit viewing and opening specific folders, including the System folder.

Figure 14.2
Put your bytes behind bars with MacPassword

MacPassword also provides built-in virus protection and a screensaver (with an optional password feature). There's a log feature that tracks people using the Mac. So that no one can thwart MacPassword's protection, the program includes a way to disable the System 7 trick of turning off extensions by holding down Shift at start-up. There's also an option for disabling start-up with a floppy disk, another ruse often tried by people trying to bypass a security program.

MacPassword's access control offers a great deal more flexibility than the total lock-out approach of simple volume lockers (such as Zorba, discussed later in this chapter). The program has a proven track record and is a lot less constrictive than most commercial security products. Look for version 3.9.2 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0 or later.

Limitations: Unregistered copies lack several advanced security features, including virus control, locking protected volumes (to prevent start-up with a floppy), and so forth.

System 7: Compatible (except for System 7's Virtual Memory, which should be turned off).

Registration Fee: $$$

Tips & Techniques: MacPassword installs quite easily, but *be sure to read the manual before you activate it*, or you might inadvertently lock yourself out of your own computer. The manual contains some hints on how to recover from accidents, but if the manual is locked up on your Mac, those hints won't do you much good. I recommend printing the manual before you install MacPassword, so you have a hard copy in case of a disaster.

MacPassword is technically a control panel extension, but it does not go into the System 7 Control Panels folder as you would expect. Be sure to follow the installation instructions to the letter, and place MacPassword in the Extensions folder. Then place an alias to it in the Control Panels folder.

MacPassword
Art Schumer
c/o Evergreen Software
15600 NE 8th Street, Suite A3126
Bellevue, WA 98008
AOL: ARTSCHUMER
CIS: 76004,557
GEnie: GPSART
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MACPAS.SEA

MacUser Security Set

A ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive

The MacUser Security Set combines three functions into one program: making files invisible, encrypting files, and shredding files. You access the different functions through the Security menu (the utility's only menu, in fact).

The Loser command brings up a standard file dialog. Select a file, click the Lose File radio button, and then click the Lose button. The file is then no longer visible on the desktop. To restore or "find" the file, choose Loser again, click the Find File radio button, and click the Find button. (Sometimes this button fails to change from Lose to Find, due to a programming bug.)

The Scrambler command lets you encrypt documents using the DES encryption scheme. Choose the Scrambler command and select a file in the dialog. Click the DES Encrypt or Unencrypt radio button, and then press the appropriate push button or Return. Note that the Scrambler module does not delete the original file, so if you're really concerned about privacy, you will need to trash the file—or, better yet, use the Shredder command to fully delete the original file.

The Shredder command lets you select a file and shred it beyond any hope of recovery. It's quick and irreversible.

The MacUser Security Set was programmed by Kurt W. G. Matthies. It was featured in the September 1990 issue of *MacUser*.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible (but see *Tips & Techniques* section).
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: If you Lose a file in an open folder, you may have to close and then reopen the folder for the file to become invisible.

If you are using System 7, don't make applications or any System files invisible. If you do, documents will not open when double-clicked, and your System may become unstable.

The Scrambler module encrypts only documents—not applications. If you need to protect applications with encryption, look at the DES utility earlier in this chapter.

If you have a lot of files to shred and use System 7, also look at Obliterate, discussed next. It provides a much faster way to eradicate those sensitive files.

MacUser Security Set
Kurt W. G. Matthies
1150 Hancock Drive
Boulder, CO 80303
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SECURE.SIT

Obliterate

You may have thought that emptying the trash is a permanent way to delete files you no longer want on your Mac. Not so. Anyone with a disk editor or an undelete utility such as FileSaver can usually recover trashed files, and if you have accidentally deleted a file, that's a good thing. But when you want deleted files to stay deleted (as is usually the case with sensitive documents), you need the computer equivalent of a paper shredder. Rob Gibson's Obliterate performs just that function—faster than Ollie North's secretary.

Gibson originally wrote Obliterate because he hated the additional step of choosing Empty Trash from the special menu. With Obliterate, you simply drag files and folders to the Obliterate icon, and off they go into oblivion. There's also a shredding option that totally obliterates the files beyond the reach of even the most sophisticated file recovery program; that feature makes this small application of real interest to the security-conscious. Obliterate doesn't delete locked or open files. There's an optional alert you can have splashed on the screen before the program does away with the files.

Look for version 1.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Limitations: None

System 7: Required

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: Be careful about dropping an alias on Obliterate, because this little program deletes the original file, not the alias!

Some other interesting, general alternatives to the standard trash are discussed in Chapter 11. See Basura, Trash Chute, and TrashAlias. All these

programs, like Obliterate, require System 7. The MacUser Security Set, discussed just above, also includes a command that shreds deleted files.

Obliterate
Robert Gibson
RR#1 Carrying Place
Ontario, Canada K0K 1L0
CIS: 71261,2236 or 72511,345
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: OBLITE.CPT

Protect It

Having a Mac available to the public is necessary sometimes. For example, service bureaus often provide self-service stations where customers can work on DTP projects. Unfortunately, some customers abuse this service and illegally copy applications and other files from the Mac. Protect It is a simple security utility that copy-protects any file on your disk.

To protect a file, start Protect It and configure it with a password (you generally use the same password for all protected files). Select the file you want to protect in a standard Open dialog and press Return. Then if anyone tries to copy the file to a floppy, an alert announces that the file is copy-protected, and the file transfer is blocked. The protection is simple and effective. Protect It can also remove its copy-protection when you decide it's no longer needed.

Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0.3 or later.

Limitations: Incompatible with the Quadra.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: When you register, you'll receive an enhanced version that lets you protect multiple files all at once, and offers compatibility with Userland Frontier and Apple Events.

Protect It
Dave Carlton
c/o Poly Micro Systems
3620 Little Chief Ct.
North Highlands, CA 95660
AOL: DaveC45
CIS: 76566,3014
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: PROTEC.CPT

VirusDetective and VirusBlockade II

VirusDetective is included on the bonus disk attached to this book.

Jeff Shulman's VirusDetective DA is probably your best alternative to the Disinfectant program discussed earlier in this chapter. Although Disinfectant is free, VirusDetective is a much more powerful program. It offers a high degree of configurability that's unmatched by Disinfectant's simpler approach to safe computing. And if you combine this DA with the VirusBlockade II extension, you have an antiviral tool that's as good as any commercial equivalent. Shulman is also nearly always the first antiviral shareware author to provide an update to combat a new virus—usually within a few hours of a virus's first appearance.

You start the VirusDetective DA through the Apple menu. The DA's window (see Figure 14.3) includes a status area that tells you what the DA is doing, and several buttons or controls that let you configure the DA and access the outstanding on-line help. The DA recognizes viruses and Trojan horses by detecting specific strings or programming code in infected files. VirusDetective lets you enter new recognition strings by entering the string directly, or by importing the search string file Shulman makes available whenever a new virus surfaces. That means you don't have to download a new version of the entire DA for each new virus (as is the case with Disinfectant). You just download a relatively small (20k or less) text file and import it into the DA. This, in effect, updates the DA.

You can select and scan specific files or folders. If an infected file is discovered, an option lets you delete the file from within VirusDetective. You can protect the DA with a password so that others cannot change the way you have configured it. You can also tell the DA to automatically scan floppy disks as they are inserted, but this normally requires you to have the DA up and running.

The problem with VirusDetective (and with Disinfectant, as well) is that you must deliberately start it whenever you want to scan files or volumes. Shulman offers a way to enhance and automate the DA: VirusBlockade II. This control panel extension lets you define the circumstances for when the VirusDetective DA will start itself and scan. You can have this antiviral duo scan files each time they are created or modified, whenever floppies are inserted or hard disks are mounted, or even at intervals you define—every other day, for example.

The VirusDetective antiviral package was discussed in the January 16, 1990, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 5.0.2 or later of the DA, and version 2.0 or later of VirusBlockade II.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0.2 or later.

Limitations: Bear in mind that Shulman's products do not attempt to repair virus-infected files. You must delete the file and restore it from a backup. Shulman plans to add repair capabilities in the future.

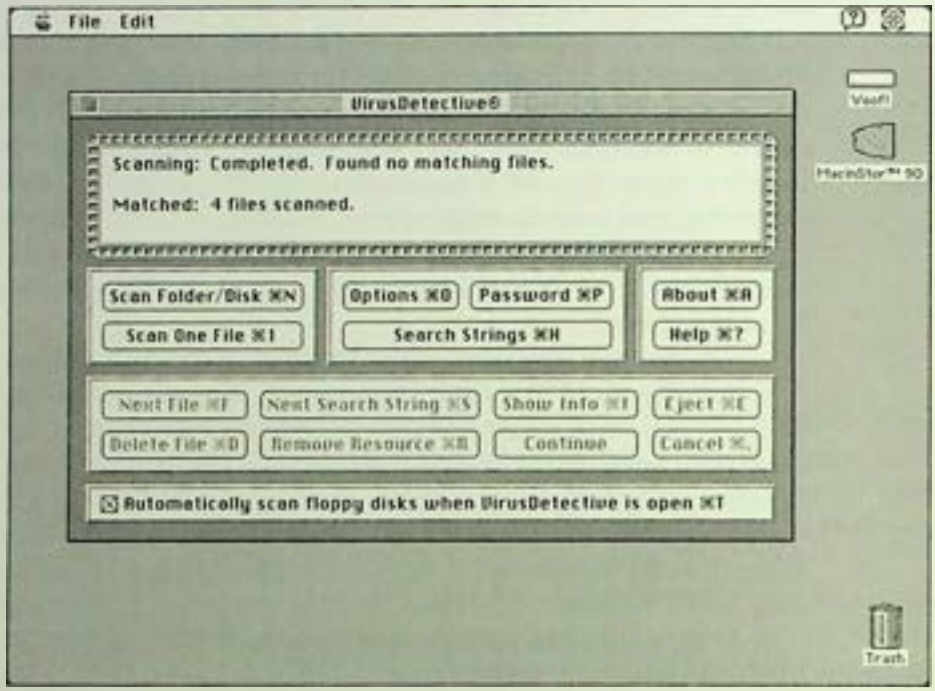


Figure 14.3
VirusDetective nabs and destroys all known Mac viruses

The VirusBlockade II extension is limited in several respects until you pay the registration fee. For example, you cannot save your settings.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$$$

Tips & Techniques: If you don't want the added features provided by VirusBlockade II or need to lessen costs, you don't have to use the companion extension. VirusDetective and VirusBlockade II are available as separate files through the on-line services. If you don't want VirusBlockade, just don't download it: you will have to pay only about half the amount required for the combined package.

VirusDetective and VirusBlockade II
Jeff Shulman
1111 W. El Camino Real, Suite 109MAC
Sunnyvale, CA 94087-1057
AOL: KILROY7
CIS: 76136,667
GEnie: KILROY
MCI Mail: KILROY
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: VIRDET.SEA (VirusDetective)
VBLTD.SEA (VirusBlockade II)

Zorba

Most people looking for a security program are not prepared for the hassles this type of software frequently imposes on even the *authorized* user of a particular Mac. If your security needs are very basic, and the people you want to keep off your Mac are not particularly computer-savvy (children, for instance—and maybe most of your co-workers!), then you might want to try dancing the security *sirtaki* with Zorba.

Zorba is a bare-bones security application that does but one thing: It prevents people from casually observing or accessing your desktop. It performs this feat by asking for a password whenever your Mac is started or restarted. Because Zorba is not an extension, you have to install it so that it automatically launches every time you turn on your Mac. Under System 6, select Zorba's icon and choose Set Startup from the Finder's Special menu. Under System 7, simply drop Zorba or an alias of it into the Startup Items folder. Next time you start the Mac, Zorba kicks up its heels and prompts you for a password. Once you enter it, Zorba quits and lets you go about your business without in any way interfering with your normal computing habits. If you need to step away from the machine for a few minutes, you must start Zorba again by double-clicking, after which the password prompt reappears. When you are gone for more than a couple of minutes, a screensaver blanks the screen, as well.

Preferences let you make Zorba prompt you for new passwords every 30, 45, or 60 days. The program can also save a log of successful and failed attempts to enter a password. To change passwords or any of the options, press Command-Option-Shift as you click OK after entering the password.

You can bypass Zorba by starting from a floppy disk or, under System 7, by disabling extensions and items in the Startup Items folder (press Shift during start-up).

Even the program's author, Jon Wind, admits Zorba is a quick-and-dirty security program. It's easily bypassed. But it's unobtrusive, and provides enough of the "annoyance factor" (mentioned in this chapter's introduction) to discourage the casual nogoodnik. Zorba will not, however, keep anyone with even the slightest modicum of determination from breaking into your Mac.

Look for version 1.01 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: If you double-click Zorba before you've read the documentation, you'll suddenly find that you're prompted for a default password you can't possibly know without reading the documentation. And there's no obvious way to get back to the desktop. If this happens to you, don't panic.

Simply restart the Mac with the reset or power switch (Zorba is an application, so it won't automatically load), and read the documentation.

Wondering about the name? The program was originally known as Zorba the Gate, a very lame pun on Kazantzakis's character, Zorba the Greek.

If Zorba is too simple or inflexible for you, consider MacPassword, described in this chapter. It combines both volume and folder access control in one program and lets guests use your Mac with certain restrictions you define.

Zorba
Jon Wind
2374 Hillwood Drive
Maplewood, MN 55119
CIS: 70167,3444
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ZORBA.CPT

Telecommunications and Compression Tools

Connectivity Tools

PART

6

Connecting with Other Users

CHAPTER

15

Telecommunications and Compression Tools

ARAClient
BroadCast
Clipper FKEY
Compact Pro
FirstClass Client
Internet Tour
Modem Calculator DA
Public Folder
QuickB DA
Quoter DA
SatNav
Serial of Champions
StuffIt Expander
StuffIt Lite
ZTerm

IF YOU'RE LIKE ME, YOUR FIRST STEPS INTO THE REALM OF TELECOMMUNICATIONS will probably be (or were) tentative, stumbling, and uncertain. This realm seems to be ruled by a priestly caste, and is steeped in arcane terminology, rituals, and protocols that are anything but user friendly. But, as Douglas Adams wrote, "Don't Panic."

If you use proprietary software designed for use with a specific service, such as America Online or CompuServe (CompuServe Information Manager, aka CIM), some of these telecom mysteries are conveniently hidden from you. On the other hand, if you use a more generic telecom program such as Smartcom, MicroPhone, or the shareware application ZTerm, you will need to learn the basics about two aspects of Mac telecommunicating: *MacBinary* and *transfer protocols.*

- You can read a detailed discussion of *MacBinary* in Chapter 1. It's an option you have to make sure is turned on in your telecom program while you are downloading Macintosh files from on-line services such as GEnie and CompuServe. (America Online's software handles this element without any input from you.)

- *Transfer protocols* set up the ground rules so that your Mac and another computer can exchange files. The most common protocol is called XModem. Generally speaking, I recommend you try XModem first and then try other protocols as you become more confident. With CompuServe, in particular, you'll want to switch to the CompuServe-only QuickB protocol (on CompuServe, you might see it abbreviated to QB), since it can cut download times by up to 50 percent. The exact procedure for setting the file transfer protocol differs from service to service; typically, when you download a file, you'll somehow indicate to the service through an on-line menu what protocol you want to use. Just make sure the same protocol is selected in your telecom program before you start the download.

This chapter includes a number of products related to telecom in some way. You'll find a full-featured telecom program for connecting with other Macs, with most on-line services, and with BBSs. There are also some networking utilities that help connected Macs share files and messages. An enhancement for Apple Remote Access (ARA) makes that program even easier to use. One DA helps you deal with electronic mail. Another DA estimates how long it might take to download a file at a particular baud rate. Yet another DA adds the CompuServe QuickB protocol option even to programs that don't support it.

Another aspect of telecommunicating mentioned frequently in this book is *compression* (see Chapter 1 for full details). Smaller files make for shorter downloads and lower costs. You'll find several compression options discussed in this chapter. And one of those options, Compact Pro, is even included on

the disk that accompanies this book. This utility won the coveted *MacUser* Eddy Award for Best Compression Product released in 1990.

So whether you're telecommunicating with a remote mainframe, or with a Mac on the other side of town or just across the room, here's a baker's-dozen-plus-two of programs that will make the task easier.

ARAClient

Apple Remote Access (ARA) is a program that lets you call another Mac or AppleTalk network from a remote Mac, to access its files and programs, use connected printers and other devices, and so on. It's a great way for work-at-home employees or people on the road to stay connected with co-workers or access files on their home Mac. But ARA has some rough edges, and Ron Duritsch's ARAClient corrects these shortcomings with new features that make remote access easier and faster.

ARAClient is meant to be used in place of the Apple Remote Access application by the client (the Mac that is calling the main Mac or host). This control panel extension lets you create *connectors* (see Figure 15.1 for an example), which are small applications containing a script that calls and connects to another ARA-ready Mac. ARAClient uses only a fraction of the memory that the ARA software uses, and the ARAClient connectors let you connect with fewer keystrokes and mouse clicks. Best of all, the connectors offer a redial feature; ARA lacks that option. ARAClient maintains a database of connectors. A pop-up menu in the control panel displays all your connectors, no matter where you have actually stored them.

A companion application called ConnectNot lets you disconnect with a simple double-click. If you use ARA to do this, you must choose Status from the program's Windows menu and then click Disconnect. In other words, ConnectNot saves some mouse movement and clicking.

ARAClient isn't ground-breaking software, but it saves you some time and is ideal when RAM is tight. It was mentioned in the September 21, 1992, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 2.0.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7 and Apple Remote Access (ARA).

Limitations: None

System 7: Required

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: ARAClient reads ARA connection documents so you don't have to start from scratch. Simply open the connection document from within ARAClient, and then save it as an ARAClient connector.

ARAClient
Ron Duritsch
6982 Devon Drive
Middletown, OH 45044
AOL: R Duritsch
CIS: 73740,2472
GEnie: R.Duritsch
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ARACLI.SEA

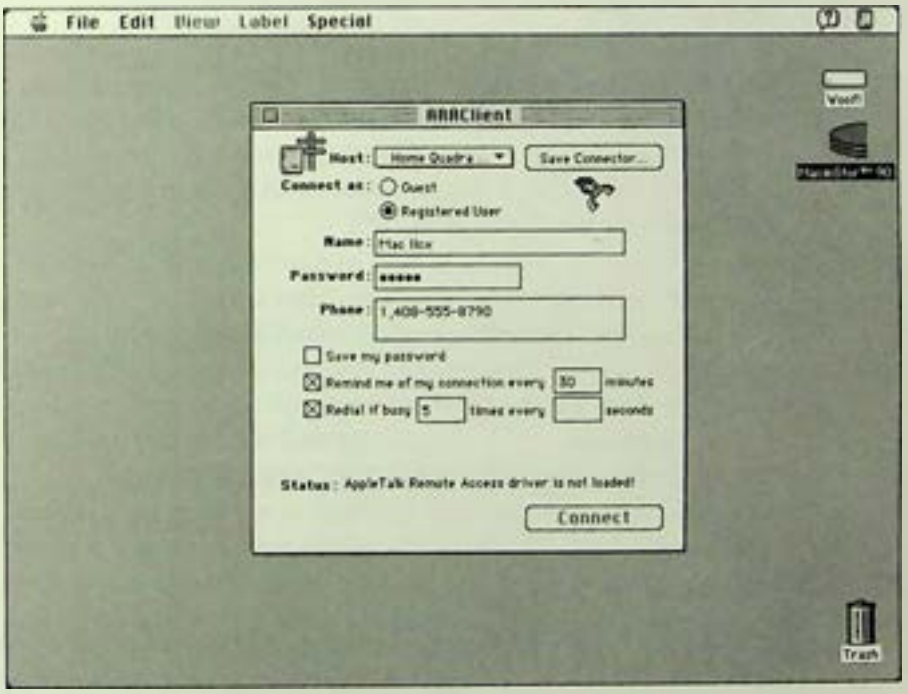


Figure 15.1
Creating an ARAClient connector

BroadCast

BroadCast is basically a gossip generator for the Mac. This Chooser extension lets you send short messages to any other Mac on an AppleTalk network. To use BroadCast, drag it to the System folder and restart your Mac. (Other users on the network should do the same.) Then start the Chooser DA, select BroadCast, and send your message to anyone else on the network. A dialog notifies addressees and gives them the option of replying or just reading and dismissing the message. Look for version 2.0 or later.

Requirements: Two or more Macs connected on an AppleTalk network.
Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $$
Tips & Techniques: There are a couple of alternatives to BroadCast you might want to consider for inter-Mac communication. Tim Bitson's MailSlot ($ shareware) is essentially a very simple electronic mail system that notifies you whenever it detects the presence of a file (document or application) in a particular folder. In other words, it does more than just send messages. MailSlot requires System 7 and at least two networked Macs with File Sharing turned on. It's an application, not an extension—some people may prefer that. On ZiffNet/Mac the file name is MASLOT.CPT in the Download and Support Forum.

Announce, by Tad Woods, is a System extension/application combo that also lets you send messages over an AppleTalk network. You can send the same message to several users, create groups of users (for example, Publications Workgroup), and more. The program is a bit pricey ($$$) for what you get, but it's well done. It works under both System 6 and 7. On ZiffNet/Mac it's available as file ANNOUN.CPT.

BroadCast
Joachim Lindenberg
Roonstrasse 26c
W 7500 Karlsruhe 1
Germany
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: BRCAST.CPT

Clipper FKEY

The Clipper FKEY formats text on the Clipboard for use in messages posted on the on-line services, by converting smart (curly) quotes to straight typewriter quotes, inserting line breaks at specific points so the text appears properly in the on-line service, and replacing en- or em-dashes with hyphens. You invoke Clipper with a Command-Shift keystroke that you assign to it during installation, and it performs its magic on text within the Clipboard. It's a handy way to format text you need to copy from a word processor document and paste into an on-line message.

You can also remove line breaks and transform text taken from on-line services into normal Mac paragraphs, by copying the text to the Clipboard, activating the FKEY, and then immediately holding the Option key down.

Clipper FKEY was mentioned in the February 1988 issue of *MacUser*. Look for version 1.5 or 1.6. Version 1.5 has been customized for use with CompuServe (it warns you if you exceed CompuServe's character or line limits). Version 1.6 is a more generic version.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: For other ways to prepare text for on-line use, see also Alpha, CONText II, McSink, and miniWRITER in Chapter 5.

Clipper FKEY
Loftus Becker
University of Connecticut
65 Elizabeth St.
Hartford, CT 06105
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: CLIPFK.SIT

Compact Pro

Compact Pro is included on the bonus disk attached to this book.

The title of Best Shareware Compression Utility was held undisputed for some time by Raymond Lau's StuffIt program (see Chapter 1 for more information on compression formats). StuffIt's SIT files are omnipresent on all major and minor on-line services that offer Mac files. But a respectable contender appeared on the shareware scene several years ago, in the form of Compact Pro by Bill Goodman.

Compact Pro (neé Compactor) is a file-compression utility that creates compressed archives in the CPT (Compact Pro) format. The CPT format has become quite popular, and you'll encounter these compressed files frequently in your on-line travels. At this point, the CPT format doesn't offer any obvious advantages over the most recent versions of StuffIt, but many people find Compact Pro itself easier to use than the StuffIt family of compression utilities, simply because it's less complex.

To create a compressed archive, start Compact Pro, and an empty archive window automatically opens. You add one file or several files and folders (their names will appear in the archive window, as shown in Figure 15.2). Then save the archive under a new name; it's customary to add the CPT extension to the name of the file to alert other people as to the archive's type. The archive window displays several bits of information about each file or folder in the archive, including the name, size (compressed and uncompressed), and file Type and Creator codes.

You can also encrypt the archive, protecting it with a password. There are options for creating self-extracting (SEA) archives so that you can send them to other people without worrying whether they have Compact Pro. They only have to double-click the archives to extract their contents.

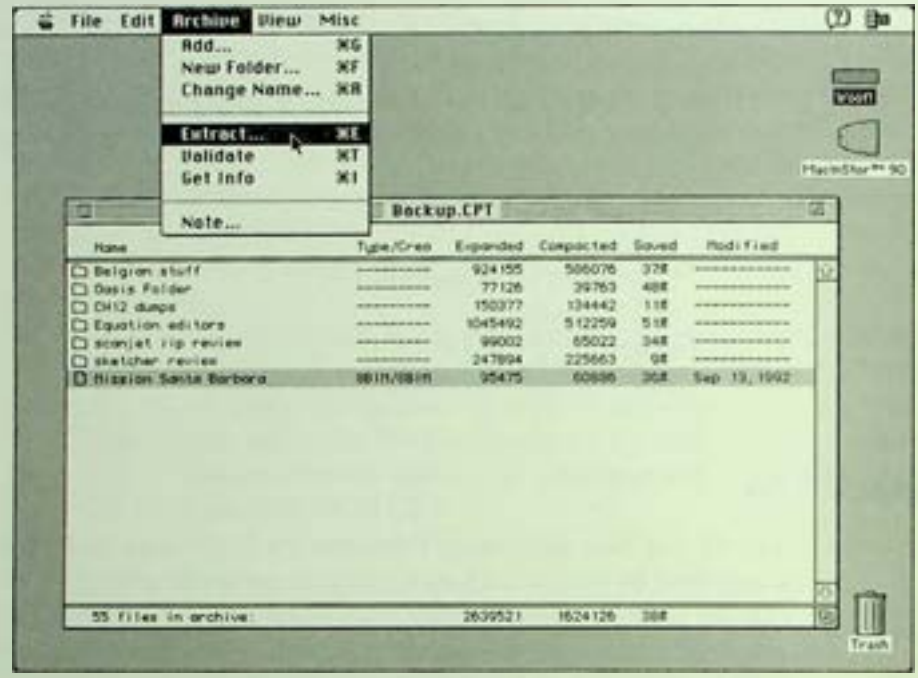


Figure 15.2
Make files smaller with Compact Pro

An advanced option lets you create segmented archives. Sometimes a file, even when compressed, cannot fit on a single floppy. This option lets you compress one huge file among several archives. You can then place each archive on a single floppy. The person receiving the floppies then uses Compact Pro's Join command to rebuild the original file from the segmented archives. This technique is also useful if you need to transfer a large file using a telecom program. If something goes wrong during transmission, you normally have to start from scratch and send the entire huge file again. But if it's been divided among several archives, you only need to resend just the one failed segment.

You can add files to an archive or delete them at any time. Just open the compressed archive so its contents are visible in the archive window, and make your changes. You can also choose to extract only some of the files in an archive. You'll have to resave the archive to make it reflect any changes you've made. Compact Pro also extracts files from archives in the StuffIt 1.5.1 format (but not files in the various other flavors of SIT that are floating around). You can also convert into and out of the Binhex 4 format used on some mainframes.

Compact Pro is the underdog of the Mac compression utilities, but one you should not discount. Look for version 1.33 or later; that version is

included on the disk that accompanies this book. Be sure to pay the requested shareware fee, if you keep and use the program. The cost of this book does not cover the fee.

Requirements: Mac 512E or better, with System 4.2 or higher.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: If you want to decompress an archive without viewing its contents in the usual Compact Pro archive window, press Option when you double-click the archive's icon and wait for the progress thermometer to appear. Compact Pro places the archive's contents in a new folder, quits, and never bothers you with its usual start-up windows. This technique is a major time-saver.

For other compression alternatives, see also StuffIt Expander and StuffIt Lite later in this chapter.

Compact Pro
Bill Goodman
P.O. Box 31417
San Francisco, CA 94131-0417
CIS: 71101,204
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: CPTPRO.SEA

FirstClass Client

FirstClass is a commercial communication system for the Mac, with an extraordinary graphical interface. It is designed to be used as an in-house electronic mail system or as the basis for a BBS. So if FirstClass is commercial, why am I mentioning it in this book? Happily, SoftArc distributes the user software, FirstClass Client, free of charge. FirstClass Client lets you connect with a FirstClass system or BBS, but doesn't let you create your own system from the ground up.

Accessing a FirstClass BBS for the first time is essentially the same as using your Mac's old familiar desktop (see Figure 15.3). A FirstClass BBS's forums or areas open like folders on the desktop; you just double-click them to see the files within. You can tile the FirstClass windows and view their contents by the standard Finder views (Name, Icon, Date, and so on). The FirstClass "folders" can contain messages with files, such as compressed archives, attached to them. You can engage in real-time, on-line chat with other members connected to the system when you call. In addition to sending regular messages, you can work with "forms"—a special message format with fields to be filled in, graphics, check boxes, multiple fonts, and so forth. The forms available to you are determined by the system administrator; you can't create your own.

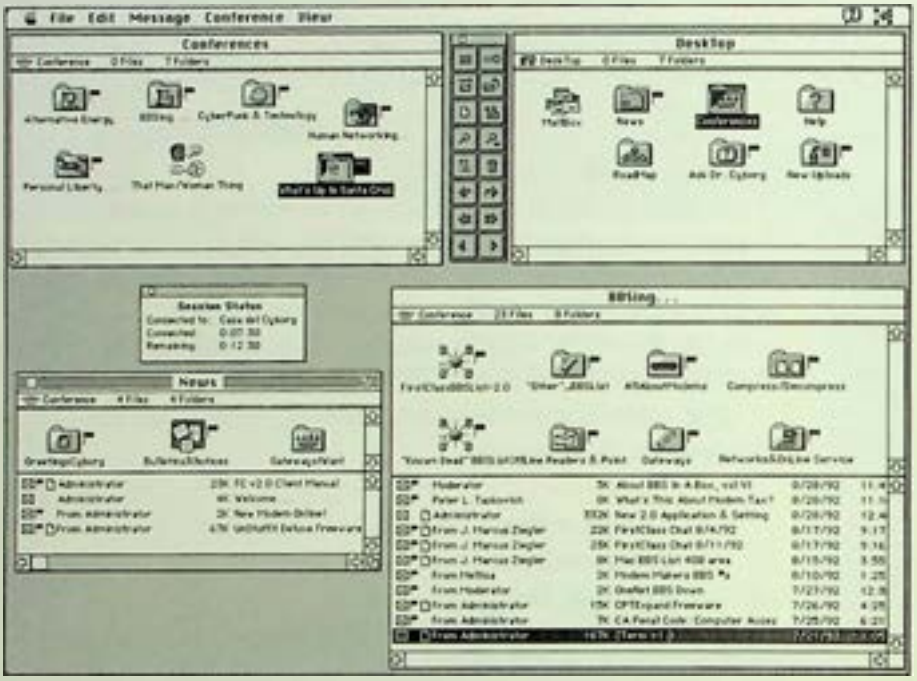


Figure 15.3
A first-class interface in the FirstClass Client telecom program

FirstClass Client and the whole FirstClass approach were designed especially for the Macintosh, and it shows. If there's a FirstClass system to call in your area, I encourage you to give it a try. The experience can be a real eye-opener. Look for version 2.04 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with a modem, and access to a FirstClass BBS.
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

FirstClass Client
SoftArc, Inc.
805 Middlefield Rd. Suite 102
Scarborough, Ontario, M1V 2T9
Canada
(416) 299-4723
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: FCLASS.SEA

Internet Tour

This HyperCard stack is a perfect introduction to the Internet—a colossal international collection (perhaps I should say connection!) of computer networks at educational institutions, companies, and so forth. It fills you in on the Internet's history, the resources available to you, a glossary of Internet terms, Internet customs and procedures, and much more. The stack is well designed and easy to navigate. It includes a manual on ftp (file transfer protocol), which is a way of transferring files among Internet sites. The stack takes an immensely complex subject and makes it at least partially intelligible to the layperson who wants to be involved in the Internet—and that's no small feat.

Requirements: Any Mac with 2Mb RAM and HyperCard 2.0 or later.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: If HyperCard stacks aren't your cup of tea, check out the Hitchhiker's Guide to the Internet, by E. Krol. This text-only document is a good, if somewhat ploddingly written look at the Internet's history, customs, and general layout. But even the author warns it was unevenly edited. The stack is more fun, but this text file makes for a smaller download. On ZiffNet/-Mac it's available as file HHIKER.SEA in the Download and Support Forum.

Internet Tour
The NSF Network Service Center, BBN
10 Moulton St.
Cambridge, MA 02138
Internet: nnsc@nnsc.nsf.net
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: INTOUR.SEA

Modem Calculator DA

Have you ever wondered how long it would take to download a particular file from your favorite on-line service or BBS? Kelly King's Modem Calculator DA will tell you just that.

After you've installed this DA, use its menu (accessed through the arrow icon on the DA itself) to select the baud rate at which you'll do the download (300, 1200, 2400, 9600, or 19200) and the file block size (you'd usually have this set to 1k). Then enter the size in kilobytes of the file to be downloaded, by clicking the DA's buttons or through the keyboard. Click Enter on the DA, and Modem Calculator displays the *theoretical* time it will take to download the file—theoretical because the DA uses pure mathematics to calculate the time. However, on-line services seldom work that way. Heavy customer

use and other factors can slow transmission speeds down so severely that it sometimes makes little difference whether you're downloading a file at 9600 baud or 2400 baud. It's a fact of on-line life you'll just have to expect and accept.

Despite the limitations imposed by the vagaries of on-line transmission, the Modem Calculator DA is a useful telecom tool. It can give you at least an inkling of what you're getting into, so you can estimate the length of your coffee break (or maybe plan a vacation!). Look for version 1.1.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $
Tips & Techniques: After you've calculated a download time guesstimate, multiply that time in hours by your service's hourly rate to obtain the really important figure—how much the file is going to cost you in connect time—to add to any shareware fee it might carry.

Modem Calculator DA
Kelly King
c/o Guild Software
5 Rainbow Falls
Irvine, CA 92715
CIS: 72460,3327
GEnie: K.KING4
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: MODEMC.SIT

Public Folder

If you're a System 6 user and covet the File Sharing feature of System 7, you can put your envy aside with a freeware offering from Claris Corporation called Public Folder.

Public Folder does pretty much what its name implies: It lets you create a public folder that can be accessed by anyone connected to your Mac on an AppleTalk network. The Public Folder software takes the form of a Chooser extension. Drop it in your System folder, restart the Mac, and access the program through the Chooser DA. This has to be done on every Mac connected to the network. Then create a folder called Public on each networked Mac. Any files placed in this folder are accessible to everyone else on the network. You can use it as an e-mail depository or as a place to store documents and programs you want other people to use. To access files in any Public folder, just open the Chooser DA from the Apple menu, select the Public Folder icon, and then choose the folder whose files you want to copy.

Public Folder doesn't offer program sharing, and its form of file sharing isn't as robust as that in System 7, but it's slick and useful. Better yet, it's even free.

Requirements: Two or more Macs on an AppleTalk network with System 6.0x.

Limitations: An older program that has not been updated or actively supported; may not be compatible with some newer extensions and programs.

System 7: Unnecessary under System 7, since File Sharing is built in.

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: For other e-mail and file-sharing utilities, see BroadCast in this chapter. Although you can use Public Folder for a simple e-mail system, BroadCast and some of the other programs mentioned along with it are much better suited to the task.

You can make all your files "public" by giving your hard drive the name Public, but since there are no security features built into Public Folder, I don't recommend it.

Public Folder
Claris Corporation
5201 Patrick Henry Drive
P.O. Box 58168
Santa Clara, CA 95052-8168
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: PUBFOL.SIT

QuickB DA

In addition to introducing the money-saving compression StuffIt standard to the telecom world, Raymond Lau has aided CompuServe subscribers by implementing the CompuServe QuickB download protocol via the QuickB DA.

CompuServe introduced QuickB as an alternative to the usual XModem download protocol (download protocols determine how your Mac exchanges files with an on-line service or another computer). QuickB is unique to CompuServe, and it's fast: It's not uncommon to see download times cut by 50 percent by using QuickB. Unfortunately, not all Mac telecom programs offer the QuickB option. If you find this is the case with your program, Lau's QuickB DA is the answer.

In response to prompts, you choose the QuickB download on CompuServe from an on-line menu and then enter a temporary file name. As soon as you enter the name and press Return, start the QuickB DA (if you are using MultiFinder, hold down the Option key as you do this). After a few moments, the DA lets you save the download to any location on your disk through a standard file dialog. Click OK and the download begins. You'll see a progress bar charting the download's progress. The DA also informs you how many bytes have been sent and how many bytes remain, as well as estimates the

throughput or download speed you're achieving. The reality of your transmission speed can be pretty disheartening, especially when you realize your brand-new, expensive 9600-baud modem is only transferring at 4800 or so. But that's the nature of the on-line environment, where line noise, heavy use, and other problems can slow down even the fastest modems. (This DA also supports QuickB uploads, by the way.)

The QuickB DA was mentioned in the August 23, 1988, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with a modem. You must also have a CompuServe account.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: When you use the QuickB DA, make sure your telecom program is set to 8 bits, no parity, and 1 stop bit; otherwise, the DA will not work its magic.

Don't confuse the QuickB DA with Raymond Lau's QuickB Download DA, an earlier version of the DA that only does downloads.

MicroPhone II owners may want to try this DA as a replacement for the QuickB download option in MicroPhone. I've generally found Lau's DA far more reliable than the MicroPhone implementation of QuickB.

QuickB DA
Raymond Lau
100-04 70 Ave.
Forest Hills, NY 11375-5133
CIS: 76174,2617
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: QBDA.SIT

Quoter DA

The electronic mail (e-mail) feature of on-line services is a tremendous saver of both paper and time. Instead of waiting days for delivery, your messages or e-mail reach their destination within minutes. Replies, however, can often leave you frantically wondering exactly what you said, because they provide no supporting context. Pete Johnson's Quoter DA is a handy telecom tool that takes a lot of the mystery out of e-mail messages.

Quoter DA is about as easy a program to master as is possible. Next time you reply to a message on a BBS or on-line service, select a few essential lines from the message you're answering and copy them to the Clipboard. Then start Quoter DA and click the OK button. At the very beginning of your reply, paste the contents of the Clipboard. The text you copied out of the original

message appears with each of its lines preceded by the greater than (>) symbol, setting it off from your response. The quoted text reminds the receiver of your reply about the content of the original message. The end result? Less confusion and more coherent correspondence.

Another option lets you apply a filter to Clipboard text, so that curly quotes, accented characters, and other verboten symbols are stripped out before the text is pasted. This is useful when you need to format text you've composed off line in a word processor for use in an on-line message. It's a feature that may be familiar to you if you've read about several of the text editor products in Chapter 5 (see also Clipper FKEY in this chapter). You can also establish the line length for pasted text, to avoid exceeding any limitations imposed by the on-line service.

Quoter DA can also encrypt Clipboard text so that it cannot be read on line by another person unless they have Quoter DA and the code key you used to encrypt the file. It's a way of sending private messages through e-mail. Do not, however, post encoded messages in a public forum. Forum managers generally take a very dim view of "secret" messages, since they can be used to shield illegal activities.

If you use e-mail a lot, you'll quickly appreciate Quoter DA's usefulness and grow to depend on it. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: If you prefer FKEYs over DAs, Mike Gleason's Quote FKey performs the same basic function as Quoter DA. It's also freeware, and available on ZiffNet/Mac as file QUOTFK.SIT in the Download and Support Forum.

Quoter DA
Peter Johnson
Glassell Park BBS
P.O. 65074
Los Angeles, CA 90065
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: QUOTDA.SIT

SatNav

A sizable minority of Mac subscribers to the CompuServe (CIS) on-line service access it through a program called Navigator (see Chapter 2 for details). Navigator automates logging on to CompuServe and saves data collected during an on-line session in a session file. You can review this session file in

Navigator to read messages and so on, but the interface for doing so is clumsy and inhibiting. Fortunately, Brian Martin's SatNav application turns Navigator session files into things of beauty, as shown in Figure 15.4.

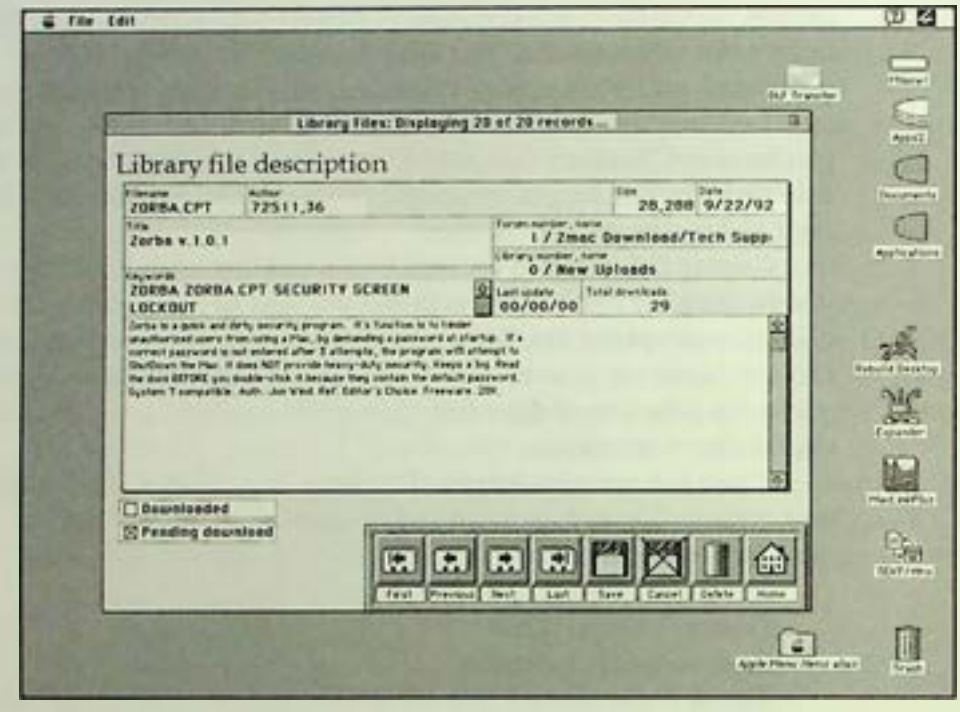


Figure 15.4
Organize your Navigator sessions with SatNav

SatNav is a database application based on 4th Dimension from Acius. Start SatNav and click the Import Session Files button. Select your Navigator session file in the dialog box, and click Open and then Cancel. SatNav sucks in the session file and organizes within its database structure all the messages, file descriptions, and e-mail you collected during your Navigator session. The process is simple and quite speedy.

If you want to read the messages, you can choose the ones you want to read from a list, or search for specific messages based on whatever criteria you decide to use. Messages are kept organized in their proper message/reply order. You can similarly import and view library file descriptions.

The SatNav interface is one of the best I've ever seen in a 4th Dimension-based application. It's elegant and far superior to the unpleasantries Navigator forces on its users. But SatNav costs a pretty penny (about the same as the street price of Navigator itself!), so be prepared to shell out some shekels for the luxury it provides. Look for version 2.4 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac, with 2.5Mb free RAM, the application or run-time version of 4th Dimension (version 2.2.3 or later), Navigator, and a CompuServe account.

Limitations: The shareware demo is limited to 30 days. A month after you first use it, the program expires and will no longer run until you register. The on-line documentation does not warn you of this expiration date.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$$$

Tips & Techniques: Importing session files the first time can be confusing. After you select a session file for import and click the Open button, the file dialog reappears as if your selection hasn't worked! It has, though, and you have to click the Cancel button to escape the dialog. It's the one counterintuitive aspect of this otherwise elegantly designed database.

SatNav
Brian K. Martin
c/o Martin Information Systems
1103 9th Ave. Suite 203
Honolulu, HI 96816-2403
CIS: 76535,250
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SATNAV.SEA

Serial of Champions

A ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive

Serial of Champions is both a great pun and a helpful telecom tool that gives you a fascinating, detailed look at what happens in the background during telecom sessions. It's probably of the most interest to people with a technical background, but should prove useful to anyone who wants to learn more about the Mac.

The name actually encompasses two pieces of software: a System extension and an application. The extension monitors your Mac's serial ports (and hence its modem or telecom activity), writing data to a log. The application lets you configure the extension and view the log file. You use the application to add programs (normally telecom software) to the extension's internal list. Whenever one of the listed programs starts and begins to use the modem serial port, the extension starts collecting data about various aspects of the session: actual transfer rates, time spent waiting on both the remote system and the Mac, and so on. When you quit the session, all the statistics are saved to the log. Open the log with the Serial of Champions application, and you'll see the stats presented both numerically and in chart form. Although all this data may seem esoteric to you, it is a good way to compare how various protocols, telecom applications, and even the time of day affect file transfers on the

different services. Then you can make an informed decision about how to conduct future telecom sessions.

Serial of Champions is a ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive mentioned in the November 1992 issue of *MacUser*. (See the introduction to Chapter 11 for information on Exclusives.) Look for version 1.0.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac and a modem.
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None

Serial of Champions
Mike Throckmorton
2120 Ardenne Dr.
Ann Arbor, MI 48105
CIS: 72220,1611
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SERIAL.CPT

StuffIt Expander

As you learned in Chapter 1, most on-line services compress shareware files so that they take less time to download. The easiest way to decompress such files is with StuffIt Expander, a free utility from the compression experts at Aladdin Systems.

StuffIt Expander expands (decompresses) any file in the StuffIt format (all versions), Compact Pro format, and AppleLink compression scheme. Virtually all the files you'll ever encounter are either in StuffIt (SIT) or Compact Pro (CPT) format, so this tool is a wonderful benefit. It's small, fast, and even offers drag-and-drop functionality under System 7. People not using System 7 will have to start StuffIt Expander first, and then select the files they want to decompress.

StuffIt Expander is a must-have utility. Look for version 1.0.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0.4 or later.
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: None
Tips & Techniques: Hold down Shift when you drag files to the StuffIt Expander icon or use the Expand command within the utility. This lets you indicate where you want the expanded files to be placed.

Hold down Option when you expand files, and the original compressed files will be deleted after they have been decompressed.

For programs that compress as well as decompress files, see Compact Pro and StuffIt Lite in this chapter.

StuffIt Expander
Aladdin Systems
165 Westridge Dr.
Watsonville, CA 95076
(408) 761-6200
AOL: Aladdin
CIS: 75300,1666
GEnie: AladdinSys
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: STUFEX.SEA

StuffIt Lite

Raymond Lau's StuffIt compression utility has undergone changes in both structure and name since it first started stuffing files in 1987. It's been called StuffIt, StuffIt Classic, and now StuffIt Lite. There's a powerful commercial version called StuffIt Deluxe. Whatever it's called, StuffIt is one of the most respected and appreciated pillars of the Mac on-line community. Without it, on-line costs would be far higher than what they are for most people.

StuffIt Lite, like Compact Pro mentioned earlier in this chapter, compresses files so they require less space and take less time to download through a modem. But there the similarity ends. Whereas Compact Pro is a simple workhorse, StuffIt Lite is a feature-rich extravaganza that takes advantage of the latest in Mac System technology. It's System 7-savvy, which means it supports Apple Events and scripting through a program such as Userland Frontier or AppleScript. It has floating palettes and sophisticated ways to add items to archives or sort archive lists.

To create an archive, start StuffIt Lite and choose the New command. An empty archive window appears and you can add files or folders to it. You can also add files to or delete them from existing archives at any time. A floating palette lets you perform some basic functions (stuffing, unstuffing, deleting, and so forth) by dragging items in the archive window to a palette button, as shown in Figure 15.5. You can also automate the process of adding files to an archive by using the program's Add Match option. This lets you specify criteria (for example, all files older than 60 days) that StuffIt Lite uses to decide which files to place in the archive. When you save an archive, StuffIt Lite even adds the .SIT extension automatically.

StuffIt Lite offers several translation options missing from Compact Pro: AppleLink, MacBinary, PIT (PackIt), and DiskDoubler. StuffIt Lite also unstuffs StuffIt 1.5.1 and Compact Pro archives, and creates archives in only the 1.5.1, StuffIt Lite, and self-extracting (SEA) formats.

Although StuffIt Lite offers a lot more for the money than Compact Pro does, it is somewhat harder to learn. And if you plan to download it from an

on-line service, be forewarned that it's a very large file (over 400k; Compact Pro is only 120k). Look for version 3.0.1 or later.

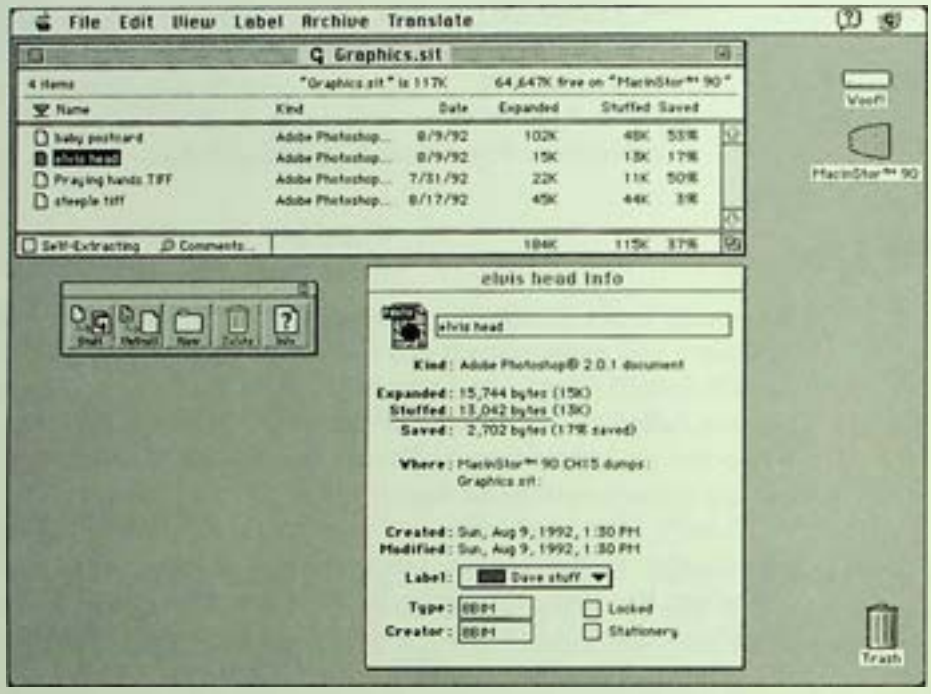


Figure 15.5
Put your files on a diet with StuffIt Lite

Requirements: Any Mac with 2Mb RAM or more; System 6.0.4 or later.

Limitations: Until you register, you can open only one archive at a time. Once you register, you can open as many as eight archives and drag items between them.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: If you outgrow StuffIt Lite, Aladdin Systems provides an upgrade path from StuffIt Lite to StuffIt Deluxe. The commercial version offers more translation options, a special compression menu you can access from the menu bar even if you're not using StuffIt, and more.

StuffIt Lite can open any SIT archive, no matter what version of the program compressed it. But users of StuffIt 1.5.1 should realize that this older version of the program cannot decompress the new SIT format. Unless you obtain StuffIt Lite or StuffIt Expander (described just above), you will find SIT files on line that you cannot open.

See also Compact Pro in this chapter for another way of compressing files on the Mac. And for a decompression-only utility, see the foregoing entry on StuffIt Expander.

StuffIt Lite
Aladdin Systems
165 Westridge Dr.
Watsonville, CA 95076
(408) 761-6200
AOL: Aladdin
CIS: 75300,1666
GEnie: AladdinSys
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: SITLTE.SEA

ZTerm

ZTerm is included on the bonus disk attached to this book.

General, all-purpose commercial telecom programs for the Mac are pricey. They are also candy-coated with icons, 3-D buttons, and all the trappings of fancier interfaces. If you prefer a powerful, no-nonsense telecom program at a fraction of the cost of the commercial products, try out Dave Alverson's ZTerm.

Once you have ZTerm running, you add dialing setups to the Dial menu. Each dialing setup you create contains all the information and settings necessary to connect with one on-line service or BBS. That includes your account number or name, password, and items such as data or stop bits, parity, modem initialization strings, and the like. Dialing setups are saved to the ZPhoneList file and displayed under the Dial menu. To call a particular service, just choose its name from the menu and make sure your modem is turned on.

ZTerm supports ZModem, YModem, XModem, and CompuServe's QuickB protocol. It has a MacBinary option that lets you properly handle Mac files obtained from on-line services. It also offers VT100 and ANSI-BBS emulation. Despite its relatively modest shareware fee, ZTerm also offers some advanced features—such as automatic log-on scripts, and macros that automatically enter text commands at any on-line prompt. You can also assign scripts to macros. In addition, you can create a specific macro set for each service and load the set for the service you're going to use (see Figure 15.6).

ZTerm even provides a handy procedure called queue dialing. This lets you set up numbers for several BBSs that the program will call in turn until it successfully connects with one of them. There's also a scroll buffer that preserves the data that has flowed across your screen during the current session. The buffer is limited only by available memory.

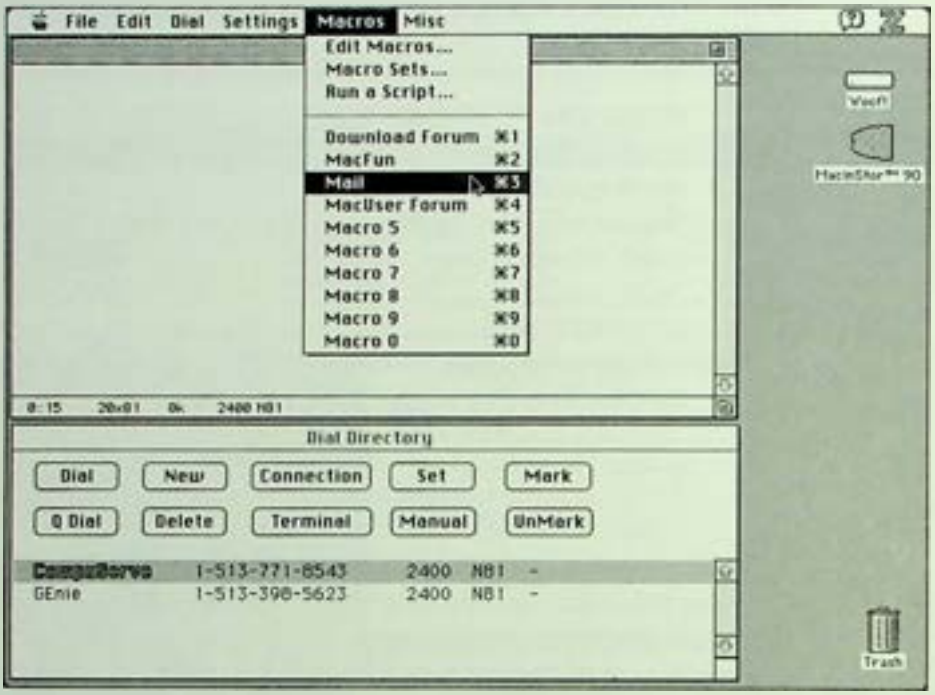


Figure 15.6
ZTerm gets an A+ for features and ease of use

ZTerm is a practical, sensible alternative to commercial telecom programs. It's ideal for PowerBook owners—for whom space is at a premium—because it eats up only about 350k of disk space. The program was mentioned in the July 11, 1989, issue of *MacWEEK*. Look for version 0.9 or later.

ZTerm is included on the disk that accompanies this book. Be sure to pay the requested shareware fee. The cost of this book does not cover the fee.

CAUTION! *There has been a bogus version 1.0 of ZTerm appearing on some smaller BBSs. Don't use it unless it's clear that Alverson has actually released a new, bona fide update.*

Requirements: Mac Plus or better, System 4.1 or later, and a modem.
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $$$
Tips & Techniques: ZTerm provides no way to print out the listings in the phone directory. But Denise McElroy's ZTerm Phone Directory utility (file ZLIST.CPT on ZiffNet/Mac) takes up the slack and extracts all that information for you into a text file you can format and print in any word processor.

New users may be confused by the fact that, although ZTerm supposedly supports CompuServe's QuickB file transfer protocol, there is no obvious

way to choose that protocol from any menu. Here's how to do it: Create a dialing setup called CompuServe. Select this setup in the Dialing Directory, and click the Set button. Pull down the Settings menu and choose the Transfer Options command. Check the CompuServe B+/QuickB Protocol check box and close the dialog.

ZTerm is definitely the best shareware telecom program available, but there are some other possibilities you might want to consider—especially if you're looking for ways to free up disk space. FreeTerm, by William Bond, is an elementary telecom program that emulates a TTY terminal, sends and receives ASCII text, and supports the XModem protocol. TermWorks by James Rhodes is another option; it supports macros and XModem transfers. Both programs are compact and very basic. On ZiffNet/Mac in the Download and Support Forum, FreeTerm is available as file FRTERM.SIT, and TermWorks as TERMWO.SIT.

ZTerm
David Alverson
5635 Cross Creek Court
Mason, OH 45040-2448
CIS: 72155,1560
GEnie: ZTERM
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ZTERM.CPT

CHAPTER

16

Connectivity Tools

ArcMac
BinHex 4.0 and 5.0
ExtractorPC
GIFConverter
Imagery
REFONT
TTConverter
UNSIT
UnZip
UUTool

COMPUTER CONNECTIVITY INVOLVES A WIDE SPECTRUM OF ISSUES AND activities, including telecommunications, which I covered in the previous chapter. Connectivity means, in part, connecting computers to one another—physically via cables and networks, or somewhat more ethereally via modems. But connectivity raises other issues, as well, including this: How do you deal with files in foreign formats once they've made that torturous journey to your Mac from the distant silicon shores of a UNIX network mainframe or DOS system? That's what this chapter is all about. Whether you work in a high-rise office with DOS machines, VAXs, Internet links, and Macs all coexisting, or you work at home and receive only the occasional DOS-formatted file or disk, some of the programs discussed in this last chapter will probably help you out.

Several programs discussed in this chapter help you cope with the various compression schemes used in the DOS and UNIX worlds. These tools let you extract files from a bewildering babel of formats: ZOO, tar, ARC, and ZIP. You'll be unzipping, deARCing, and letting the beasts out of the ZOO in no time. There are even a couple of compression utilities that let DOS users get at Mac files that are imprisoned in CPT- or SIT-compressed archives; connectivity works both ways.

A couple of programs let you use your Type 1 PostScript or TrueType font collections on a Windows PC (or Windows TrueTypes on your Mac). Other utilities turn Mac binary files into a special text format that can be successfully transferred to Internet or UNIX systems.

Another major category of file you'll discover in this chapter is *graphics converters*. Whether you're working with GIF, TIFF, RIFF, or even IFF graphics (and several other formats that don't rhyme), there's probably a program here that can convert that file to your favorite old-time graphic religion.

By the way, be sure to check out other connectivity-related products in other chapters of this book. Several of the text tools—such as the text editors in Chapter 5, Add/Strip in Chapter 6, and INFOMaker in Chapter 8—have features that can help you massage foreign text and database files into shape for use on a Mac.

So start making those connections. The Mac community is not an island, but part of a much wider computing community that has many customs and idiosyncrasies. With the tools in this chapter hanging from your belt, you'll be well on your way to making the foreign familiar.

ArcMac

You read about the Mac compression standards, Compact Pro (CPT) and StuffIt (SIT), in the previous chapter. You may, however, have to deal with non–Mac-compressed files, too—especially if your work includes forays into the DOS environment. One of the most important DOS compression formats

is called ARC, and files in that format typically have file names that end in the extension .ARC. Don Gilbert's ArcMac is an ARC utility for the Mac.

ArcMac both creates and decompresses ARC archives, but you'll have to make some adjustments to use the program to its fullest. That's because this utility also puts a new face on your Mac, substituting a DOS-like shell for the Mac's usual point-and-click interface. The shell is called the Martian Operating System (MOS), so named because it's so alien to the ordinary Mac way of managing files. MOS displays a prompt, where you type DOS-like commands as shown in Figure 16.1. ArcMac gives a polite nod to the Mac approach, with some menu and dialog box alternatives to typing commands, but you can do the most with the program if you resign yourself to the MOS command-line interface. MOS lets you navigate around your volumes, list directories (folders) with a DIR command dear to DOS heads everywhere, and pull files from multiple folders and volumes into an archive using sophisticated wildcard matching.

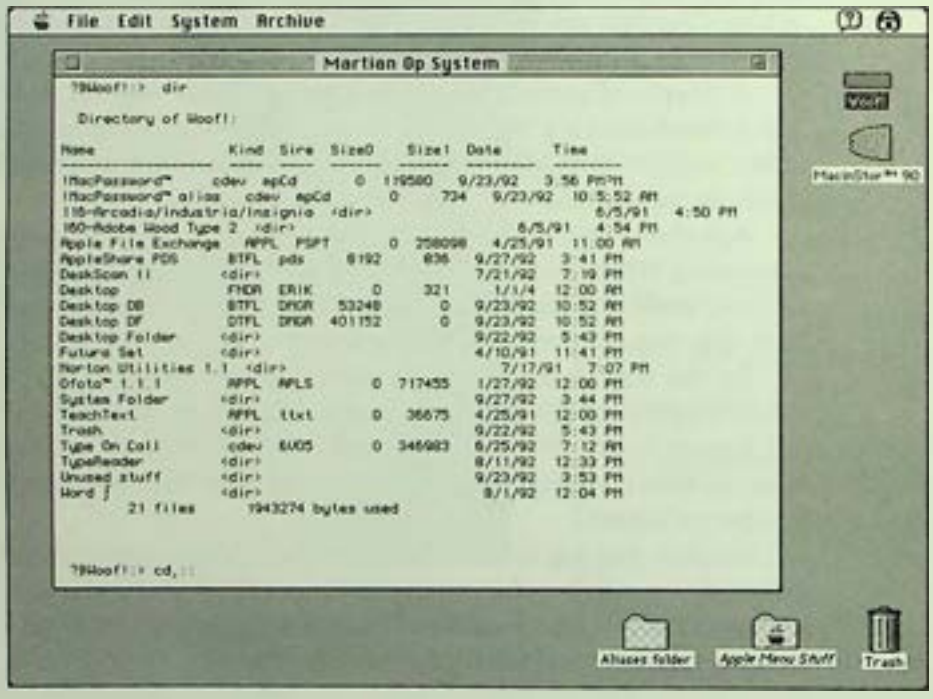


Figure 16.1
ArcMac brings a DOS face to compression on the Mac

Your initial reaction to ArcMac and MOS might be hostile, especially if you've never used a DOS computer before (or maybe because you have!). After all, StuffIt offers an Add Match option that employs a form of wildcard searching. But StuffIt does restrict searches to one volume at a time. ArcMac is more flexible in that regard. ArcMac isn't for everyone, but if you need to

deal with ARC files on a regular basis or want the flexibility of managing files with a command-line/wildcard strategy, be sure to take a look-see.

ArcMac comes packaged with xArcMac, an executable you can use on a DOS machine to extract files from ARC files created on a Mac with ArcMac. There's also a version available that only decompresses ARC files, but doesn't create them (see the *Tips & Techniques* section below). Look for version 1.3e or later.

Requirements: Mac Plus or later, and System 5.0 or higher. You'll need MultiFinder for background processing.

Limitations: Incompatible with the Quadra.

System 7: Mostly compatible; occasionally crashes.

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: If all you ever need to do is extract files from ARC archives created on a DOS computer, look for ArcPop, also by Don Gilbert. It's a small utility that only decompresses ARC files. On ZiffNet/Mac it's available as file ARCPOP.SIT in the Download and Support Forum.

If you find MOS to be too intimidating, or if ArcMac won't run on your Mac, check out StuffIt Deluxe, the commercial version of StuffIt Lite (see Chapter 15). StuffIt Deluxe offers translation modules for a variety of non–Mac-compressed formats, including ARC and ZIP.

ArcMac
Don Gilbert
c/o dogStar Software
P.O. Box 302
Bloomington, IN 47402
CIS: 71450,1570
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: ARCMAC.SIT (the documentation is in file ARCDOC.SIT)

BinHex 4.0 and 5.0

Yves Lempereur's BinHex program actually comes in two versions, 4.0 and 5.0. But 5.0 is not a new, improved update to version 4.0. You might find you need both versions, because they perform two very different functions.

BinHex 4.0 converts Mac files (which are 8-bit) into 7-bit ASCII text files for sending over networks that only allow 7-bit transfers. You would typically use BinHex 4.0 on a Mac file that you want to send to someone over Internet, because most Internet connections do not allow 8-bit transfers. You need to do this even if you are using an Internet mail gateway on a service such as CompuServe, which itself normally accepts 8-bit files. "Binhexed" files usually have file names that end in the extension .HQX.

BinHex 5.0 converts Mac files into and out of the MacBinary format. This format is used, as explained in Chapter 1, to fool PCs and some mainframes into accepting Mac files and their peculiar multipart structure. Mac telecom programs can generally deal with MacBinary on the fly, but you may occasionally receive a Mac file that was downloaded to a PC and then transferred to a Mac via a network or from a floppy. PC telecom software can't remove the MacBinary format, so you'll need to use BinHex 5.0 to convert the file.

Neither version of BinHex comes with documentation, but the programs are extremely simple to use, so you shouldn't encounter any problems.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: If you only need to convert files out of the BinHex 4.0 format, also look at Peter Lewis's DeHQX utility. On ZiffNet/Mac it's available as file DEHQX.CPT in the Download and Support Forum.

See also Compact Pro and StuffIt Lite in Chapter 15. Compact Pro handles BinHex 4.0 conversions only. StuffIt Lite processes both "binhexed" files and MacBinary files.

BinHex 4.0 and 5.0
Yves Lempereur
28611B Canwood St.
Agoura Hills, CA 91301
CIS: 74016,1741
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: BinHex 4.0=BINHX4.BIN
BinHex 5.0=BINHEX.BIN

ExtractorPC

DOS users who receive Mac files compressed in the Compact Pro CPT or SEA formats can easily get at the goodies within by running ExtractorPC from Bill Goodman, the author of Compact Pro. ExtractorPC works a lot like the DOS utility PKUNZIP: You type EXTRACT at the DOS prompt, followed by the CPT or SEA archive's file name. Press Return, and ExtractorPC pulls the files from the archive.

There's an option switch for re-creating as directories any Mac folder structure contained in the archive. Another switch forces ExtractorPC to disregard folders and simply decompress the archive's contents into the current directory. You can also process segmented files (see Compact Pro in Chapter 15 for an explanation), and list the contents of an archive instead of extracting the individual files.

The -u switch ensures that all extracted files have unique file names. Mac file names can be up to 31 characters in length. Since ExtractorPC truncates these long Mac names to meet the DOS eight-character limit, it's not uncommon that several of the files could end up with the same name. For example, unless you used this switch, MacintoshReports and MacintoshReviews would both be named MACINTOS.

ExtractorPC is quick, easy to use, and free. Look for version 1.0 or later.

Requirements: IBM PC or compatible, and MS-DOS 2.10 or higher.

Limitations: Cannot extract files from an encrypted CPT archive.

System 7: Not applicable

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: A variety of Mac compression utilities create self-extracting archives. People generally tack on the SEA file name extension to all of them. Unfortunately, ExtractorPC can process SEA files only if they were created with Compact Pro. So if you have an SEA file that ExtractorPC can't decompress, chances are it is not a Compact Pro SEA archive.

If you need to unstuff Mac StuffIt (SIT) archives on a DOS computer, see the UNSIT utility in this chapter.

ExtractorPC
Bill Goodman
P.O. Box 31417
San Francisco, CA 94131-0417
CIS: 71101,204
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: EXTRAC.ARC

GIFConverter

It's likely you'll bump into a GIF graphic at some point. GIF (Graphics Interchange Format, pronounced "Jif," like the peanut butter) is a format originally developed by CompuServe as a sort of universal graphics format for a wide variety of computers. And GIF files have proliferated; there are probably tens of thousands of them available through on-line services. But the format is not always supported by Mac programs. If you want to use GIF files, you may have to convert them into a more common Mac graphics format. The best GIF utility you can use on the Mac for this purpose is Kevin Mitchell's GIFConverter. (The utility's name is pronounced with a hard *g* because Mitchell didn't know the correct pronunciation of GIF when he named his program.)

GIFConverter is at its core (and as its name implies) a graphics converter, although it wears some other hats, as well. It handles nine color or black-and-white graphics formats: EPSF (output only; the utility can't read or view EPSF files), GIF, MacPaint, PICT, RIFF, RLE, Scan Image (Thunderscan), Startup

Screen, and TIFF. You can open files in all but the EPSF format and then covert them to any other format.

But GIFConverter does more than just convert images. You can enhance images by changing brightness, contrast, gamma adjustment, and gray maps, as shown in Figure 16.2. The program also lets you change the resolution of an image so that it's optimized for the type of printer you use, whether it's the ImageWriter's 72-dpi or the StyleWriter's 360-dpi. You can control the colors used in an image (for example, restricting them to only the standard Apple System 7 icon colors), by choosing that option from a pull-down menu. You can also resize a graphic, either with the mouse or numerically in a dialog. There are controls for cropping and rotating an image.

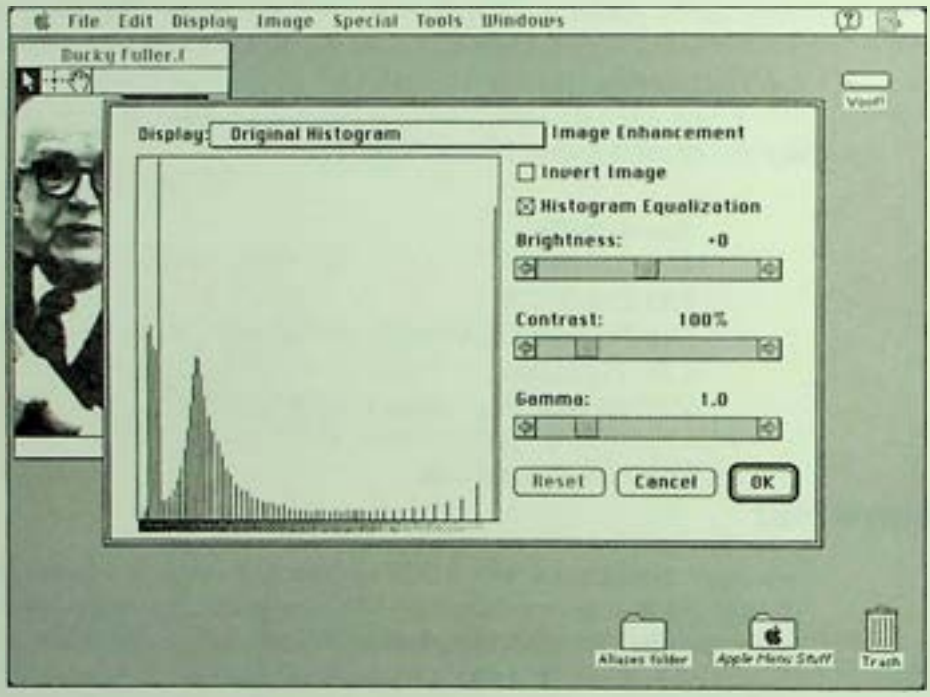


Figure 16.2
GIFConverter: a bridge between graphics formats

Look for version 2.2.10 or later. Mitchell does an extraordinary job of maintaining GIFConverter by squashing bugs and tweaking the program, so expect the version number to have changed by the time you read this.

Requirements: A Mac 512E or better; 1Mb or more recommended.
Limitations: None
System 7: Compatible
Registration Fee: $$$$

Tips & Techniques: If you need to just view GIF files and not convert them, look into Steve Blackstock's Giffer program. On ZiffNet/Mac it's available as file GIFFAP.SIT in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum. It's System 7-compatible.

If you need to work with files in graphics formats other than those supported by GIFConverter, try out Jeff Lewis's Imagery, discussed next.

GIFConverter
Kevin Mitchell
P.O. Box 803066
Chicago, IL 60680-3066
AOL: KevinM17
CIS: 74017,2573
GEnie: K.MITCHELL
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: GIFCON.CPT

Imagery

Graphic traffic rushes between computers at an ever more frantic pace. DTP service centers and individual Mac users alike often find themselves receiving files in foreign graphics formats. The GIFConverter utility described just above handles a handful of formats, but when that handful is no longer enough, Jeff Lewis's Imagery program may prove itself a graphic genius for you.

Imagery converts a remarkable range of graphics formats from the Atari ST, Amiga, IBM PC, UNIX, and other computer platforms into Macintosh-compatible TIFF (4.0/5.0), PICT2, or GIF files. You can also simply view the file rather than converting it. The formats supported in version 1.8 are, indeed, extensive:

- Atari ST: PLx, PCx, SCx, TNY, TNx, NEO, SPU, SPC, FCP, IMG, PAC, and DOO
- Amiga: IFF (ILBM, IFF-ILBM-HAM, ILBM-XHB) and HAM
- DOS and Windows: PCX, GL, PIC, CLP, BMP, IMG, CUT, TGA
- Generic: GIF, RLE, RAW
- UNIX and XWindows: PPM, PGM, PBM, XBM, XWD, RAS, RLE
- Mac: MacPaint, Photoshop, RIFF, Thunderscan, Targa, GIF
- Apple IIgs: SHR

Just start Imagery and select an output option by clicking the appropriate button (TIFF, PICT2, GIF, or Display) as shown in Figure 16.3. Imagery lets you select a file, and then converts or displays it on the screen. There are no menu controls or options—virtually no interface at all. This program simply gets right to the point.

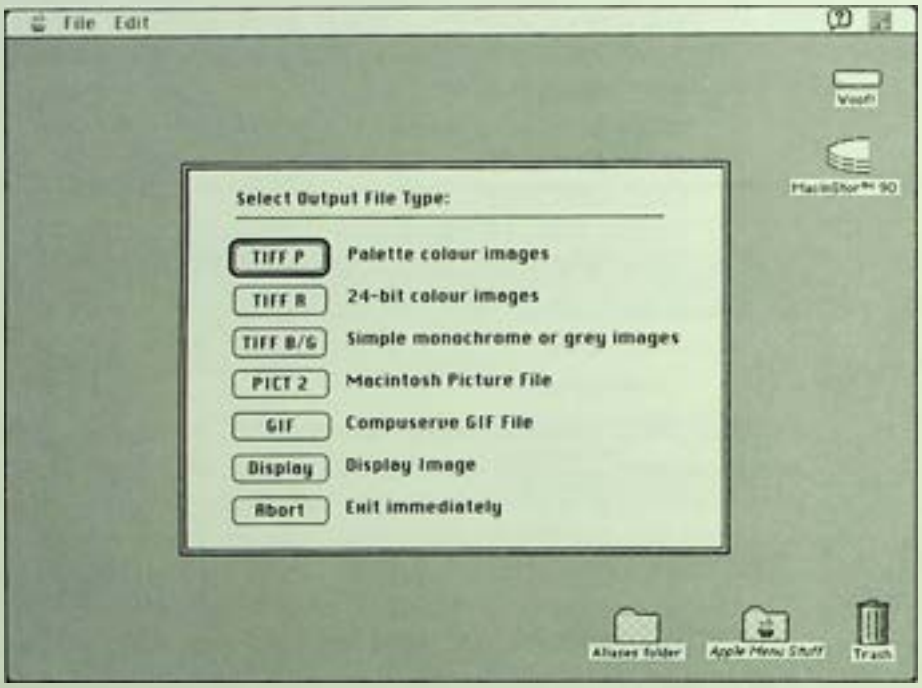


Figure 16.3
Imagery: bad interface, but great graphics format support

Imagery's interface is bare-bones to the extreme, and the program has a slight tendency to freeze up, especially when your Mac's memory is running on low. The program lacks even the rudimentary image-manipulation tools found in GIFConverter. Jeff Lewis even admits that Imagery is basically a hack utility that's become a project/hobby because of the pure enjoyment he gets out of the thing. But since it's free, you shouldn't complain too much. Look for version 1.8 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac; 2Mb RAM is recommended (you'll quickly run out of memory with the default 512k setting).

Limitations: Slow on some formats (Targa, especially). Doesn't support converting TIFF files to other formats.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Imagery recognizes a foreign file's format by its file name extension. When you bring the file over to your Mac from another computer platform, make sure you don't change that file name extension at any point. If you do, Imagery will turn a blind eye to the file and insist you either try to open it with the Raw filter or cancel the conversion process altogether.

To see the graphics formats supported for each platform (Atari, IBM, UNIX, and so forth), click on the icons at the bottom of the opening window. When you do, a window appears listing all the appropriate formats.

Imagery
Jeff Lewis
(No address available)
CIS: 76217,2241
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: IMAGER.CPT

REFONT

If you do word processing or DTP work on both the Mac and PC platforms, you'll find the REFONT DOS utility a handy tool. REFONT performs some useful font-related functions: It converts Adobe Type 1 PostScript Mac fonts to the IBM format used in Windows, and it changes Adobe AFM files to Windows PFM files. If you have a large collection of Type 1 fonts already on your Mac, REFONT can help you when you want to share them with your PC.

Simply type REFONT at the DOS prompt, and follow the utility's prompts. When the conversions are done, install the resulting files with Adobe Type Manager. It's fairly simple, but you may encounter some Mac fonts that REFONT doesn't recognize as valid Type 1 fonts.

Make sure you obtain version 1.1 or later.

Requirements: Any IBM PC or compatible, with Windows and Adobe Type Manager (ATM).

Limitations: None

System 7: Not applicable

Registration Fee: $$

Tips & Techniques: If you pay the registration fee, you'll receive a Windows version of REFONT.

REFONT failed to convert about a third of the fonts I tried. Other people have reported few problems with it, but be prepared for some frustration.

If you are working with TrueType fonts on your Mac and want to use them on a Windows machine, check out TTConverter just below.

REFONT
Acute Systems
P.O. Box 37
Algonquin, IL 60102
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: REFNT2.ZIP

TTConverter

Chris Reed's TTConverter, like the REFONT conversion utility, seems to be a work in progress. It's not completely reliable, but the program improves with each new version. It's advertised as a way to convert Mac TrueType fonts into Windows-compatible TrueType font files, and it succeeds, sometimes. But you'll also find a number of Mac TrueTypes that just won't convert properly no matter what you try. Under System 7 you can simply drag TrueType files onto its icon, and TTConverter will run and automatically convert the fonts. Under System 6, you must start the program first and then select the fonts. The utility also names the converted fonts using DOS file name conventions.

TTConverter also converts Windows TrueType fonts into the Mac format, and actually seems to handle that process much better than its Mac-to-Windows conversions. And since TrueType seems somewhat more popular among Windows users than in the Mac community, TTConverter may well end up being used mostly for Windows-to-Mac font conversions, anyway.

Look for version 1.3 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac with TrueType fonts.

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: $

Tips & Techniques: If you are converting TrueTypes in the Mac-to-Windows direction only, there is an alternative to TTConverter. Robert Chancellor's FontClerk program is not primarily a font conversion program, but tucked away in one of its menus is a Convert to Windows TrueType command that might let you use your Mac TrueType fonts within Windows. I say "might" because my experiences with it weren't always successful. On ZiffNet/Mac it's available as file FCLERK.CPT in the Download and Support Forum.

For converting Type 1 PostScript Mac fonts into a Windows-compatible format, see the foregoing entry on REFONT.

TTConverter
Chris Reed
3409 Clearview Dr.
San Angelo, TX 76904-8108
AOL: Chrisreed
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: TTCONV.CPT

UNSIT

The StuffIt (SIT) format is indisputably the most popular compression scheme among Mac users. But how do you handle these compressed files on a DOS computer? Brian Uechi's freeware UNSIT utility is the solution in many cases.

UNSIT is a PC utility that lets DOS users unstuff or extract files from any SIT archive that has been saved in the StuffIt 1.5.1 format. You simply place the StuffIt archive and UNSIT in the same directory, type

```
UNSIT x <filename>
```

at the DOS prompt, and wait a few moments for UNSIT to extract the files enclosed in the archive. You will be asked for a new DOS file name for each extracted file. Switches let you view an archive's contents instead of extracting them, test for an archive's integrity, and convert Mac text files to the DOS text format by adding line feeds.

Look for version 3.0 or later.

Requirements: Any IBM or compatible MS-DOS computer.

Limitations: Only unstuffs SIT files in the StuffIt 1.5.1 format; it cannot decompress StuffIt Lite or Deluxe archives.

System 7: Not applicable

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: The UNSIT README.1ST file tells you to use a bundled executable called CHOPHEAD to process a SIT file before you use UNSIT. I've never found this necessary. In fact, in my experience, CHOPHEAD damages the files.

See also ExtractorPC in this chapter; this DOS program extracts files compressed in the Compact Pro format.

UNSIT
Brian K. Uechi
(No address available)
CIS: 72330,155
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: UNSIT.ZIP

UnZip

Just as DOS users are sometimes left scratching their heads when they receive a SIT- or CPT-compressed file from a Mac colleague, Mac users can face a similar quandary with the arrival of an archive in the ZIP DOS compression format. If you find you need an unzipper for these files, look for UnZip.

UnZip (see Figure 16.4) has been a group project of sorts. Various individuals, including Samuel Smith and Michael O'Connor (the author of

CompuServe Navigator), have been refining the program for several years. This compression utility lets you decompress (unzip) ZIP archives created by PKZIP 1.10, 1.02, 1.01, or 0.92.

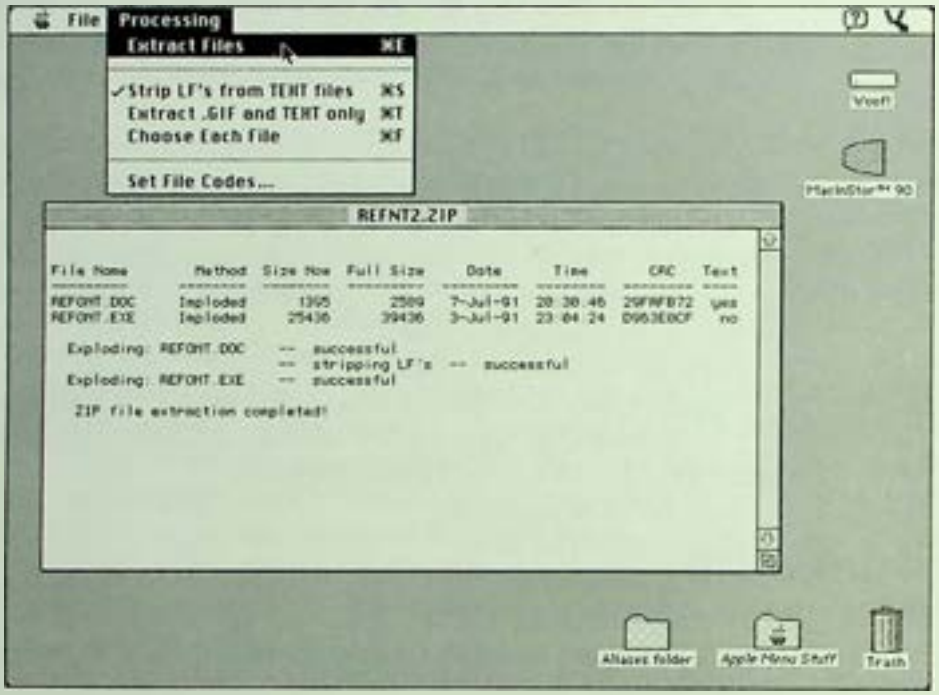


Figure 16.4
Unzipping the zipper on a ZIP archive, with UnZip for the Mac

UnZip also sports some welcome options that make it easier to work with the resulting unzipped files. For example, you can link as many as eight DOS file name extensions (.DOC, .GIF, .TIF, and so on) to a specific Mac application so that the files open in that application when double-clicked. You can also set the program to extract only those files that have the .GIF extension, or that are text-only files. This saves you some time, since UnZip won't bother extracting DOS executables that you can't use on your Mac, anyway. UnZip can also convert DOS text files into the Mac text format by stripping out line feeds.

Look for version 1.1 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: Incompatible with the Quadra.

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: StuffIt Deluxe owners can unzip ZIP archives from within StuffIt. If you need to deal with ARC archives, see ArcMac in this chapter.

UnZip
Samuel Smith, et al.
(No address available)
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: UNZIP.SIT

UUTool

If you ever have to transmit or post Mac binary files (SIT or CPT archives, applications, and so on) on a UNIX-based service or network, you may need to first translate the files into a special text format. This process is called *uuencoding*. There are several utilities available on the Mac that do uuencoding. A good freeware option is UUTool by Bernie Wieser of Octavian Micro Development.

UUTool supports both uuencoding and uudecoding (so you can reconstitute a uuencoded Mac file). It can segment uuencoded files into smaller packets (useful because some Usenet sites automatically truncate text files that exceed a 1,000-line limit).

Look for version 2.1.2 or later.

Requirements: Any Mac

Limitations: None

System 7: Compatible

Registration Fee: None

Tips & Techniques: Be aware that uuencoding is not a form of file compression. In fact, a uuencoded file is larger than the original Mac file. That's something to keep in mind if disk space is tight.

Jeff Strobel's UULite utility (UULITE.CPT) is similar to UUTool in many ways, but it also provides an option for automatically segmenting large files so that no segment exceeds the 1,000-line limit of some Usenet sites. UULite is well worth a look, but it isn't free.

There are a variety of other utilities available for Mac users involved with the Internet. Here are some of the most useful:

- Lloyd Chambers's MacCompress (MACCOM.CPT) supports the UNIX *compress* format. There's extensive on-line help, and the program is free.
- Tar for the Macintosh (MACTAR.CPT) creates, extracts, and lists UNIX tar archives in the old, BSD, and new standard formats. It's freeware by Craig Ruff.
- MacZOO (MACZOO.CPT) creates and uncompresses archives saved in the ZOO compression format used on UNIX, DOS, NeXT, Amiga, and Atari computers. It has a stark command-line interface you won't enjoy.

- If all you want to do is extract files from ZOO archives, you might want to consider Michael Niehaus's freeware MacBooz (MACBOO.CPT), instead. It only extracts files, but at least you can do it all through menus.

All of the files mentioned in this *Tips & Techniques* section are available in the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum, under the file names shown in parentheses.

UUTool
Bernie Wieser
c/o Octavian Micro Development
10516 Bradbury Dr. S.W.
Calgary, Alberta, T2W 1A6
Canada
Internet: wieser@acs.ucalgary.ca
ZiffNet/Mac File Name: UUTOOL.CPT

Mac Shareware Resources

This appendix is not an exhaustive list of Mac shareware sources. For the most part, it covers companies and services specifically mentioned in this book. It also provides some suggestions on locating other sources—such as user groups or small BBSs in your area.

See Chapter 2 for details on most of the companies or services listed in this appendix.

Major On-line Services

America Online
8619 Westwood Center Drive
Vienna, VA 22182-9806
(800) 827-6364

CompuServe
5000 Arlington Centre Blvd.
Columbus, OH 43220
(800) 848-8900
(617) 457-8650 (Ohio residents and overseas)

GEnie
401 N. Washington Street
Rockville, MD 20850
(800) 638-9636

ZiffNet Information Service (ZiffNet/Mac)
25 First Street
Cambridge, MA 02142
(800) 666-0330
(617) 252-5000 (local)

User Groups and Local BBSs

I've included contact information only for the two largest Mac user groups in the world. There are, however, many other smaller groups active at the local level. To find them, ask the dealer where you bought your Mac. The staff there can probably provide you with contact information and meeting times. You can also call Apple at (800) 538-9696 to find out about the nearest group.

I haven't included phone numbers for any local BBSs, and there's a reason for that. Although local BBSs can be a good, inexpensive alternative to the major on-line services such as CompuServe, America Online, and GEnie, BBSs tend to come and go. Any list I might provide would likely be inaccurate before this book even made it to the shelves.

There are a number of ways to find current local BBSs that let you download Mac shareware. As in the case of user groups, you can ask a local Apple dealer. If there is a university or college in your area with a computer science department, give them a call. In some parts of the country, you'll find regional computer-related publications with listings of local BBSs. In Northern California, for example, *Computer Currents* and *MicroTimes* provide BBS listings. *Computer Shopper*, which is widely available, also has a listing of BBSs. I also strongly recommend looking at a recent issue of *Boardwatch Magazine*, which you should be able to find along with other computer-related periodicals at any newsstand. *Boardwatch* includes a listing of Mac (and PC) BBSs, by area code, in its back pages. *Boardwatch* and user group information is given below.

Berkeley Macintosh Users Group (BMUG)
1442A Walnut Street #62
Berkeley, CA 94709-1496
(510) 549-2684

Boardwatch Magazine
7586 West Jewell Ave. Suite 200
Lakewood, CO 80232
(800) 933-6038

Boston Computer Society (BCS/Mac)
48 Grove Street
Somerville, MA 02144
(617) 625-7080, ext. 17

Mail-Order Shareware Distributers

The companies mentioned here are but a small sampling of the mail-order outfits peddling shareware. My own preference is definitely Shareware Authors. They have a good reputation and make a point of contacting the program authors for permission to distribute the shareware included on Shareware Authors floppies and CDs.

Educorp
7434 Trade Street
San Diego, CA 92121-2410
(800) 843-9497 (Orders only)
(619) 536-9999

Shareware Authors, Inc.
P.O. Box 640876
Kenner, LA 70064
(800) 879-1150
(504) 465-0685
AOL: AFC MacFun
CIS: 70521,1327
GEnie: R.Nordling1

SoftShoppe
P.O. Box 19069
Irvine, CA 92714
(714) 261-0114
(800) 851-8089

CD-ROM Subscriptions

I expect CD-ROM Subscription Services as a form of shareware distribution to increase dramatically in the next couple of years. It's an idea that makes perfect sense, and it's considerably less expensive than on-line services. The CD-ROM disc is the ideal medium for large shareware files that take far too long to download.

Nautilus
7001 Discovery Blvd.
Dublin, OH 43017-3299
(800) 637-3472
(614) 766-3165

Shareware Alternatives to Commercial Products

It's not unusual to find users paying big bucks for a commercial software product and then using only 10 percent of its features. Why buy a $395.00 product when you're only going to use $39.50 of it?

It's not that the companies are trying to gouge you or rip you off. Some people really do need all those features. For many tasks, there is truly no substitute for a full-featured commercial program. You'd be a silly goose, indeed, to try to do serious word processing with a simple text editor such as miniWRITER. And trying to set up a corporate dbms in the freeware product Retriever Light would probably not impress your boss.

Despite its shortcomings and limitations, shareware does provide money-saving alternatives in nearly any category of software you can imagine. Admittedly, in most cases, the shareware product won't have as many features as its commercial counterparts, but if you don't need those extra features, you have a viable alternative. So check out Table B.1 below, read the chapter entries for the available shareware alternatives, and decide for yourself which way to go.

Table B.1 **Shareware Alternatives to Commercial Products**

Commercial Category	Shareware/Freeware Alternative
Antiviral utility (SAM, Virex, etc.)	Disinfectant (Chapter 14) GateKeeper (Chapter 14) VirusDetective (Chapter 14)
Application launcher (HandOff, OnCue, etc.)	Apollo (Chapter 12)
Compression utility (DiskDoubler, StuffIt Deluxe, etc.)	Compact Pro (Chapter 15) StuffIt Expander (Chapter 15) StuffIt Lite (Chapter 15)
Database (FileMaker Pro, FoxBASE, Panorama, etc.)	Retriever Light (Chapter 8)
Drawing program (Canvas, MacDraw, etc.)	AppleDraw DA (Chapter 7)
E-mail (QuickMail, MS Mail)	BroadCast (Chapter 15)
Font management utility (MasterJuggler, Suitcase II, etc.)	Carpetbag (Chapter 12)
Image cataloging (Marco Polo, Multi-Ad Search, etc.)	ImageCatalog (Chapter 7)
Image processing program (PhotoShop, Digital Darkroom, etc.)	Image (Chapter 7)

Table B.1 Shareware Alternatives to Commercial Products (Continued)

Commercial Category	Shareware/Freeware Alternative
Macro utility (QuicKeys, Tempo, etc.)	Easy KEYS (Chapter 12)
Paint program (MacPaint, SuperPaint, etc.)	LightningPaint (Chapter 7)
PIM (Atelier Hello, TouchBASE, etc.)	Address Book (Chapter 9) To Do! DA (Chapter 9)
Screen capture (Capture, Exposure, etc.)	Flash-It! (Chapter 7) SnapJot (Chapter 7) SnapShot, Color SnapShot (Chapter 7)
Screensaver (After Dark, Pyro, etc.)	Darkside (Chapter 13) Moire Screensaver (Chapter 4)
Security program (Empower, FileGuard, etc.)	MacPassword (Chapter 14) Zorba (Chapter 14)
Spreadsheet (Excel, Lotus 1-2-3, Resolve, etc.)	BiPlane (Chapter 10) Mariner (Chapter 10)
System 7 hierarchical Apple menu extension (HAM, Kiwi Power Menus)	MenuChoice (Chapter 11)
System 7 scripting program (AppleScript, Userland Frontier, etc.)	Texx (Chapter 11)
Telecom software (MicroPhone II, Smartcom, etc.)	ZTerm (Chapter 15)
Word processor or text editor (Vantage, Word, WordPerfect, etc.)	miniWRITER (Chapter 5)

System 7 Envy

System 7 is undeniably better than System 6 in almost all respects. It's generally more reliable, has a much-improved Finder, better System folder management, bundled networking software (File Sharing and AppleShare), and more. Most people would be more productive if they upgraded, but that doesn't mean all people can upgrade. Your Mac may not have the memory to handle System 7, and you may not be able to afford the upgrade costs necessary to make your Mac System 7-ready. Nonetheless, you can definitely nudge your System 6 Mac in the right direction with the help of shareware.

A number of shareware products add some aspect of System 7 to your System 6 Mac. They can bring you the power of aliases, multicolored desktop icons, or low-end file sharing. They can tidy up your System folder, do away with the Control Panel DA, or let you script certain Finder activities. The programs mentioned in this appendix are not full substitutes for any aspect of System 7. FileMover, for example, doesn't let you fully script the Mac operating system in the same way that AppleScript or Userland Frontier do. FileMover affects only one function of the Finder: moving files. Nevertheless, even that one limited enhancement is better than nothing.

So check out the chapter entries about the files mentioned in Table C.1. They can't replace System 7; nor should they make you hesitate to upgrade when you can. But they can help keep System 7 envy at bay and bring new efficiency and features to your desktop.

Table C.1 **System 6 Answers to System 7**

System 7 Feature	System 6 Shareware Substitute
Aliases	Alias (Chapter 12)
Apple event scripting	FileMover (Chapter 13)
Color icons on desktop	ColorFinder, Sun Desk (Chapter 13 under Color Bits)
Freedom from Control Panel DA	GooPanel (Chapter 12)
Desktop folder	DesktopFolder (Chapter 12)
File sharing	Public Folder (Chapter 15)
System folder organization	Tidy It Up! (Chapter 13)

Using the Programs on the Bonus Disk

This book includes one 800k floppy disk with several outstanding examples of fun and practical shareware from several of the Mac community's best shareware authors. All the files on this disk have been checked for viruses. They are all compatible with System 7.

NOTE. *The price of this book does* **not** *include the shareware fees that some program authors have requested. You must pay the shareware fee for these and any other shareware programs you decide to keep and use.*

General Installation Instructions

All the bonus disk programs are compressed, self-extracting archives (SEAs). You don't need any special software to decompress these files. Simply drag the file you want to examine to your hard disk or another floppy, and double-click it. A dialog box similar to the one in Figure D.1 lets you choose where you want to install the file. Make your selection, and then click Save. After a few moments, the decompressed program will appear in that location. You'll notice that the SEA file still remains where you dragged it. You can safely delete that file once the installation is complete (but don't delete the original files on the floppy disk!).

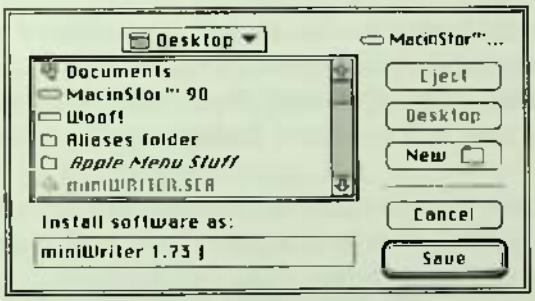


Figure D.1
Selecting a location to install the shareware programs

NOTE. *Klondike and Mines have been combined on the disk into a single SEA archive called* Klondike & Mines.SEA. *When you double-click it, both files will be installed.*

That's all there is to it.

The Bonus Disk Products and Their Special Requirements

You'll find each program briefly described below, along with information on any special requirements it might have. I've also included the number of the chapter where the file is fully discussed; you should read these main entries for more complete information.

Compact Pro (Chapter 15)

Bill Goodman's Compact Pro program puts your files on a diet, compressing them as CPT archives so they take up less room on your disk. Also, because they're smaller, they take less time to transfer by modem—which can save you money. The utility also decompresses SIT files in the StuffIt 1.5.1 format. Compact Pro is one of the most popular compression utilities for the Mac, and winner of a coveted *MacUser* Eddy Award for Best Compression Product in 1990.

After installation, just double-click the program to run it.

Requirements: Macintosh 512KE or better; System 4.2 or higher. Compact Pro requires at least 522k of free memory.

Version on Bonus Disk: 1.33

Find Pro II (Chapter 11)

System 7's Find command under the File menu is clumsy and slow. Find Pro II, by Bill Monk, is a powerful, free alternative that's lightning fast and much more sophisticated than Apple's approach. And Find Pro II is a *MacUser* ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive that isn't available through CompuServe, America Online, or GEnie.

After installation, just double-click the program to run it. You'll probably find it handy to have Find Pro II in your Apple menu, so I recommend you place it in the Apple Menu Items folder after you install it.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 7.

Version on Bonus Disk: 1.2.1

GMS Calendar (Chapter 9, under Calendar DA)

Apple provides a notepad, an alarm clock, and even a puzzle, as part of the System software. But, oddly, it doesn't provide a calendar. That's a good thing, too, because Apple could never hope to surpass Mark Wall's GMS Calendar. View a day, a week, or a month at a glance. Attach notes to days, search notes for specific text, and even export or import your comments as text files.

After installation, just double-click the program to run it.
Requirements: Any Mac, with System 6 and MultiFinder, or System 7.
Version on Bonus Disk: 1.0

Klondike (Chapter 4)

It may look like just a simple solitaire card game, but Michael Casteel's Klondike is totally addictive. No wonder it was voted best shareware game for the Macintosh in the 1992 *MacUser* Shareware Awards (*MacUser*, October 1992). It's a classic example of Macintosh shareware.

After installation, just double-click the Klondike icon to start shuffling cards.

Requirements: Any Mac
Version on Bonus Disk: 5.0.1

Mines (Chapter 4, under Bombs)

Perhaps the only reason for a Mac user to switch to Windows is a clever game called Minesweeper. Fortunately, you don't have to take that drastic step. Paul Cunningham's Mines game fills the vacuum on the Mac, and it's even better than the Windows version: It does sounds! The goal is to clear a minefield, using your powers of reasoning and deduction. It's challenging, fun, and a race against the clock. One wrong move and KABOOM!

After installation, just double-click Mines to start playing. Under System 7, you might enjoy having the game in your Apple menu. It's a lot more fun than the Apple Puzzle DA, so remove that and drag Mines to the Apple Menu Items folder.

Requirements: Any Mac
Version on Bonus Disk: 1.0

miniWRITER (Chapter 5)

David Dunham's miniWRITER program is a simple word processor that's ideal for short text notes, and especially for formatting text to be used in telecommunications. It can strip out curly quotes or put them in, insert line breaks, and perform a variety of other tasks. There's even a Find and Replace feature. It offers some special formatting commands for ImageWriter users, too.

Here's a special installation note for System 6 users: To install this program, start Font/DA Mover. Hold down Option and click the Open button. Select miniWRITER from this list (you may have to navigate through folders to find it), and then install it into your System.

System 7 users can place the file wherever you want. Just double-click it and start typing.

Requirements: Any Mac

Version on Bonus Disk: 1.73

VirusDetective (Chapter 14)

Every Mac owner should take the threat of computer viruses seriously, even if it *is* blown out of proportion by the media. One of the best shareware antiviral tools available for the Mac is VirusDetective DA by Jeff Shulman. This desk accessory sleuths out viruses and Trojan horses before they do any damage. It can scan floppies as you insert them. Also, VirusDetective is usually the first antiviral utility to be updated when new viruses appear.

System 6 users: Install it with Font/DA Mover. System 7 users: Drag it to an unopened System folder and click OK when asked about placing it in a special location. In both cases, the DA will appear in your Apple menu.

Requirements: Any Mac with System 6.0.5 or later.

Version on Bonus Disk: 5.0.5

ZTerm (Chapter 15)

If you're looking for an inexpensive alternative to commercial telecommunications programs, stop right here. Dave Alverson's ZTerm software offers powerful features, such as macros and scripting, so you can create automatic procedures that access most of the major on-line services and nearly any BBS. The program is fast, even on low-end Macs. It sports a simple, clean interface and is extremely popular.

After installation, just turn your modem on and double-click the ZTerm icon.

Requirements: 512k Mac or better; System 4.1 or later.

Version on Bonus Disk: 0.9

Common Questions about ZiffNet/Mac

New members sometimes find their first visits to ZiffNet/Mac (or any new on-line service) confusing and frustrating. On-line menus can be complex and intimidating. You have to grapple with new terms like *file compression*, *MacBinary*, *X-Modem*, and *baud rate*; choose among a bewildering number of forums and options; and cope with new hardware (a modem)—all at the same time!

I've put together a collection of common questions and answers that will help you do things on ZiffNet/Mac—such as download files, send messages, and move around the service—in the fastest, cheapest way possible. This appendix is not meant to be a complete manual, but just a sort of "survival guide" to help you get started.

Note. The ZiffNet Support Forum is not the same as the Download and Support Forum. See Question 9.

If I've left anything out or you have questions that aren't answered here, be sure to leave a message in the ZiffNet Support Forum (see Question 8 for how to do this). One of the forum managers, called sysops (SYStem OPerators), or perhaps even another user who's already been through what you're going through, will be happy to provide you with answers and advice.

NOTE. *The following questions and answers assume you're accessing ZiffNet/Mac through a so-called terminal program, such as Smartcom, MicroPhone II, White Knight, or ZTerm. This means you interact with ZiffNet/Mac through on-line menus or by typing in commands at on-line prompts. If, however, you're using either CIM or Navigator, you will need to consult the manuals that come with those programs for information on how to move around on ZiffNet/Mac, manage messages, and download files. You will, however, find some tips on using those programs in this appendix, so read on! Also, look at Question 15 for some details on various telecom programs you can use.*

1. I find "forums" really confusing. What exactly is a forum?

A ZiffNet/Mac forum is a special area of ZiffNet/Mac dedicated to one theme. There are three main ZiffNet/Mac forums: the MacUser Forum (GO ZMC:MACUSER), the MacWEEK Forum (GO ZMC:MACWEEK), and the Download and Support Forum (GO ZMC:DOWNTECH).

Each forum is divided into two main areas: the Messages area and the Libraries area. It's as if the forum were one house with two stories or floors. The Libraries and Messages areas of each forum are separate from those in the other forums. If you leave a message in the MacUser Forum's Software message section, for example, you will have to return to the MacUser Forum's Software message section to read replies. You can't expect to see replies in the MacWEEK Forum.

If you're in the Messages area of a forum and want to download some files, you have to leave it and go to the Libraries area. For information on how to do this and to move between forums, see Question 9.

The Messages area in each forum contains messages you can read and/or answer. You can also leave your own messages. The Messages area is itself divided up into message sections (just as a floor is divided up into rooms). Each message section is devoted to a specific topic: Software, Letters to the Editor, Consumer Guide, and so on.

The Libraries area is also divided up into separate libraries, such as Applications, DAs, Special Supplement, MacUser Utilities, and so on. The library names vary from forum to forum.

2. I want to download shareware files. Where do I find files on ZiffNet/Mac?

The main sources of shareware files on ZiffNet/Mac are the software libraries of the Download and Support Forum. The libraries are organized by the type of software you're looking for: Applications; DAs; INITs, cdevs, FKEYs; and so on. Only shareware that has been mentioned in *MacUser* or *MacWEEK*, or that has been approved by editors and the forum managers, is placed in these libraries.

3. How do I search for a specific file in the Download and Support Forum?

One way is to use the BROWSE command of the on-line library menu, and enter the file name as a keyword when prompted. Software is stored in the libraries under file names that are usually composed of six letters, followed by a period and a three-letter code or extension. For example, the name of the weekly index file of new uploads is NEWUPL.TXT. The file name is always one of the keywords you can use to search for the file.

To avoid searching through each library in the forum to find the file you want, you can enter ALL at the first prompt when you start a search. This applies the search to all libraries in the Download and Support Forum (the same is true in other forums, as well).

If you don't know the file name, enter some other keyword you think might be appropriate. You can use the * (asterisk) character as a wildcard. For example, file* would find FileList+, FileMaker, FileTyper, and so forth. The wildcard character can go a long way to making searches successful.

NOTE. *The Navigator and CIM programs offer other ways of searching for files, different from the method just described. Consult the manuals that came with those programs to learn how to search for files.*

4. How do I find out about the most recent uploads?

You will always find the most recent files in the New Uploads Library (Library 0) of the Download and Support Forum. New files are kept there for about 60 days. You have to first enter the Download and Support Forum, and then enter the New Uploads Library.

The forum staff also announces new or updated files in messages titled NEW:<*filename*> or UPDATE:<*filename*>. These messages are placed in the New Uploads/Updates message section in the Download and Support Forum.

5. Is there a list of all the shareware files available in the Download and Support Forum?

All shareware files are listed in a file called INDEX.TXT, found in the Reference Library (Library 7) of the Download and Support Forum. The file is updated every week. You can use any word processor to read it. It's tab-delimited, so you can even import it into a database. If you use FileMaker Pro 2.0 or later, there is a FileMaker Pro shell (ZMCFMP.CPT) available for download in the Scripts & Templates Library (Library 5) of the Download and Support Forum. You can import INDEX.TXT into this shell.

6. Those three-letter codes on file names are strange. What do they mean?

The three-letter code (called a file name extension) is very important, because it tells you something about the kind of file you are downloading. Here are the most common extensions used in the libraries and what they mean:

- SIT (for example, IMAGER.SIT) means the file has been compressed (made smaller) with a program called StuffIt. A compressed file is sometimes called an *archive*. Files are compressed so that they take less time to download. That saves you money, but you have to then decompress or "unstuff" the file before you can use the software. You'll read more about that later.

- CPT (for example, ALIASA.CPT) means the file has been compressed with a program called Compact Pro. As with SIT compressed files, you have to decompress CPT files before you can use the software.

- SEA (for example, SOLARI.SEA) means the file has been compressed and is self-extracting. You do not need any special software to decompress it. Just double-click it, and the file will place a decompressed version of the enclosed software on your hard drive or floppy. (That's true of SIT or CPT compressed files, too.) Once you decompress a file, the compressed version remains on your hard drive or floppy until you delete it.

- BIN (for example STUFCL.BIN) files are either self-extracting, like SEA compressed files, or are not compressed at all. You'll be able to use them at once after you download them. The BIN stands for *binary*.
- TXT (for example, INDEX.TXT) files are simple text files that you can open in any word processor. They are not compressed.

SEA, BIN, and TXT files are a snap to use, but what about SIT and CPT files? You will want to download a file called STUFEX.SEA from the Applications Library (Library 1) in the Download and Support Forum. Double-click it, and a program called StuffIt Expander is placed on your hard drive or floppy. StuffIt Expander decompresses both SIT and CPT compressed files. StuffIt Expander is fully explained in Chapter 15.

If you think you might want to create your own SIT or CPT compressed files (to send to a friend, to upload to ZiffNet/Mac, or to save room on a floppy or hard drive), you need to download the full version of StuffIt or use Compact Pro, which is included on the bonus disk that comes with this book. StuffIt is available as file SITLTE.SEA in the Applications Library (Library 1) of the Download and Support Forum. This is a fairly big file, so don't waste your time or money downloading it unless you need to create your own compressed files.

7. I downloaded a file, but when I double-click it, I just get a message telling me the file could not be opened. Is the file bad or did I do something wrong?

A couple of things are possible. It may be that the file is compressed. The three-letter code at the end of the file name will tell you what program was used to compress it. You will have to decompress it, as explained in Question 6, before you can use the software.

It may also be that you downloaded the file with a telecommunications option called MacBinary turned off. Make sure you have the MacBinary option turned on in your telecommunications software. Consult the manual that came with the software about how to do this. If you download a Mac file with MacBinary turned off, the file will have a generic document icon; when you double-click it, you will see an alert telling you that the file could not be opened. If this happens, you can either download the file again (with MacBinary turned ON!), or download a file called BINHEX.BIN in the Applications Library (Library 1) of the Download and Support Forum. This program, BinHex 5.0, will recover your file for you. (After you use BinHex 5.0, you will still have to decompress the recovered file if it is compressed.) See Chapter 1 for more on MacBinary.

NOTE. *If you are using Navigator or CompuServe Information Manager (CIM) to download files, you don't usually have to worry about setting MacBinary; it is on by default.*

8. I need to send a message to someone. How do I do this?

There are a couple of ways to send messages. One is to use the Messages sections each forum has in addition to the software Libraries. You can simply "post" a message in whatever message section you want. To post a general message, address it to ALL. To make sure that only the ZiffNet/Mac staff reads it, address it to *SYSOP. If you want a specific person to read it, you must use that person's ID number. For example, to send a message to me, you would address it to 72511,36. You cannot simply type in a person's name; always use the ID number.

Remember that forum messages are not private. Even if you address it to a specific person, anyone can read the message. And if the person to whom you sent the message does not enter the forum where you left the message, he or she will never know they have a message waiting.

That's where e-mail (electronic mail) comes in. In the ZiffNet/Mac Mail area (enter GO MAIL), you can send a private message to a certain individual and be confident that only he or she will read it. Whenever the addressee connects with ZiffNet/Mac or CompuServe, he or she will be told that mail is waiting to be read.

9. You talk about "going places" on ZiffNet/Mac. How do I move around without dealing with the confusing menus?

If you are using Navigator, you just add tiles. With CIM, you just point-and-click. In either case, you don't really have to deal with the on-line menu system. But if you use a terminal program such as Smartcom, MicroPhone II, White Knight, ZTerm, or the communications program built into Microsoft Works, the story is quite different.

Once you connect with ZiffNet/Mac, you usually find you have to choose among several numbered menu options from several different menus before you actually manage to get to the forum you are seeking. But there's a better way: Use GO words. You've probably already noticed some in this appendix. Every forum has a GO word assigned to it.

Note. Although I have used ALL CAPS to emphasize GO commands, you can type them in lowercase.

When you first connect to ZiffNet/Mac and want to go to the Download and Support Forum, for example, type **GO ZMC:DOWNTECH** at the ! prompt and press the Return key. This command takes you directly to the Download and Support Forum, bypassing all the menus you would have had to wade through. If you are in the Download and Support Libraries or

Messages areas and decide you want to go to the MacWEEK Forum, just type **GO ZMC:MACWEEK** at any ! prompt and press the Return key. You do not have to return to the top menu of the current forum first; the GO word for a forum always takes you to that forum's top menu. Once there, you can select the appropriate on-line numbered menu command (and press Return) to go to the Messages or Libraries area of that forum, or you can type in **MES** or **LIB** (and press Return) to choose from a numbered list of message sections or libraries available in that forum.

Navigator users make decisions about visiting the libraries or message sections of a forum by simply making the appropriate choices in that forum's tile. CIM users click the Browse Messages or Browse Libraries icon in the top Forum Status window. In both cases, you'll want to consult the manual for details.

Here are the main GO words you'll need on ZiffNet/Mac:

- ZiffNet/Mac Top Menu: GO ZMC:TOP
- Download and Support Forum: GO ZMC:DOWNTECH
- MacUser Forum: GO ZMC:MACUSER
- MacWEEK Forum: GO ZMC:MACWEEK
- ZiffNet Support Forum: GO ZMC:SUPPORT

NOTE. *The ZiffNet Support Forum is not the same as the Download and Support Forum. The Support Forum is free of connect-time charges and is where you can ask basic questions about ZiffNet and ZiffNet/Mac without worrying about charges. There are relatively few software files to download from its libraries, however.*

- Free MacUser Utility of the Month: GO ZMC:POWERTOOLS
- MacUser/MacWEEK Index: GO ZMC:INDEX
- Computer Database Plus: GO COMPDB
- ZiffNet/Mac Mail: GO HOME:MAIL

TIP. *Memorize at least one of these GO words—perhaps GO ZMC:TOP, since this is the top ZiffNet/Mac menu and a* ***free*** *area. If you ever become lost anywhere in ZiffNet/Mac or CompuServe, just type this GO word at any ! prompt and you will immediately go to a familiar and safe haven.*

These are just the main GO words. ZiffNet has many other locations you can go to. To see a list of all possible GO words, type **GO QUICK** at any ! prompt.

10. Do I get charged double if I cross over to CompuServe from ZiffNet/Mac or vice versa?

If you are not in a free area (see Question 11), then you are charged $12.80 per hour, by one service only (CompuServe or ZiffNet/Mac). You are never charged an hourly rate by both ZiffNet and CompuServe at the same time. For instance, when you are in the MacUser Forum, you are charged $12.80 per hour by ZiffNet/Mac. CompuServe does not charge you for that same time, even though your main account might be a CompuServe account and you just crossed over to ZiffNet/Mac for a visit. When you visit a CompuServe forum (say the MAUG MacFun Forum), you are charged $12.80 per hour by CompuServe, but not simultaneously by ZiffNet/Mac. However, if you do use both CompuServe and ZiffNet/Mac, you have to pay the monthly membership fee of both services: $2.00 for CompuServe and $2.50 for ZiffNet/Mac. (All these prices were current as this book went to press.)

11. Some areas of ZiffNet/Mac are supposed to be free. Just exactly which areas are free (in simple English, please)?

First of all, "free" means that the standard hourly connect-time charges have been turned off. Whether your host service is CompuServe or ZiffNet, the usual $12.80 per hour (2400 baud) charges do not accumulate while you are in a free area.

- The top ZiffNet/Mac menu (GO ZMC:TOP) is free. That's the first menu you see when you connect with ZiffNet/Mac. Until you leave that menu by choosing a menu option or using a GO word, you are not being charged the standard hourly rates. That gives you time to decide where you want to go, without the pressure of mounting connect-time charges.
- The Powertools download (GO ZMC:POWERTOOLS) is free. This is the special area where ZiffNet/Mac makes the current *MacUser* ZiffNet/-Mac Exclusive Utility available for free download. ZiffNet/Mac Exclusives cannot be found on CompuServe or America Online. Former Exclusives include files such as Find Pro II and Alias Assassin.

NOTE. *The menu in Powertools is* ***not*** *free of connect charges. Only the actual time it takes to download the current utility is free.*

- The MacWEEK NewsBeat area (GO ZMC:NEWSBEAT) is free. This is where you can read the latest news about the Macintosh, gathered by the staff of *MacWEEK* magazine. It's updated every Friday night. This lets ZiffNet subscribers read the electronic edition of *MacWEEK* several days before the printed version is published (on Monday). NewsBeat includes the full text of the ten top stories.

- MacWEEK News in Brief (GO ZMC:MACBRIEF), the on-line summary of *MacWEEK*, is free. News in Brief provides summaries of the top stories in *MacWEEK*, including all the Page One news stories and the major stories from each news section, among them Gateways (networking) and GA (graphic applications). Also highlighted are major news stories from the BusinessWatch section, which tracks the ups and downs of hardware and software companies and the people who run them. Every Friday night, MacWEEK News in Brief is updated on ZiffNet/Mac with excerpts of the top stories. This lets ZiffNet subscribers read the electronic edition of *MacWEEK* several days before the printed version is published (on Monday). News in Brief provides abstracts only, but has more stories than NewsBeat.

- The ZiffNet Support Forum (GO ZMC:SUPPORT) is free. Here you can ask basic questions about ZiffNet or ZiffNet/Mac. You can also download the current *MacUser* ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive Utility from Library 8. (This is another way to get the same Exclusives you'll find in the Powertools area described earlier.)

Other areas are free on ZiffNet, but the foregoing are the ones that will be of the most interest to Mac users. For a full listing, download file MEMBER.TXT in the Reference Library (Library 7) of the Download and Support Forum.

The three primary ZiffNet/Mac forums, however, are not free. That means when you are in the MacUser, MacWEEK, or Download and Support forums for any reason (reading/sending messages or downloading shareware files), you are incurring hourly connect-time charges. The ZiffNet/Mac forum connect charges ($12.80 per hour at 2400 baud, at this writing) are identical to those in CompuServe forums. You also incur charges while you send, reply to, or read mail in the e-mail area (GO HOME:MAIL).

TIP. *Navigator users will find it easier to access some of the free areas if they download file NAVZIF.TXT from the Scripts and Templates Library (Library 5) in the Download and Support Forum. This file explains how to add and script files in Navigator so that you can benefit from the free areas.*

12. I'm having problems with my *MacWEEK* or *MacUser* subscription. Can I get on-line help with this?

If you have questions about your *MacWEEK* subscription, you have several options:

- Leave a message in the Subscriptions message area of the MacWEEK (GO ZMC:MACWEEK) Forum.

- Write to *MacWEEK* Customer Service, P.O. Box 1766, Riverton, NJ 08077-7366.
- Telephone *MacWEEK* Customer Service, (609) 461-2100; or fax (609) 764-7157 (To: MACWEEK).

If you have questions about your *MacUser* subscription, you can

- Write to *MacUser* Magazine, P.O. Box 52461, Boulder, CO 80321-2461.
- Telephone the *MacUser* subscription department at (800) 627-2247.

There is, however, no on-line assistance with *MacUser* subscriptions available at this writing.

13. I have some questions about my ZiffNet/Mac account. Can I get answers on line?

Leave a message in the ZiffNet Support Forum (GO ZMC:SUPPORT). This forum is free. Please remember that the ZiffNet Support Forum is not the same as the Download and Support Forum (GO ZMC:DOWNTECH), which is *not* free.

TIP. *If you ever want to cancel your account, simply type* ***GO ZIFFMEM*** *at any ! forum prompt. Then choose the Cancel Your ZiffNet Membership on-line menu item.*

14. I want to view or retrieve *MacWEEK* or *MacUser* articles on line. How do I do this?

First, go to the MacUser/MacWEEK Index (GO ZMC:INDEX) and search for the articles you want to retrieve. Take note of the reference number of each article listing. This area of ZiffNet/Mac is free, so don't panic if it takes you a while to figure out the menus. Following is what a sample search might look like. (The session has been somewhat edited, but it still gives you a good idea of what you'll see on the screen.)

```
! GO ZMC:INDEX
MacUser/MacWEEK
Search for Articles by:

1 Product Name
2 Company Name
3 Topic in the Citation

Enter choice !1
Enter Product Name : FileGuard
```

```
MacUser/MacWEEK
Search results: 3 articles found.

NEXT ACTION:
1 Display List of Articles
2 Narrow the Selection Set
3 Begin New Search

Last page, enter choice !1

MacUser/MacWEEK
1 Kent-Marsh security line, FileGuard, Empower get System 7.0 updates.
Pub. Date: 8/6/1991 Publication: MacWEEK
2 FileGuard and MaccessCard REader.
Pub. Date: 4/1/1991 Publication: MacUser
3 Stability in security: data protection packages that work.
Pub. Date: 10/24/1989 Publication: MacWEEK
Last page, enter choice !3

MacUser/MacWEEK
Journal:  MacWEEK, April 4, 1989 v3 n14 p32(1)
Title:   FileGuard truly automates encryption process. (Software Review) (ASD
Software Inc.) (The Week in Reviews)
Author:  Waring, Becky
Descriptors.. Company:  ASD Software Inc. products
Product:  FileGuard (Data security software)
Topic:   Files Encryption Software Packages
Press <CR> for more !

MacUser/MacWEEK
Evaluation Article #: A7175170
```

There, at the very end of this sample MacUser/MacWEEK Index session, is the article reference number I mentioned earlier. Write it down.

NOTE. *Navigator and CIM users will have to drop into manual or terminal mode to access the MacUser/MacWEEK Index.*

Next, armed with the reference numbers, go to Computer Database Plus (GO COMPDB), and use the reference numbers to retrieve the full text of the articles you want. The bad news is that Computer Database Plus is not free. There is a surcharge; that means you pay charges *in addition to* the standard $12.80 per hour connect-time charges. At this writing, Computer Database Plus charges are $0.25 per minute ($15.00 per hour), plus a connect surcharge of $2.50 per article retrieved ($1.50 if summary is not available), or $1.00 per summarized article retrieved.

Be sure you obtain the reference number from the MacUser/MacWEEK Index, as described earlier, *before* you enter Computer Database Plus; you will save a lot of time and money. You can usually retrieve one article in under five minutes.

Following is a sample retrieval in Computer Database Plus. (The session has been edited, but it still gives you a good idea of what you'll see on the screen.)

```
! GO COMPDB
Computer Database Plus Top

Welcome to...
          Computer Database Plus
 Copyright 1992 Information Access Company
Copyright 1992 Ziff Communications Company
Number of articles in the database: 317449
     Last updated on 18-DECEMBER-1992

1 Search for Articles
2 Quick Reference
3 Exit

Enter choice ! 1

Computer Database Plus Search Methods
START A SEARCH for Articles
1 Key Words (words in article titles, subject headings or the names of featured
companies or products)
2 Words in Article Text
3 Subject Headings
4 Company Names
5 Product Names
6 Publication Names
7 Publication Dates
8 Article Types
9 RETRIEVE an Article by Reference Number

Enter choice ! 9
Enter article reference number (? for help): A7175170

Computer Database Plus Article Citations

ARTICLE SELECTION MENU
1 FileGuard truly automates encryption process. (Software Review) (ASD Software
Inc.) (The Week in Reviews), MacWEEK, April 4, 1989 v3 n14 p32(1).
Reference # A7175170  Text: Yes (2117 chars)  Abstract: No

Enter choice (? for help) ! 1

Citation:  MacWEEK, April 4, 1989 v3 n14 p32(1)

Title:    FileGuard truly automates encryption process. (Software Review) (ASD
Software Inc.) (The Week in Reviews)
Authors:   Waring, Becky
```

```
Subjects:  Files; Encryption; Software Packages; Evaluation
Companies:  ASD Software Inc. products
Products:  FileGuard (Data security software)
Reference #: A7175170

Full Text COPYRIGHT MacWEEK Inc. 1989 Full text ($) starts here. Enter M to
return to citation menu or...

Press <CR> for more !

<Article text would appear here.....>

Last page ! exit

Computer Database Plus Charge Summary
2 Minutes Connect Time   @$ 0.25 = $0.50
1 Full-text (No Abstract) Display/Download   @$ 1.50 = $1.50
Total = $2.00
Thanks for using Computer Database Plus.
```

The $2.00 total for the retrieval of one article is pretty common, provided you look up that article reference number *first* in the MacUser/MacWEEK Index (GO ZMC:INDEX).

You will also want to explore the libraries of the MacWEEK and MacUser forums. Some magazine-specific files, such as special reports from computer conferences or electronic supplements to articles printed in the magazines, are frequently made available there for users to download. In the MacWEEK Forum, look in the Special Supplement Library. In the MacUser Forum, look in the Special Reports Library.

15. What is the best telecommunications software to use for accessing ZiffNet/Mac?

Different people like different applications, but here are the most popular ones:

- *CompuServe Navigator.* This program is not the easiest to use, but it excels at getting the most information for the least money because you set up your on-line sessions off line. For help with Navigator, use the free Navigator Support Forum (GO CIS:NAVSUPPORT).
- *CompuServe Information Manager (CIM).* This program is a low-cost, user-friendly way to use ZiffNet/Mac services. It has a graphical interface: You just point-and-click your way around. Add the GO words mentioned in Question 9 to the Favorite Places menu, and set up the Favorite Places menu to stay open all the time. For help with CIM, use the free CIM Support Forum (GO CIS:MCIMSUP).

Bonus Disk program

- *ZTerm*. This is an excellent shareware program for people who want to use a text-based or command-line interface. It supports CompuServe QuickB protocol for fast, efficient file transfers. Even better, it's on the bonus disk attached to this book!
- *MicroPhone II*, *Smartcom II*, and *White Knight*. These are popular commercial alternatives to ZTerm, which can be scripted to automate repetitive tasks.

The basic information in this appendix will make your first excursions on ZiffNet/Mac easier to manage and more productive. If you have other questions, leave a message in the Mac Issues message section of the free Support Forum (GO ZMC:SUPPORT), addressed to ALL or SYSOP.

INDEX

A

Academic Computing and Network Services, 334
Academic DataManager, 163–164
The Active Window magazine, 30
Acute Systems, 380
Adams, Geoff, 297
Adams, Mark, 213
Address Book, 177–178, 389
Add/Strip, 121–124
Adobe Type Manager (ATM), 127
Aguirre, Jose, 243
AIDS
  Clock, 35–36
  stack, 35–36
Aitken, Kevin, 323
AKA extension, 209–210
Aladdin Systems, 364–365, 367
Alias, 249–250, 390
Alias Director, 210–211, 232
alias utilities
  AKA, 209–210
  Alias, 249–250, 390
  Alias Director, 210–211, 232
  Alias Stylist, 211
  AliasZoo, 232
  MacUser's Alias Assassin, 231–232
  Nom de Plume, 236–237
  PowerAlias, 226
  TrashAlias, 232, 243–244, 339
  ZMakeAlias, 247
Alias Stylist, 211
AliasZoo, 232
Alpha, 93–95
AltCDEF, 250–252
AltWDEF, 252–253
Alverson, David, 369
America Online, 15, 16–18
  address of, 385
  and clip art, 141
  cost of, 17
Amortize, 191–192
analog communication, 14
Announce, 352
antitheft utilities, discussed, 329–330
antiviral utilities, 329–344
  Disinfectant, 331–334, 388
  GateKeeper, 334–335, 388
  VirusBlockade II, 341–342
  VirusDetective, 334, 341–342, 388
Apollo, 253–254, 262, 388
AppDisk, 212–213
AppleDraw DA, 142–144, 388
AppleEase, 213–214
Apple File Exchange (AFE), 9, 10
AppleLink, 365
Apple Remote Access (ARA), 350
AppleScript, 242, 243
application launchers
  Apollo, 253–254, 262, 388
  Launch INIT, 335–336
  MFMenu+, 262
  Out to Launch!, 262, 277
Applicon, 214–215
appointment utilities
  Do It All!, 179–181
  Remember? Personal Reminder System, 185–186
  To Do! DA, 187–188, 389
  Visual Time Manager, 188–189
ARA (Apple Remote Access), 350
ARAClient, 350–351
ArcMac, 371–373
Arkanoids, 67
Armadillo dingbat font, 128–129
articles, reviewed on line, 403
Artisto+, 144–145
ATM (Adobe Type Manager), 127
AT Standard Command Set, 15
Author font, 128
AutoIdle, 79
AutoMenus, 254–256
Azuma, Daniel, 305

B

Bachman, 81
Bad Boys Software, 285
BalloonPrinter, 216
balloon utilities
  BalloonPrinter, 216
  Helium, 228–229, 236
  NoBalloonMenu, 236
banner programs, MacBillboard, 153
Bar Codes Stack, 36–37
Bardi, Luis, 231
base conversion, BaseToBase DA, 192–193
BaseToBase DA, 192–193
Basura, 209, 217, 339
batch utilities, Bat Filer, 289–291
Bates, Roger, 280
Bat Filer, 289–291
Batista, Ricardo, 223, 318
baud rate, defined, 14
BBEdit II, 95

BBSs. *See* bulletin boards: telecommunications tools
BCS (Boston Computer Society), 30, 386
BeamWars, 54–56
Beatrous, Frank, 306
Becker, Loftus, 202, 353
Before Dark, 297
Behierarchic, 233
Being Alive (AIDS charity), address of, 36
Belgian PostCards, 95–97
Bell, J. Christopher, 181
Bereiter, Tom, 151
Berfield, Scott, 321
Berkeley Macintosh Users Group (BMUG), 29–30, 386
Beyond, Inc., 302
bibliographies, creating, 163–164
Big Cheese Key, 56–57
Bigfoot, 63
billboard programs, MacBillboard, 153
Bill's Dingbats, 128–129
.BIN files, 8, 398
BinHex, 9, 10–11, 373–374
BiPlane, 193–195, 389
Bird Anatomy, 37
Bitson, Tim, 352
Black Swamp Software, 38
Blaschek, Gunther, 144, 279
Blender DA, 145–146
Blesser, 323
Blume, Josh, 157
BMUG (Berkeley Macintosh Users Group), 29–30, 386
BMUG PD Library, address of, 40
Boardwatch Magazine, 386
Bobker, Steve, 22
Bollinger, Steve, 267
Bombs!, 57–58
Bond, William, 369
Bonus Disk
  products and their requirements, 392–394
  using programs on, 391–394
Bootman, 310
Boston Computer Society (BCS/Mac), 30, 386
Boston II font, 129
Brickles Plus, 58–59
BroadCast, 351–352, 388
Brothers, Dennis, 259
Brown, Donald, 153
Brown, Glenn, 42
BROWSE command, 396
budgeting utilities
  Finance, 196
  Home Budget Stack, 195–196
  HyperBucks, 198
bulletin boards, 13
  and telecommunications tools, 349, 355
  and viruses, 5
Bunch Typer, 309
BundAid, 291–292
bundle bits, discussed, 291, 295
bundle bit utilities
  BundAid, 291–292
  DeBNDLer, 295–296
Butler, John, 81
ButtonPad, 98–99
Buyer's Guide, ZiffNet/Mac, 22

C

Cabral, Art, 84
CacheOut, 217–218
calculator utilities
  BaseToBase DA, 192–193
  Calculator II, 193
  Modem Calculator DA, 357–358
  Number Crunch, 193
  Pica Calculator, 131–132
  RPN Calc DA, 193
Calendar DA, 178–179, 392
calendar utilities
  Calendar DA, 178–179
  GMS Calendar, 179
  Remember? Personal Reminder System, 185–186
  To Do! DA, 187–188, 389
  Visual Time Manager, 188–189
Calhoun, John, 71, 72, 73, 81, 82
Calibran, Urs, 318
Calice, Mark, 166
Canvas, 142
Capital Software, 198
Cap'n Magneto, 59–60
Capture, 146
Carlton, Dave, 340
Carnevale, Giuseppe, 316
Carpetbag, 133–134, 256, 323, 388
carriage returns, insertion of in text files, 115–116
Casady & Greene, Glider+, 71
Casteel, Mike, 75, 76
catalogs
  The CD Catalog, 164–166
  GraphXbase, 150
  ImageCatalog, 149–151, 388
CCITT standards, 15
The CD Catalog, 164–166
cdevs (control panels), defined, 207
CDEV Shrinker, 286
CD-ROM subscription services, 27–29, 387

Celeste, Eric, 107
CellMate, 318
Chambers, Lloyd, 383
Chancellor, Robert, 380
chat rooms, defined, 17
CheapColor 2, 292–293
chess, HyperNetwork CHESS, 74–75
children's programs, 34–50
Chooser extensions
  BroadCast, 351–352, 388
  Public Folder, 358–359, 390
Christensen, Steve, 61, 283, 315
Cicinelli, Joe, 193
CIM (CompuServe Information Manager), 15, 18, 25–26, 395, 406
Cipher, Terry, 185
Clairvaux III font, 129
CLAM (CLean Apple Menu), 218–219
Claris Corporation
  HyperCard, 35
  Public Folder, 358–359, 390
Clark, Mark, 97
Clendinning, Kerry, 233, 262, 310
clip art, 141–142
Clipper FKEY, 352–353
clock utilities
  SetClock, 320–321
  SuperClock, 283
Coffman, Russ, 129
Color Bits, 293–294
Color Cursor, 259
ColorFinder, 293, 390
Colorize, 257
color utilities
  CheapColor 2, 292–293
  Color Bits, 293–294
  ColorFinder, 293, 390
  Colorize, 257
  Icon Colorizer, 293
  Kolor, 268–269
  Sun Desk, 293
  Switch-A-Roo, 284
Columnbo, 99–100
Columns][, 61–62
Colwell, Alexander, 113, 252, 253
comma separated values (CSV) format, 122
CommentKeeper, 219–220
communication, types of, 14
communications software
  FirstClass Client, 355–356
  FreeTerm, 369
  TermWorks, 369
  ZTerm, 367–369, 389, 407
Compact Pro, 331, 353–355, 388, 392
Compact Pro (.CPT) file compression, 7, 353, 374, 397
compressed files, 7–8, 349–350
compression utilities
  ArcMac, 371–373
  Compact Pro, 331, 353, 388
  ExtractorPC, 374–375
  MacCompress, 383
  StuffIt Deluxe, 331
  StuffIt Expander, 364–365, 388
  StuffIt Lite, 365–367, 388
Compton's Encyclopedia, 17
CompuServe, 18–20
  address of, 385
  and clip art, 141
  cost of, 19–20, 401
  Information Manager (CIM), 15, 18, 25–26, 395, 406
  Navigator, 8, 15, 18, 24, 25, 361–362, 395, 402, 406
  QuickB DA protocol, 359–360
  SatNav, 361–363
  transfer protocols for, 349
COMPUTER Applications, 158
Computer Currents, 13, 386
Computer Database Plus, 404, 405–406
Computer Freelance, 37
Computer Gaming World, 70
Computer Shopper, 386
conflicts, INIT and extension, 207–208
connectivity tools, 371–384
Connectix, Inc., 234, 235
ConnectNot, 350
connectors, defined, 350
Conrad, Michael, 101, 255
CONText II, 100–101
Continuum, 62–63
control panel extensions
  ARAClient, 350–351
  CDEV Shrinker, 286
  Easy KEYS, 261–262, 389
  Front&Center, 264–265
  GooPanel, 265–267, 390
  HeapTool, 309–310
  MacEnvy, 312–313
  MacPassword, 336–338, 389
  MemINIT, 313
  MenuKey, 271–272
  MountImage, 315–316
  RamDisk+, 279–280
  Scroll2, 280
  SCSI Info, 320
  SoundMaster, 281–282
  SuperClock, 283

TearOFFS, 285
UnScrolly, 285–286
WindowShade, 286–287
Conversion DA, 124–125
conversion utilities
BinHex, 373–374
Conversion DA, 124–125
costs, minimizing on-line, 23
Cox, Graham, 66
Cox, Roger & Kathy, 47
.CPT file compression extension, 7, 353, 374, 397
CPT format. *See* Compact Pro
Craig, David, 100
creator codes, 101
crippleware, defined, 3
Critters, 63–64
CrossMaster, 64–65
Crutchfield, Steve, 54
Cruz, Kristopher, 113
Crystal Quest, 85
CSV (comma separated values) format, 122
Cunningham, Paul, 58
curly (smart) quotes, and text editors, 100, 113
CursorAnimator, 258–259
CursorBeacon, 259
CursorFix, 259
cursor utilities, 258–259

D

DAbase, 166–167
Darkside, 294–295, 389
database tools, 163–175
Data Translation Quick-Capture, 149
Davidson, Malcolm, 236
Davis, Bob, 173
Davison, Stuart, 302
dBASE, 166
DeBNDLer, 295–296
de la Musse, Eric, 246
de los Santos, Ernie, 46
departments, on-line service, defined, 16
DepthGauge, 284
DES encryption, 330–331, 338
DeShazer, Charles, 189
Desk Invaders DA, 66
DesktopFolder, 260–261, 390
desktop pattern utilities, 296–297
desktop publishing tools, 121–138
Desktop Textures, 296–297
desktop utilities
DesktopFolder, 260–261, 390
DeskZap DA, 260, 297–299
DeskZap DA, 260, 297–299
dialog box utilities, 264–265
Diamonds, 66–67
digital communication, 14
dingbats, 128–129
DiPiero, Thomas, 196
Disinfectant, 331–334, 388
DiskCopy image files utilities, MountImage, 315–316
DiskDoubler, 365
DisKeeper, 299–300
disk/file management utilities
DeskZap DA, 260, 297–299
DisKeeper, 299–300
FileList+, 167–169
FileMover, 302–304, 389
FileTyper, 299, 304
Floppy Fixer, 305–306
FolderDash, 304, 306–307
disk mounting utilities, MountEm, 274–275
DiskSwitch, 261
disk utilities, Floppy Fixer, 305–306
display utilities, MaxAppleZoom, 270–271
dithering, 292
DMM LaserWriter Stuff, 300–301
DOCMaker, 102–104, 121
Do It All!, 179–181
Dowdy, Tom, 295
Download Forum, 396, 397
downloading, 396
Mac files to PCs, 10–11
draw programs, 142–144, 388
Dreer, Oliver, 67
Dropper, 61
Dropple Menu, 209, 220–221
DTPrinter, 221–222
Dungeon of Doom, 67–69
The Dungeon Revealed, 67, 69
Dunham, David, 111
Durango font, 129–130
Duritsch, Ron, 351

E

Earthplot, 38
Easterday, Bob, 320
Easy Access, 255
Easy Envelopes Plus, 182
Easy KEYS, 261–262, 389
EasyPlay, 239
Easy View, 104–105
EC Technology, 260–261
Edit II, 95
educational tools and children's programs, 34–50

Educorp, 30–31
address of, 387
Ehrlich, Jeffrey, 98, 99
electronic bulletin boards. *See* bulletin boards
Electronic Frontier Foundation, 219
electronic mail. *See* e-mail utilities
Eliot, Chris, 70, 71
emacs, defined, 93
e-mail utilities, 349–369
em and en dashes, transforming, 136
Empire Builder. *See* Empire Master
Empire Master, 70–71
encryption utilities
DES, 330–331, 338
MacUser Security Set, 331, 338–339
Quoter DA, 360–361
envelope utilities, Easy Envelopes Plus, 182
EPS graphic, 65
Ericson, Christer, 58
Esau, Keith, 147
Escapade, 263
Esperanto Stack, 38–39
Ettore, Riccardo, 118
Eugenides, Jan, 276
Evans, Al, 60
Evergreen Software, 338
Evolutions, 107
Excel, and Visual Time Manager, 188
Exclusives, ZiffNet/Mac, 209
Exodus Software, 175
ExtendIt!, 318
extension and INIT managers, 208
init cdev 3.0, 267–268, 323
extensions, defined, 207
Extensions Manager, 222–223, 323
ExtractorPC, 374–375
Eyeballs, 63
Eyler, M. Akif, 105

F

Façade, 264
Falk, Alex, 259
Fast Formatter, 302
Fenton, Scott, 260, 309
Fest, Markus, 241
Fiems, Guy, 327
File Fanatic, 309
FileList+, 167–169
FileMaker Pro, 172–173, 397
FileMover, 302–304, 389
files, compressed, 7–8
File Sharing, Public Folder, 358–359, 390
FileTypeChanger, 309
FileTyper, 299, 304
Finance, 196
Finder flags
DeskZap DA, 297–299
FileTyper, 299
Get More Info, 299, 308–309
Finder Sets, 226
FinderToFront, 226–227
Find Pro II, 224–225, 392
FirstClass Client, 355–356
FKEY Master, 262
FKEYs, 208–209
BalloonPrinter, 216
Clipper FKEY, 352–353
Easy KEYS, 261–262, 389
FKEY Master, 262
MFMenu+, 262
MountEm, 274–275
Out to Launch!, 277
SpinD, 316
Switch-A-Roo, 284
flags
DeskZap DA and, 297–299
FileTyper, 299
Get More Info, 299, 308–309
Flash-It, 147, 389
FlashWrite][, 105–106
floating point coprocessors. *See* math coprocessors
Floating Point Units, Software FPU, 281
Floppy Fixer, 305–306
Folderdash, 304, 306–307
Folder Icon Maker, 227–228
folder utilities, DesktopFolder, 260–261, 390
FontClerk, 380
FontConflicts, 137
FontDisplay, 125–126
font management utilities, 133–134, 137, 256, 323, 388
FontMaster, 137
fonts
discussed, 121, 127–128
displaying, 135
managing suitcase, 134
setting paths to, 133
font tools, 121–138
font utilities
DeBNDLer, 295–296
FontClerk, 380
PopChar, 278–279
REFONT, 379–380
TTConverter, 380
FontWizard, 137
Ford, Ric, 22

formatting
database-generated data, 170
Fast Formatter, 302
forums, defined, 16, 395–396
FoxBASE, 166
Franco, Josh and Nick, 172
Frank, Randy, 79
Fred's Finder's Hacks, 209
free areas, on-line services, 23, 401–402
FreeSoft Company, White Knight, 4, 16, 407
FreeTerm, 369
freeware, defined, 3
Front&Center, 264–265

G

Gabel, Paul, 48
Galaxian, 85
GAMER Project, 53–54
Games and Trivial Pursuits, 52–89
Gary, Jonathan, 87
GateKeeper, 334–335, 388
Geagan, J., 299–300
genealogy, MacRoots, 183–184
general utilities, 289–327
GEnie, 20–21
address of, 385
cost of, 21
GetInfo, 308–309
Get Info box utilities, 219–220
Get More Info, 260, 299, 308–309
Gibson, Robert, 116, 117, 244, 307, 308–309, 340
GIFConverter, 375–377
Gilbert, Don, 373
Gillette, Hank, 129, 130
Glider+, 71
Globe, 72
glossaries, and text entry, 117
Glypha II, 72–73
GMS Calendar. *See* Calendar DA
GO command, on ZiffNet/Mac, 399–400
Golden State Graphics, 131–132
Gontier, Pete, 219, 260
Goodenough, Amanda, 41
Goodman, Bill, 7, 355
GooPanel, 265–267, 390
GO words, 24
GradeBook, 169–170
gradient (graduated) blending, 145
Graffix, 146
graphics
Before Dark, 297
CheapColor 2, 292–293
converting color to black and white, 155
Desktop Textures, 296–297
Print2Pict, 239–240
tools, 141–158
transferring between applications, 144–145
Wallpaper, 296
graphics converters
discussed, 371
GIFConverter, 375–377
Imagery, 377–379
GraphXbase, 150
Green Mountain Software, 102, 103
grep searching, 94
The Grouch, 73
Guild Software, 358
GunShy, 73–74

H

Haller, Ben, 6, 63, 64, 86, 294
hard disk mounting utilities. *See* disk mounting utilities
Harris, Larry, 211, 226, 326
Harris, Laurence, 232
Harvey, Richard, 250, 272–273
Haun, C. K., 61
Hayes
AT Standard Command Set, 15
compatibility, 14–15
Smartcom II, 16, 407
Ultra, 96, 15
V-Series Smartmodem 9600, 15
HeapTool, 309–310
heap utilities, 309–310
Heizer Software, 31, 184–185
Helium, 228–229, 236
Helme, Pete, 110, 265
Helm, Rudolph, 45
Hendry, Ian, 230
Herzog, Tim, 155
Hickman, Craig, 43
HideAlways, 229–230
Hitchhiker's Guide to the Internet, 357
Hollander, Fred, 218, 318
Holt, Joe, 313
Holzgrafe, Rick, 82, 83, 216
Home Budget Stack, 195–196
Horii, Naoto, 270–271
Horvath, E. C., 74
Household Shopper, 196–198
HyperBucks, 198
HyperCard
Address stack, 177
The CD Catalog, 164–165
converting stacks with, 35

FileTypeChanger, 309
Home Budget Stack, 195–196
HyperNetwork CHESS, 74–75
Internet Tour, 357
LoodleList, 171
HyperNetwork CHESS, 74–75

I

Icon Colorizer, 293
icon editors, 293–294
icon utilities
Applicon, 214–215
CDEV Shrinker, 286
DeBNDLer, 295–296
Façade, 264
Folder Icon Maker, 227–228
iContraption, 310–312
IconWrap, 267
MICN, 274
Oasis, 275–276
UnScrolly, 285–286
Visage, 264
iContraption, 293, 310–312
IconWrap, 267
If Monks Had Macs, 39–41
Iggy Iggopolis, 55
Ihnatko, Andy, 22
Image, 148–149, 388
ImageCatalog, 149–151, 388
image-processing programs, 148–149, 377–379, 388
Imagery, 377–379
IMI Software, 273
imMedia, 312
INDEX.TXT, 22, 397
Info-Mac, 104
INFOMaker, 170–171
Inigo Gets Out, 41
init cdev 3.0, 267–268, 323
INIT and extension managers, 208
INITInfo Pro, 1.0, 42
INITLoader, 230
INIT Manager, 323
INITs, defined, 207
Insanely Great Software, 242
installation, of Bonus Disk programs, 391
Internet, Hitchhiker's Guide to the, 357
Internet Tour, 357
invisible files
DeskZap DA, 260
Get More Info, 260
MacUser Security Set, 331, 338–339

J

Johnson, Bill, 87
Johnson, Chris, 335
Johnson, Peter, 361
Johnson, Rick, 125, 146
Johnston, Robert, 287
JoliWrite, 111
JustClick, 231

K

Kafton-Minkel, Walter, 131
Kaplan, Peter, 214
Kelcher, Peter, 95
Kid Pix 1.0, 43–44
Kiene, Steve, 285
King, Kelly, 358
Klondike, 75–76, 391, 393
Koch, Rob, 89
Koerber, Jon, 196
Kolor, 268–269
Krauth, Stephen, 297
Krol, E., 357
Kung-Fu Chivalry, 76–78

L

label makers, Loodle, 171–172
LaForge, Seth, 313
Lari, Humayun, 152
LaserWriter. *See* printing utilities
launchers
Apollo, 253–254, 262, 388
Launch INIT, 335–336
MFMenu+, 262
Out to Launch!, 262, 277
Launch INIT, 335–336
Lau, Raymond, 6, 7, 9, 353, 360
Layout, 269–270
Lee, Kwang, 309
Lefty Cursor, 259
Leitch, Jim, 178, 320
Lempereur, Yves, 374
Leprechaun, 67
LeVitus, Bob, 22
Lewis, Jeff, 379
Lewis, Jim, 131–132, 134, 136
ligatures
in desktop publishing, 122
and QuarkXPress, 136
in text processing, 114
LightningPaint, 151–152, 389
Lim, Jim, 79

Lin, Albert, 78
Lindenberg, Joachim, 352
line breaks, insertion of, 115–116
Logger font, 130
logos, 142–143
Loodle, 171–172
Lupus Foundation of America, Inc., 306

M

MacBillboard, 153
MacBinary, 8–9, 11, 349, 365, 374, 383, 398
MacBinary Translator, 9, 11
MacBooz, 384
Mac Bzone, 78–79
McCollum, Cliff, 232
MacCompress, 383
MacDraw Pro, 142
MacEnvy, 312–313
Macify, 106–107
MacinTalk, and Esperanto, 38–39
McLeod, Ken, 267, 313
Macman, 81
MacNinja, 77
MacPassword, 336–338, 344, 389
MacRoots, 183–184
macros, defined, 93
McSink, 107–109
MacUser/MacWEEK Index, 22, 404
MacUser magazine, 22, 402–403
MacUser's Alias Assassin, 231–232
MacUser Security Set, 331, 338–339
MacWEEK magazine, 22, 401, 402, 403
McWherter, David, 109
MacWorld magazine, 16
MacZOO, 383
Magnuson, Rod, 285
Mahoney, Jim, 193
MailIt, 184–185
mail order, 30–31, 386–387
MailSlot, 352
Maitreya Design, 111
MakeAutoTyper, 305
Malan, Remy, 193
managers, INIT and extension, 208
Mancino, John, 325
Mandelbrot generators, MandelTV DA, 154
maps, 38
Mariner, 199–200, 389
Markuson, Donald, 301
Marriott, Greg, 264
Martin, Brian, 363
Marx, Tom, 164
MasterJuggler, 126, 133, 209
math coprocessors, 281
Mathews, Robert, 229
Math Orchard, 44–45
Matsuki, Kaz, 115
Matthies, Kurt, 216, 339
Mauer, Charles, 129
MAUG (MicroNetworked Apple Users Group), 19
MaxAppleZoom, 270–271
Maya Calendar, 45
MBNMAC.SIT, as MacBinary plug-in filter, 9
MCBSIT.SIT, as MacBinary Translator file, 9
MemINIT, 313
memory utilities
  CacheOut, 217–218
  MODE32, 234–235
MenuChoice, 233, 389
MenuKey, 271–272
menus, avoiding on ZiffNet/Mac, 399–400
menu utilities
  AutoMenus, 254–256
  Behierarchic, 233
  CLAM (CLean Apple Menu), 218–219
  DiskSwitch, 261
  Dropple Menu, 209, 220–221
  MenuChoice, 233, 389
  MenuKey, 271–272
  MFMenu+, 273
  MICN, 274
  TearOFFS, 285
  Zipple, 259
Mercer, Paul, 72
MergeScrap DA, 314
Message DA, 314–315
message-sending utilities
  Announce, 352
  BroadCast, 351–352, 388
  discussed, 399
  MailSlot, 352
Meyer, Jochen, 314
MFMenu+, 273
MICN, 274
MicroNetworked Apple Users Group (MAUG), 19
Microphone II, 16, 360, 407
Microsoft Word 5.0, 113
Micro Times, and bulletin boards, 386
Mines, 58, 391, 393
Minesweeper, 57
miniWRITER, 109–111, 389, 393
Miserey, Frederic, 286
Mitchell, Kevin, 377
Modem Calculator DA, 357–358
modems, 13, 14–15
MODE32, 234–235
Mohr, Philip A., 40

Moire Screensaver, 79, 389
monitor utilities. *See* display utilities
Monk, Bill, 211, 225, 232, 237
monks, If Monks Had Macs, 39–41
Monroe, Fred, 210, 217, 221
Mosaic Codes, address of, 179
Mount DiskCopy Images. *See* MountImage
MountEm, 274–275
MountImage, 315–316
mounting utilities, MountEm, 274–275
Mouse Odometer, 80
mouse utilities, Escapade, 263
movie utilities, 237–239
Muckala, Bruce, 184
multiple System folders utilities
  Blesser, 323
  System Picker, 322–323
MultiSpool, 316
myWord!, 110–111

N

National Home and School Macintosh Group, 53–54
Nautilus, 27–29, 387
Navigator, 8, 15, 18, 24, 25, 361–362, 395, 402, 406
Neville, Bill, 46
NewsBeat, 401
News in Brief, 402
New Uploads Library, 397
Niehaus, Michael, 384
Night Diamonds Software, 195
Nisus, 94
NoBalloonMenu, 236
Nolan, Sean, 80
Nom de Plume, 236–237
Norstad, John, 331, 334
Notepad++, 111–113
Now Utilities, 323
NSF Network Service Center, 357
Number Crunch, 193
number crunchers, 191–202

O

Oasis, 275–276
object-oriented programs, 142
Obliterate, 244–245, 339
O'Connor, Michael, 24, 270, 381
Octavian Micro Development, 384
OIDS, 62
OnCue, 273
on-line services, 13–27
  addresses of, 385
  cost of, 14
organizational utilities, 326–327, 390
Ornaments font, 130
O'Rourke, Michael, 116
Oscar the Grouch, 73
Oster, David Phillip, 179
Ouellet, Gary, 42
Out to Launch!, 262, 277

P

Paar, William, 200
PackIT (PIT), 365
Pacman, 80–81
PageMaker 4.0, 132
paint programs, LightningPaint, 151–152, 389
Panasonic product guide, 46
PanaStack BW 1.1, 46
Parachroma, 113
Pararena, 81–82
Paris, Daniel, 85
Parity Productions, 321
passwords. *See* security utilities
Patterson, Bill, 169
PBKeys, 318
PC utilities, 381–383
Personal Information Managers (PIMs), 177–189
PETA, address of, 229
phone
  dialers, 177–178, 389
  directories, 172–173
Pica Calculator DA, 131–132, 193
PICTuresque DA, 154–155
Pierce, Michael, 227
Pierce Software, 227
PIMs (Personal Information Managers), 177–189
PippinPuss, 46–47
.PIT files, 8
PIT (PackIT), 365
Plotz, Wilhelm, 259
PM4 Shortcuts DA, 132–133
Polic, Robert, 320
Poly Micro Systems, 340
Pong, 58
PopChar, 278–279
Popcorn, 237–239
Porter, Alan, 195
Portland Mac Users Group, 131
PostCrypt font, 130–131
Poston, Tom, 312

PostScript
discussed, 127
and DMM LaserWriter Stuff, 300–301
and Varityper, 137–138
Pottie, Karl, 97
PowerAlias, 226
PowerBook
cursor utilities, 258–259
fonts, 129
menu utility, 255
screensavers, 294
PowerBook Tools, 316–318
PowerOrgasm, 318
PowerSleep, 318
Powertools download, 401
Presley, Ken, 75
Prestia, Clayton, 70, 71
Price, Frank, 318
Prime Computer, 301
printing utilities
BalloonPrinter, 216
DMM LaserWriter Stuff, 300–301
DTPrinter, 221–222
MultiSpool, 316
Print2Pict, 239–240
print spooling, 316
Print2Pict, 239–240
Pro Series FileMaker Pro Database Applications, 172–173
ProSwitch, 240–241
Protect It, 340
protocols
QuickB DA, 359–360
transfer, 349
PSFontFinder, 137
public domain software. *See* freeware
Public Folder, 358–359, 390

Q

QIX-like games, 54–55
QuarkXPress, 136
QuickB DA, 359–360
Quick Reference Words, 24
QuickTime, 237–239
Quoter DA, 360–361

R

Ragnemalm, Ingemar, 81
Rakowski, David, 130
RamDisk+, 279–280
ramdisks, 212
Raoult, Baudouin, 240
Rasband, Wayne, 149
Raymonds, John, 67, 69
Red Ryder, 4
Reed, Chris, 380
Reed, Fred, 273
REFONT, 379–380
Remember? Personal Reminder System, 185–186
Reponer, 123–124
ResEdit, 109, 208, 293
Retriever Light, 173–175, 388
Reverse Polish Notation (RPN) calculators
BaseToBase DA, 192–193
RPN Calc DA, 193
Rhodes, James, 369
Robbins, Gregory, 228
Rock Ridge Enterprises, 73
Rogers, Melissa, 245
role-playing games, Dungeon of Doom, 67–69
Rosenthol, Leonard, 222, 239
Rotenstein, John, 268
RoundTables, 20
Roussak, Jeremy, 254
RPN (Reverse Polish Notation) calculators
BaseToBase DA, 192–193
RPN Calc DA, 193
Rubenfeld, Vik, 167
Rucker, Lee Ann, 170
Ruff, Craig, 383

S

SafeSleep, 316
Salazar, Fernando, 291
Sarapata, John, 304
SatNav, 361–363
Save the Planet, 47–48
Scarab of RA, 82–83
schedule applications
Do It All!, 179–181
Remember? Personal Reminder System, 185–186
To Do! DA, 187–188, 389
Visual Time Manager, 188–189
Schmitt, Henry, 49–50
Schumer, Art, 338
Scion Image Capture, 2, 149
Scrambler, 331
Scrapbook files, MergeScrap DA, 314
screen capture
Camera DA, 146–147
Flash-It, 147, 389
SnapJot, 155–156, 389
SnapShot, 156–157, 389
screen depth utilities, 284
Screen Flipper, 284

screensavers
AutoIdle, 79
Darkside, 294–295, 389
MacPassword, 336–338, 389
MandelTV DA, 154
Moire Screensaver, 79, 389
scripting utilities
AppleScript, 242, 243
FileMover, 302–304, 389
Folderdash, 306–307
Texx, 242–243, 389
Userland Frontier, 242, 243
scrolling utilities
Scroll2, 280
UnScrolly, 285–286
Scroll2, 280
SCSI utilities, 318–320
.SEA file compression extension, 7, 8, 353, 374, 397
SeaHaven Towers, 84
Seah, Kenneth, 95
search utilities, Find Pro II, 224–225
security tools, 329–344
security utilities
discussed, 329–330
MacPassword, 336–338, 389
Protect It, 340
Zorba, 343–344, 389
Self-Extracting (.SEA) file compression, 7, 8, 353, 374, 397
Semicolon Software, 216
Serial of Champions, 363–364
Sesame Street, 73
SetClock, 320–321
setext (structure-enhanced text) format, 104
SetInfo, 309
SetPaths Control Panel, 133
SetPaths DA, 133–134
Shanghai, 73
Shapiro, Eric, 73
shareware
defined, 3
viruses and, 5
shareware alternatives to commercial products, 388–389
Shareware Authors, Inc., 387
Sherman, Roby, 309
ShowBoat font, 130
shredding files
DeskZap DA, 260
Obliterate, 244–245, 339
Shulman, Jeff, 126, 342
Siegel, Rich, 95
.SIT file compression extension, 7, 366, 381, 397
Skaistis, Jeff, 292
Smartcom II, 16, 407
smart (curly) quotes, and text editors, 100, 113
SmartKeys, 113–115
Smith, Samuel, 381
SnakeTIX, 85
SnapJot, 155–156, 389
SnapShot, 156–157, 389
Snively, Paul, 134
SoftArc, Inc., 356
SoftShoppe, 387
SoftwareFPU, 281
Software Ventures, 16, 360, 407
Solarian II, 6, 63, 85–86
solitaire, SeaHaven Towers, 84
Somogyi, Stephan, 296
Sorrick, Paul, 133
SoundAsleep, 318
SoundMaster, 281–282
sound utilities, SoundMaster, 281–282
Spectre, 78
Speedometer, 313, 321
SpinD, 316
SpinIt INIT, 86–87
spooling, print, 316
spreadsheets
BiPlane, 193–195, 389
Mariner, 199–200, 389
Star Trek, 87–88
Stein, Adam, 242, 262
Steinberg, Bill, 275, 284, 310, 318, 322
Stevenson, Patrick, 65
Strategic Conquest Plan, 70
Strobel, Jeff, 383
structure-enhanced text (setext), 104
StuffIt, 353
Deluxe, 331
Expander, 7, 364–365, 388
Lite, 365–367, 388
(.SIT) file compression, 6, 7, 11, 366
Suitcase II, 126, 133, 209, 323
suitcases, managing font, 134
Sun Desk, 293
SuperCard, 28
SuperClock, 283
SuperDrive, 10
Super Ruler DA, 157–158
Support Forum, 396, 397, 402, 403
Surber, Lucinda, 45
Swatch, 313
Switch-A-Roo, 284

SwitchBoot, 323
switching utilities
ProSwitch, 240–241
WindowWizard, 245–246
system analysis utilities, 313, 321
system enhancements, 249–287
System Errors DA, 321–322
System extensions
Announce, 352
ColorFinder, 293, 390
Disinfectant, 331–334, 388
GateKeeper, 334–335, 388
Icon Colorizer, 293
Launch INIT, 335–336
MFMenu+, 273
SafeSleep, 316
Sun Desk, 293
SwitchBoot, 323
System heap utilities. *See* heap utilities
System Picker, 322–323
System 6 answers to System 7, 390
System 7, System 6 answers to, 390
System 7 Add-ons, 207–247
System 7 Pack, 241–242
System 7 utilities
Bunch Typer, 309
File Fanatic, 309
Get Info, 308–309
iContraption, 310–312
Tell-Me, 314–315
system utilities, TattleTale, 323–325

T

Tar for the Macintosh, 383
TattleTale, 313, 323–325
Taylor, Ben, 137
Taylor, Tom, 145
Tchakirides, Bill, 129
TeachText, 96, 325
TearOFFS, 285
Teixeira, Marcio Luis, 314
telecommunications tools, 349–369
telecommunications utilities, ZTerm, 367–369, 389, 407
Tell-Me, 314–315
Teranishi, Mark, 133
terminal (term) program, 16
TermWorks, 369
Tetris, 61
TextBreak, 115–116
text editors
Clipper FKEY, 352–353
DeskZap DA, 297–299
discussed, 93–94
miniWRITER, 109–111, 389
TextFilter, 115
TextMerge, 116–117
TextFilter, 115
TextMerge, 116–117
Text Tools, 92–118
TEXT<–>ttro, 325–326
Texx, 242–243, 389
theFONDler, 134
theTypeBook, 135–136
Thomas, Brian, 40
Thompson, David, 318
Throckmorton, Mike, 230, 247, 261, 277, 364
TidBITS, 104
Tidmus, Michael, 35
Tidy It Up!, 326–327, 390
tiles, defined, 24
Time Logger DA, 201–202
time management utilities, 188–189
To Do! DA, 187–188, 389
Toge, Nobu, 147
Tomlin, Bruce, 133, 260, 282, 299
Toxic Ravine, 87
transfer protocols, 349
TrashAlias, 232, 243–244, 339
Trash Chute, 244–245, 339
TrashMan, 245
Trautman, Neal, 257
Trek, 87–89
Tremendous Software, 196
Trojan horses, defined, 333
TrueType fonts, 127, 128
Tsuji, M., 80–81
TTConverter, 380
Turabian, Kate, 164
.TXT files, 8, 398
TypeIt4Me, 117–118
TypesettingMarksXT, 136–137

U

Ubillos, Randy, 158
U-Design Type Foundry, 129
Uechi, Brian, 381
Ulrich, Stan, 45
Unity, 116
UnScrolly, 285–286
UNSIT, 381
UnZip, 381–383
uploads, 397
Urban, Michael, 38
Urlichs, Matthias, 259
user groups, 29–30, 385–386
Userland Frontier, 242, 243
uuencoding, defined, 383

UULite, 383
UUTool, 383–384

V

V.32/V.32bis CCITT standards, 15
V.42/V.42bis CCITT standards, 15
Valence, Mark, 274
Vantage, 109
Vantage Commands (VCMDs), 108
Varityper ToolKit, 137–138
Vass, Charles, 198
VCMDs (Vantage Commands), 108
The Vietnam War: A HyperCard History Book, 48–49
VirusBlockade II, 341–342
VirusDetective, 334, 341–342, 388, 394
Virus Encyclopedia, 49–50
viruses
  antiviral tools, 329–344
  defined, 5
  discussed, 329
  Disinfectant, 331–334, 388
  GateKeeper, 334–335, 388
  VirusBlockade II, 341–342
  VirusDetective, 334, 341–342, 388
Visage, 264
Visual Time Manager, 188–189
Volaski, Maurice, 115, 220, 232, 244
The Voyager Company, 41

W

Walker, James, 256
Walkowski, Dan, 245
Wall, Mark, 102, 103
Wall, Mike, 171
Wallpaper, 296
Warker, Dave, 186
Watson, Scott, 4
Weaver, Mark, 318
Welch, Andrew, 56–57, 105, 106, 182, 188
Welsh, Jerry, 192
Wetmore, Russ, 269
White Knight, 4, 16, 407
Whittingham, Mike, 157
Wichman, Glenn, 87
Widemann, Benoit, 111
Wieser, Bernie, 384
Wildflower Software, 156
Wild Magic, 238–239
Wilson, Brian and Randy, 63
Wind, Jon, 124, 344
WindowShade, 286–287
window utilities
  ProSwitch, 240–241
  WindowShade, 286–287
  WindowWizard, 245–246
WindowWizard, 245–246
Winograd, Ken, 58–59, 138
Wu, Theodore, 336
Wysocki, Christopher, 263

X

XModem protocol, 349

Y

Yeoh, Nigel, 130

Z

Zapf Dingbats, 128
ZiffNet Information Service, 385
ZiffNet/Mac, 21–23
  Buyer's Guide, 22
  common questions about, 395–407
  cost of, 23, 401
  NewsBeat, 401
  News in Brief, 402
  Powertools download, 401
  Support Forum, 396, 397, 402, 403
ZiffNet/Mac Exclusives, 209
  Alias Stylist, 211
  BalloonPrinter, 216
  CacheOut, 217–218
  Cursor Animator, 258–259
  DiskSwitch, 261
  Find Pro II, 224–225, 392
  Folderdash, 304, 306–307
  HideAlways, 229–230
  MacUser's Alias Assassin, 231–232
  MacUser Security Set, 331, 338–339
  Nom de Plume, 236–237
  PowerBook Tools, 316–318
  Serial of Champions, 363–364
  ZMakeAlias, 247
Zipple, 259
ZMakeAlias, 247
Zorba, 343–344, 389
ZTerm, 16, 367–369, 389, 394, 407
Zync, 318

■ END-USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

READ THIS AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE BUYING THIS BOOK. BY BUYING THE BOOK AND USING THE PROGRAM LISTINGS, DISKS, AND PROGRAMS REFERRED TO BELOW, YOU ACCEPT THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT.

The program listings included in this book and the programs included on the diskette(s) contained in the package on the opposite page ("Disks") are proprietary products of Ziff-Davis Press and/or third party suppliers ("Suppliers"). The program listings and programs are hereinafter collectively referred to as the "Programs." Ziff-Davis Press and the Suppliers retain ownership of the Disks and copyright to the Programs, as their respective interests may appear. The Programs and the copy of the Disks provided are licensed (not sold) to you under the conditions set forth herein.

License. You may use the Disks on any compatible computer, provided that the Disks are used on only one computer and by one user at a time.

Restrictions. You may not commercially distribute the Disks or the Programs or otherwise reproduce, publish, or distribute or otherwise use the Disks or the Programs in any manner that may infringe any copyright or other proprietary right of Ziff-Davis Press, the Suppliers, or any other party or assign, sublicense, or otherwise transfer the Disks or this agreement to any other party unless such party agrees to accept the terms and conditions of this agreement. This license and your right to use the Disks and the Programs automatically terminates if you fail to comply with any provision of this agreement.

U.S. GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS. The disks and the programs are provided with **RESTRICTED RIGHTS**. Use, duplication, or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software Clause at DFARS (48 CFR 252.277-7013). The Proprietor of the compilation of the Programs and the Disks is Ziff-Davis Press, 5903 Christie Avenue, Emeryville, CA 94608.

Limited Warranty. Ziff-Davis Press warrants the physical Disks to be free of defects in materials and workmanship under normal use for a period of 30 days from the purchase date. If Ziff-Davis Press receives written notification within the warranty period of defects in materials or workmanship in the physical Disks, and such notification is determined by Ziff-Davis Press to be correct, Ziff-Davis Press will, at its option, replace the defective Disks or refund a prorata portion of the purchase price of the book. **THESE ARE YOUR SOLE REMEDIES FOR ANY BREACH OF WARRANTY.**

EXCEPT AS SPECIFICALLY PROVIDED ABOVE, THE DISKS AND THE PROGRAMS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND. NEITHER ZIFF-DAVIS PRESS NOR THE SUPPLIERS MAKE ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND AS TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE DISKS OR THE PROGRAMS OR THE RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED FROM USING THE DISKS OR THE PROGRAMS AND NEITHER ZIFF-DAVIS PRESS NOR THE SUPPLIERS SHALL BE RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY CLAIMS ATTRIBUTABLE TO ERRORS, OMISSIONS, OR OTHER INACCURACIES IN THE DISKS OR THE PROGRAMS. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE RESULTS AND PERFORMANCE OF THE DISKS AND THE PROGRAMS IS ASSUMED BY THE USER. FURTHER, NEITHER ZIFF-DAVIS PRESS NOR THE SUPPLIERS MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THE DISKS OR THE PROGRAMS, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OF THE DISKS OR THE PROGRAMS. IN NO EVENT SHALL ZIFF-DAVIS PRESS OR THE SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE DISKS OR THE PROGRAMS OR FOR ANY LOSS OR DAMAGE OF ANY NATURE CAUSED TO ANY PERSON OR PROPERTY AS A RESULT OF THE USE OF THE DISKS OR THE PROGRAMS, EVEN IF ZIFF-DAVIS PRESS OR THE SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN SPECIFICALLY ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NEITHER ZIFF-DAVIS PRESS NOR THE SUPPLIERS ARE RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY COSTS INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THOSE INCURRED AS A RESULT OF LOST PROFITS OR REVENUE, LOSS OF USE OF THE DISKS OR THE PROGRAMS, LOSS OF DATA, THE COSTS OF RECOVERING SOFTWARE OR DATA, OR THIRD-PARTY CLAIMS. IN NO EVENT WILL ZIFF-DAVIS PRESS' OR THE SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY FOR ANY DAMAGES TO YOU OR ANY OTHER PARTY EVER EXCEED THE PRICE OF THIS BOOK. NO SALES PERSON OR OTHER REPRESENTATIVE OF ANY PARTY INVOLVED IN THE DISTRIBUTION OF THE DISKS IS AUTHORIZED TO MAKE ANY MODIFICATIONS OR ADDITIONS TO THIS LIMITED WARRANTY.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of implied warranties or limitation of liability for incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

General. Ziff-Davis Press and the Suppliers retain all rights not expressly granted. Nothing in this license constitutes a waiver of the rights of Ziff-Davis Press or the Suppliers under the U.S. Copyright Act or any other Federal or State Law, international treaty, or foreign law.

CONTAINS 1 DISK

TOP-NOTCH SHAREWARE ON DISK

MacUser Guide to Shareware includes one disk with several outstanding examples of both fun and practical shareware for the Macintosh from several of the Mac community's best shareware authors. The disk includes:

Compact Pro: Puts your files on a diet, compressing them as CPT archives so they take up less room on your disk. The utility also decompresses SIT files in the StuffIt 1.5.1 format. This is one of the most popular compression utilities for the Mac and the winner of a coveted MacUser Eddy Award for Best Compression Product in 1990.

Find Pro II: A powerful Find alternative that's lightning fast and much more sophisticated than Apple's approach. Find Pro II is a MacUser ZiffNet/Mac Exclusive that isn't available through CompuServe®, America Online®, or GEnie®.

GMS Calendar: View a day, a week, or a month at a glance. Attach notes to days, search notes for specific text, and even export or import your comments as text files.

Klondike: A simple solitaire card game that was voted best shareware game in the 1992 MacUser Shareware Awards (*MacUser*, October 1992). A classic example of Macintosh shareware.

Mines: A clever game where the goal is to clear a minefield, using your powers of reasoning and deduction. It's challenging, wonderful, and a race against the clock. One wrong move and KABOOM!

miniWRITER: A simple word processor that's ideal for short text notes and especially for formatting text for use in telecommunications. It can strip out smart quotes or put them in, insert line breaks, and perform a variety of other tasks.

VirusDetective: One of the best shareware antiviral tools available for the Mac. This desk accessory sleuths out viruses and Trojan horses before they do any damage. It can scan floppies as you insert them. VirusDetective is also usually the first antiviral utility updated when new viruses appear.

ZTerm: Offers such powerful features as macros and scripting so you can create automatic procedures that access most of the major on-line services and nearly any BBS. The program is fast, even on low-end Macs.

NOTE. The price of this book does not include the shareware fees that the authors of some of these programs have requested. You must pay the shareware fee for these and any other shareware programs you decide to keep and use.

CONTAINS 1 DISK

MacUser Guide to Shareware

Gregory Wasson

Gregory Wasson is a long-time contributing editor to *MacUser* magazine. He compiles the magazine's popular "Tip Sheet" section and writes reviews and feature stories on a variety of topics. He also oversees the ZiffNet/Mac Download and Support Forum as a primary sysop.

Expand your software collection economically by tapping into the ever-expanding Macintosh shareware market!

- Understand the shareware concept and learn why and how to register the programs you use
- Get shareware through on-line services, user groups, mail-order disks, and CD-ROM subscription services
- Find out which shareware programs have been proven superior in laboratory testing and day-to-day use

Much of the world's finest Macintosh software is available at low cost through the try-before-you-buy shareware scheme. Shareware master Gregory Wasson recommends the products that are worth your time and money in all software categories, including:

- Text and number tools
- Telecommunications and connectivity
- Security and virus protection
- Education
- Fun and games

Top-notch Macintosh shareware is included on the accompanying disk.

ZIFF-DAVIS ZD PRESS

U.S. $34.95
Canada $44.95
U.K. £33.02 (Inc VAT) Net

BOOKSHELF CATEGORY
General Computing

ISBN 1-56276-076-9

Turn to the back flap to find out what's on the disk!

Special *MacUser* Subscription Offer Inside